

ARTUR YUSUPOV



CHESS LESSONS

Chess Lessons

ARTUR YUSUPOV

Chess Lessons



Translated and edited by Daniel King

© Chessgate AG 2004
www.chessgate.de

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without prior permission.

First published in 2004

Cover design and layout: Art & Satz Ulrich Dirr, München

Page design and layout: Art & Satz Ulrich Dirr, München

Typeset with PDF $\text{\TeX}$

Managing editor: Ulrich Dirr, München

Preparatory work by Thomas Lemanczyk, Solingen

Printed and bound by Druckerei & Verlag Steinmeier, Nördlingen

ISBN 3-935748-07-8

Contents

Preface – vii

1 Back-Rank Combinations – 1

Exercises – 3

Solutions – 11

Score table – 14

2 Candidate Moves – 15

Exercises – 18

Solutions – 24

Practical exercises – 29

Score table – 34

3 The Wrong-Coloured Bishop – 35

Exercises – 45

Solutions – 52

Score table – 56

4 Exchanging Pieces – 57

Exercises – 60

Solutions – 69

Score table – 74

5 Passed Pawns in the Middlegame – 75

Training material – 79

6 Double Attack – 95

Exercises – 100

Solutions – 109

Score table – 113

7 The Process of Elimination – 115

Exercises – 119

Solutions – 123

Practical exercises – 126

Score table – 134

8 Zugzwang – 135

Exercises – 139

Solutions – 147

Score table – 152

9 Improving Piece Position – 153

Exercises – 158

Solutions – 166

Score table – 170

10 Trapping a Piece – 171

Exercises – 175

Solutions – 183

Score table – 186

Appendix – 187

Index of composers and analysts – 187

Index of games – 189

Explanation of symbols – 196

Preface

Between 1999 and 2002 I produced and published in Germany a small series of ten training booklets, each one covering a particular chess theme. This experimental project proved quite popular with German-speaking readers, and others too. Many of my chess colleagues liked this form of individual training; and some of them used the material in their classes too. This favourable reaction prompted the idea of an English translation.

Although the booklets were aimed at players of differing abilities, most wanted the complete set. And that's how these different themes have ended up in one book. You could also look on this diversity as a strength if a reader, with chess ambitions, wants to test his overall ability. Moreover, for chess trainers this book provides several ready-made lectures, and many useful exercises covering different aspects of the game, already sorted in terms of their level of difficulty.

There are three themes and tests that fall under the heading 'tactics': chapter 1, back-rank combinations; chapter 6, double attack; and chapter 10, trapping a piece. These chapters are, on the whole, the simplest, and players rated below 1500 Elo should probably start with them.

Two chapters deal with positional themes: chapter 4, exchanging pieces; and chapter 9, improving piece position. Two chapters deal with endgame themes: chapter 3, the wrong-coloured bishop; and chapter 8, zugzwang. These four chapters are more challenging and perhaps suitable for players with an Elo above 1500. However, players of any strength could profit from studying them.

Two chapters deal with the question of calculation: chapter 2, candidate moves; and chapter 7, the process of elimination. These themes are more suitable for players with an Elo rating greater than 1800. Less experienced players should go through the examples and try to solve the one and two-star positions.

Chapter 5 deals with a strategical theme, passed pawns in the middlegame, and contains many additional examples that could also be used by club players as exercises. For more advanced players, it should be enough to play through these examples carefully on the chessboard.

How should an ambitious player work with this book? I suggest two possibilities: a direct approach; and one based on the difficulty of the exercises.

With the direct approach, go through the examples at the start of the chapter, then tackle the exercises. The exercises are marked with stars according to their difficulty. According to your rating, each star gives the following scoring and thinking time:

- Below 1500 Elo, 1 point for solving a position in under 10 minutes.
- Below 1800 Elo, 1 point and up to 7 minutes.
- Above 1800 Elo, 1 point and up to 5 minutes.

So, for example, an exercise with three stars should take a player with an Elo of 1650 a maximum 21 minutes to solve, and gives him 3 points. At the end of each chapter you will find the answers, and you can see how well you understood the theme.

There are some special exercises in the chapters on calculation that you must play through move by move. Check the instructions before you try these exercises.

I also suggest an alternative method of approaching this book – according to the difficulty of the exercises. This method is suitable for players with an Elo below 1500. In each chapter, work through the examples, then try to solve the positions up to the second level of difficulty. When you have finished the book, come back and consider positions on level three. If you are comfortable with the results, raise the level again. If you find you aren't yet ready for the next level, put the book back on the shelf, do some other chess work, but after a couple of months come back and try again!

But in the end, perhaps the most important thing is not to take all these points too seriously. I hope you will just enjoy the book.

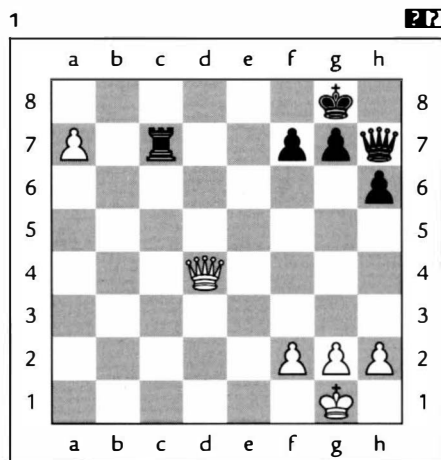
Finally, I would like to thank several people who helped to make this project possible: my wife Nadia for her hard work on the German version; my chess teacher Mark Dvoretsky; Jürgen Daniel, my publisher, for encouraging the idea of an English translation; and Uli Dirr for the layout of the book and for correcting some mistakes in the original German edition.

1 Back-Rank Combinations

Recognising the early outlines of mating combinations is a vital skill. The theme of *the weak back-rank* is common, so studying exercises of this kind should pay off. Although these combinations are, on the whole, fairly easy, they are still striking and impressive.

Certain features are typical of this type of position:

- 1) the lack of an escape square for the castled king;
- 2) the weakness of the back-rank;
- 3) an open file occupied by heavy pieces – they are the main players in these combinations;
- 4) a passed pawn near to promotion.

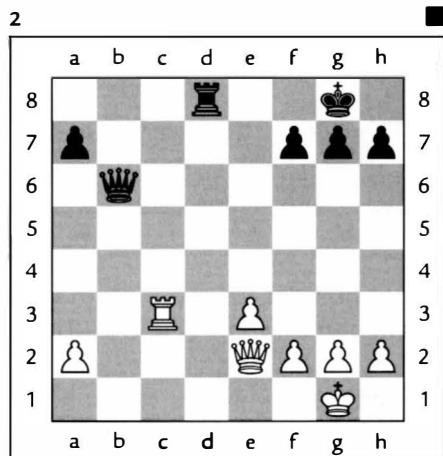


Here both kings are in danger. The pawns prevent White's king from leaving the back-rank. Although Black's king has an escape square, it is occupied by the queen. In addition, both back-ranks are insufficiently protected. White can mate immediately with 1. ♖d4-d8#, or in two moves, starting with 1. a7-a8♖+. Black to play would win immediately by 1. ... ♜c1-c8+ or 1. ... ♜h7-b1+.

The attacker isn't afraid of sacrificing material to get a deadly check on the back-rank. Deflection and double attack are the most important elements in these combinations.

Ossip Bernstein – José Capablanca

Moscow 1914



Conditions are perfect for a back-rank combination. Capablanca seizes his chance with a brilliant hit.

1. ... ♜b6-b2!

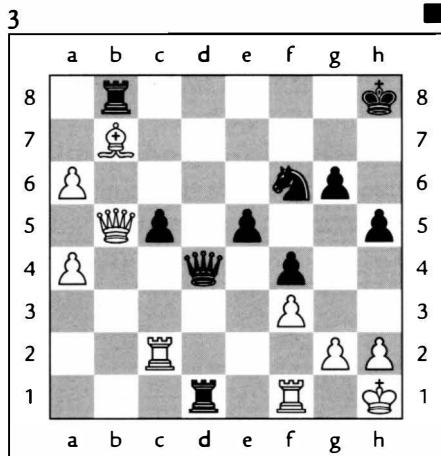
A double attack on queen and rook. At the same time the white queen is deflected from protecting the important back-rank square d1. Naturally, the black queen cannot be captured because of mate. Instead, it would have been a mistake to play 1. ... ♜b6-b1+? 2. ♜e2-f1 ♜d8-d1?? because of 3. ♜c3-c8+ (Black also has a back-rank problem!).

2. ♜c3-c2

Or 2. ♜e2-e1 ♜b2×c3! (deflection) 2. ♜e1×c3 ♜d8-d1+ and mate.

2. ... ♖b2-b1 3. ♜e2-f1 ♜b2×c2
and White resigned.

Xie Jun – Nana Ioseliani
Groningen 1997



This was one of the most dramatic and important games of the whole tournament.

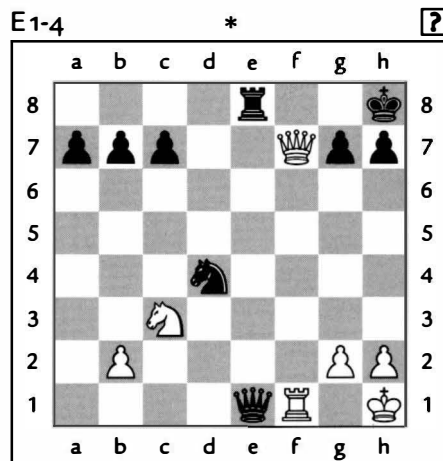
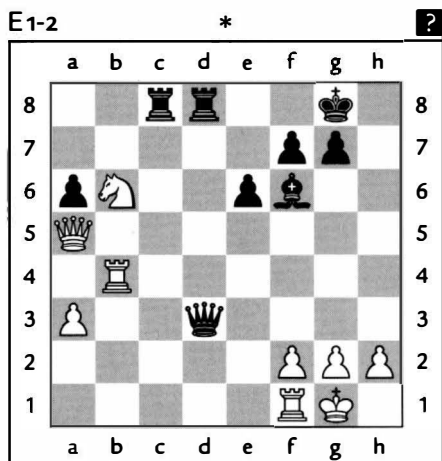
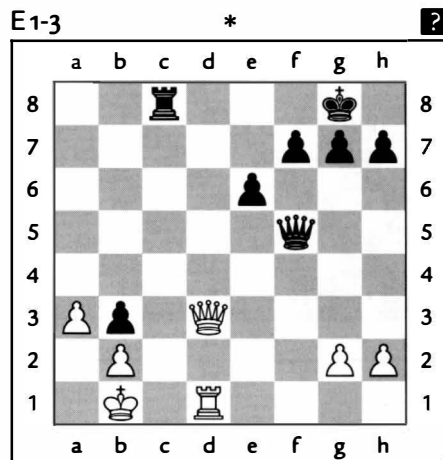
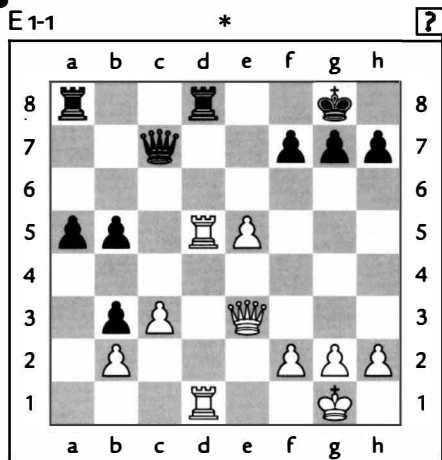
Black's position is totally lost, but the former World Champion Xie Jun evidently underestimated her opponent's threats. Suddenly the Georgian Ioseliani got a break to win the game and with it last minute qualification to the candidates' final. However, she was slightly short of time and played 37. ... c5-c4?, missing her big chance. What's so special here? Looking more deeply into the position, you can see that White's back-rank is only protected by the queen, which also guards the rook on f1. Ioseliani could have played

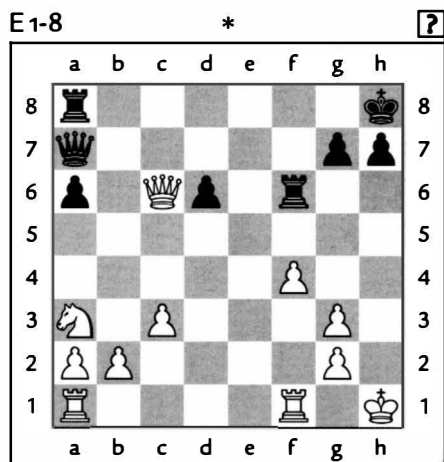
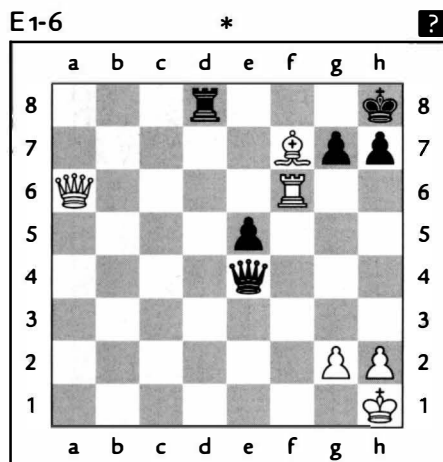
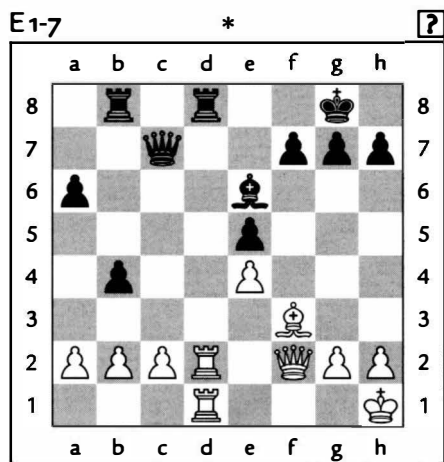
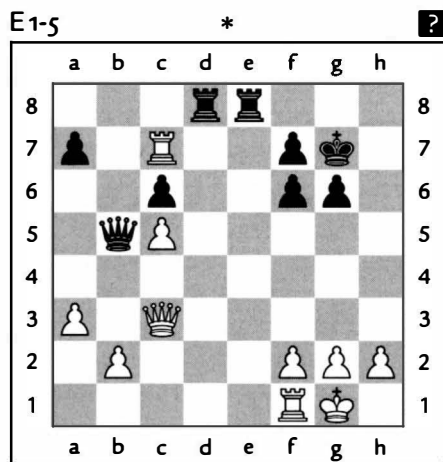
37. ... ♜d4×a4!!,

exploiting the weakness of the back-rank. Again, White cannot accept the queen sacrifice. However, even after 38. ♜b5-e2 ♜d1×f1+ 39. ♜e2×f1 ♜a4×c2 40. a6-a7 ♜b8-d8 41. a7-a8 ♜d8×a8 42. ♜b7×a8 c5-c4, Black's win would just be a matter of time.

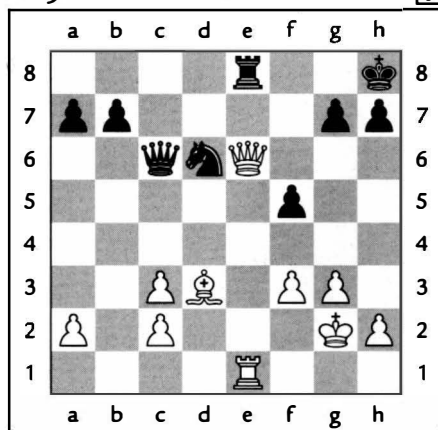


Exercises (solutions p. 11-13)

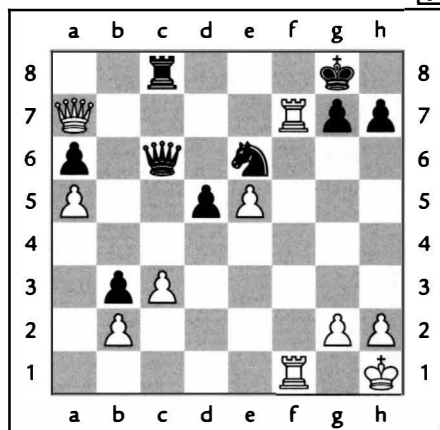




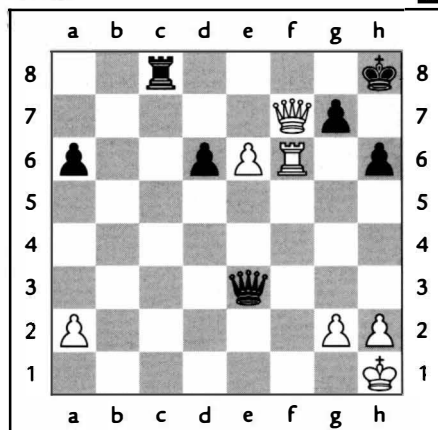
E1-9 *



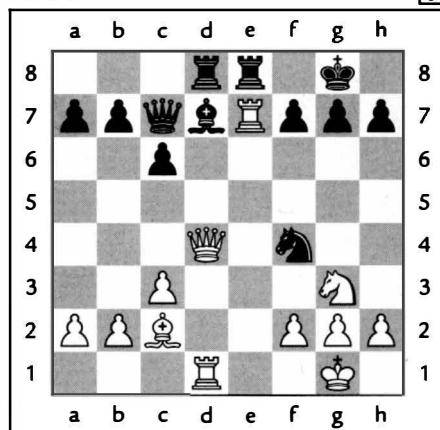
E1-11 **



E1-10 *



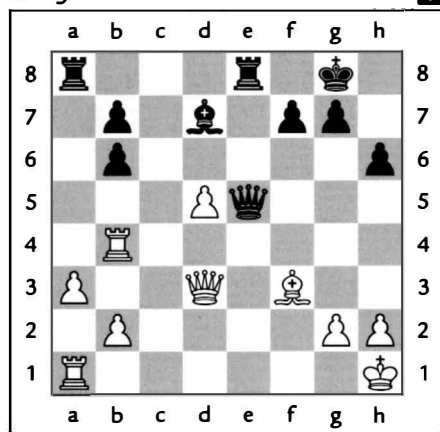
E1-12 **



E1-13

**

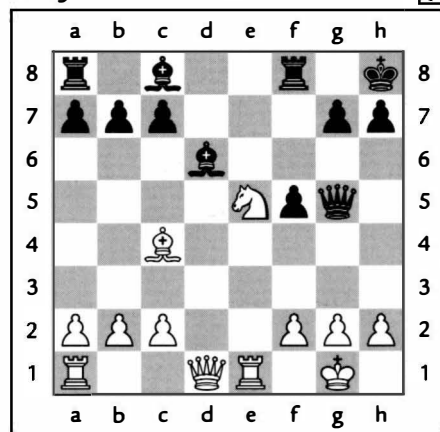
?



E1-15

**

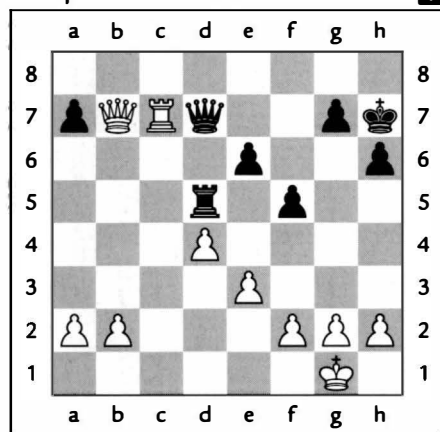
?



E1-14

**

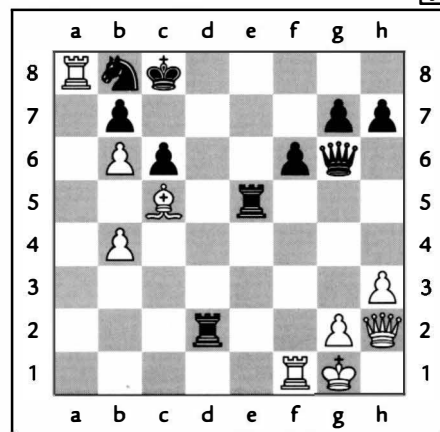
?



E1-16

**

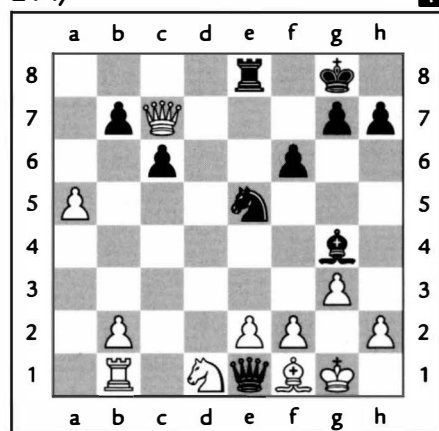
?



E1-17

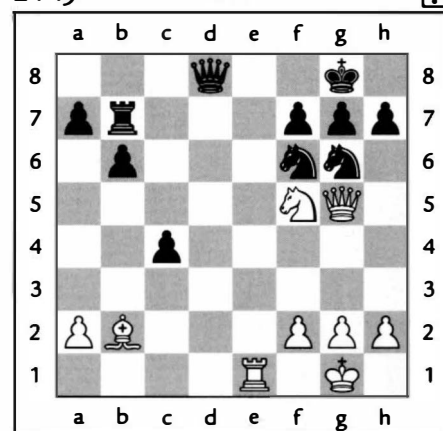
**

?



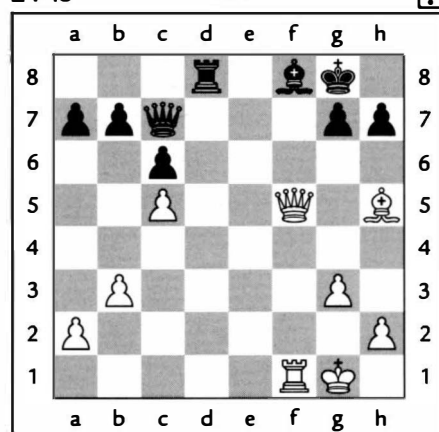
E1-19

?



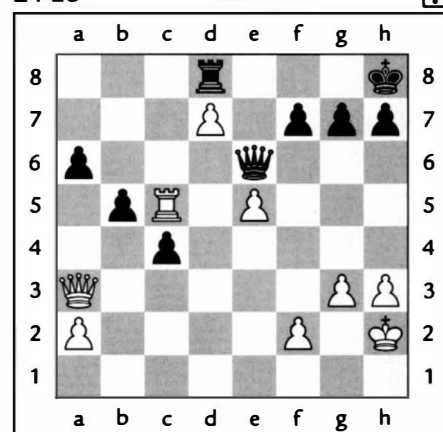
E1-18

?



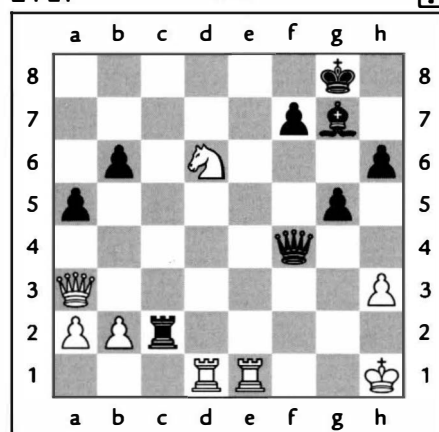
E1-20

?



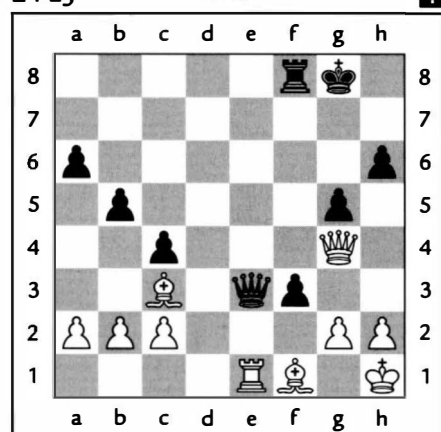
E1-21

?



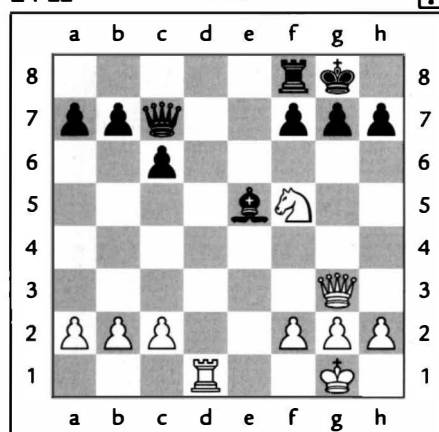
E1-23

?



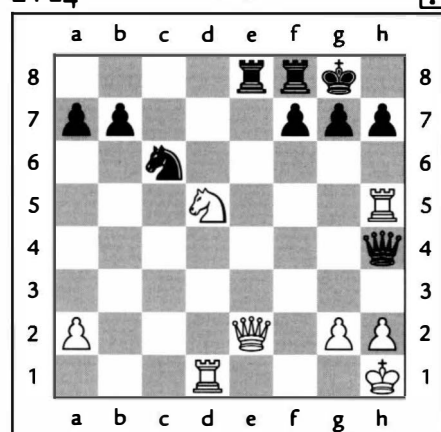
E1-22

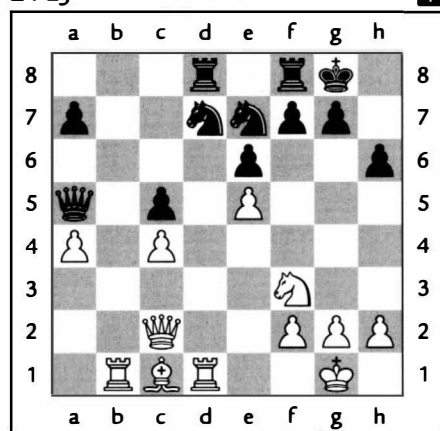
?

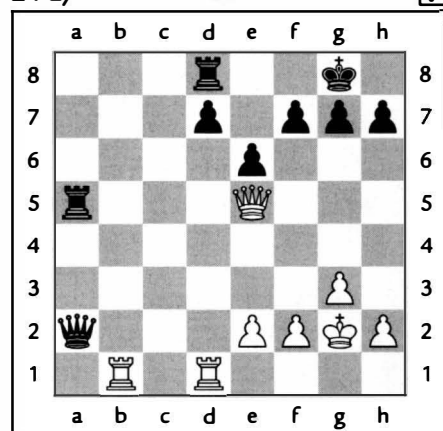


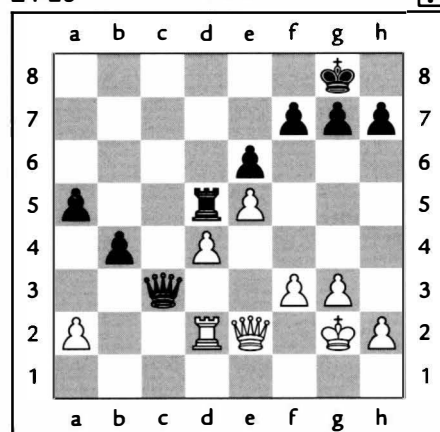
E1-24

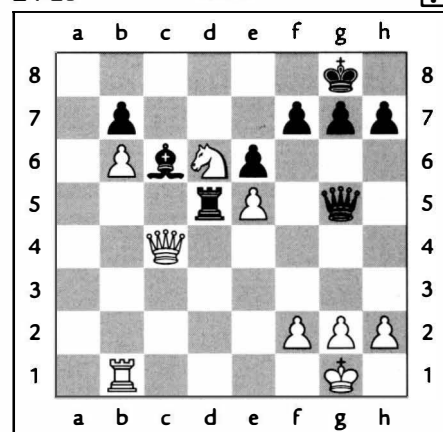
?





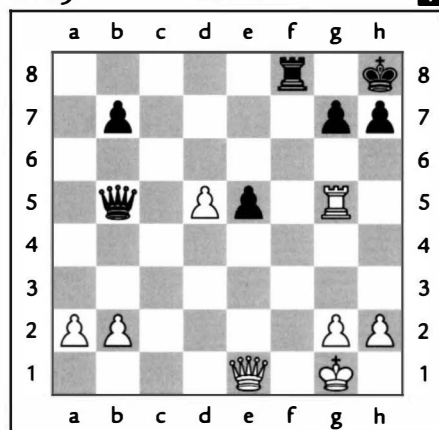






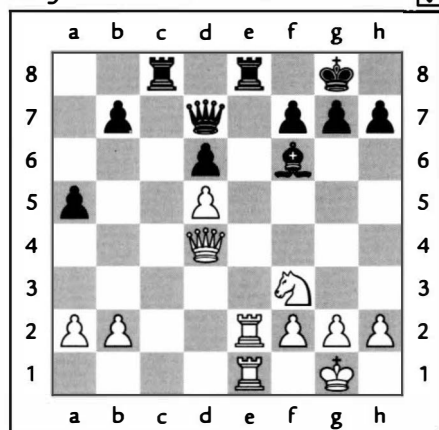
E1-29

?



E1-30

?



Solutions

□ E1-1

Minić – Honfi, *Vrnjačka Banja* 1966

1. ♖a7! +- [1. ... ♜x a7 2. ♜x d8+; 1. ... ♜x a7 2. ♜x d8+; 1. ... ♜c8 2. ♜x d8+ ♜x d8 3. ♜x d8+ ♜x d8 4. g3 +-; 1. ... ♜dc8 2. ♜x c7 ♜x c7 3. ♜d8+] 1-o

□ E1-2

Fontein – Euwe, *Amsterdam* 1939

1. ... ♜c1! 2. ♜x c1 ♜d1+ o-i

□ E1-3

Mikenas – Aronin, *Moscow* 1957

1. ... ♜d8! -+ o-i

□ E1-4

Selyavkin – Belousov, 1973

1. ♜e4! [1. h3? ♜e6!] 1-o

□ E1-5

Shirov – Yusupov, *Bundesliga* 1995/96

(variation from the game)

22. ... ♜x f1+! -+.

□ E1-6

Alden – Nilsson, *Sweden* 1972

1. ... ♜c6!! -+ [1. ... gxf6 2. ♜x f6#; 1. ... ♜d1+ 2. ♜f1] o-i

□ E1-7

Rovner – Kamyshev, *Moscow* 1947

1. ♖a7! ♖a5 [1. ... ♜x d2 2. ♜x c7 ♜x d1+ 3. ♜x d1] 2. ♜x a6! ♜c7 3. ♖a7! +- 1-o

□ E1-8

Paulsen – Anderssen, *Leipzig (ms)* 1877

1. ♜f2! +- 1-o

□ E1-9

Smyslov – Lilienthal, *Leningrad/Moscow* 1941

1. ♜x d6! +- 1-o

□ E1-10

Djaja – Staudte, 1958

1. ... ♜x e6!! -+ [1. ... ♜c1+ 2. ♜f1 ♜x f1+ 3. ♜x f1 ♜x e6 ♯; 1. ... gxf6? 2. ♜x f6+ ♜g8 3. ♜f7+ =] o-i

□ E1-11

Alekhine – Bernstein, *Vilnius* 1912

(variation from the game)

1. ♜x g7+ ♜x g7 2. ♜f7+ ♜h8 3. ♜f8+ ♜x f8 4. ♜x f8#.

□ E1-12

Janowski – Burn, *Oostende* 1907

1. ♜x d7!! [1. ♜x e8+ ♜x e8 2. ♜x d7? ♜x d7 3. ♜x d7 ♜e1+ 4. ♜f1 ♜e2+ -+; 1. ♜x d7? ♜x d7 2. ♜x d7 ♜x d7 3. ♜x d7 ♜e1+ -+; 1. ♜x d7!! ♜x d7 2. ♜dx d7 -+] 1-o

□ E1-13

Mikenas – Bronstein, *Tallinn* 1965

1. ... ♜x a3!! [2. ♜x a3 ♜e1+; 2. ♜x a3 ♜e1+ 3. ♜x e1 ♜x e1#; 2. bxa3 ♜x a1+ 3. ♜b1 ♜e1+ 4. ♜x e1 ♜x e1+ -+] o-i

□ E1-14

NN – NN, *Yugoslavia* 1949

1. ... ♜c5!! o-i

□ E1-15

Alekhine – Köhnlein, *Düsseldorf* 1908

(variation from the game)

1. ♜x d6! cxd6 2. ♜f7+ ♜x f7 3. ♜e8+ +-.

□ E1-16

Alekhine – Reshevsky, *Kemer* 1937

1. ♜x b8+! ♜x b8 2. ♜x e5+! 1-o [2. ... fxe5 3. ♜f8+ +-]

□ E1-17

Torre – Timman, *Hamburg* 1982

1. ... ♖f3+ 2. ♜g2 [2. exf3 ♜xf1+ 3. ♜xf1 ♙h3+ 4. ♜g1 ♙e1#] 2. ... ♜xf1+! -+ 0-1

□ E1-18

Réti – Bogoljubow, New York 1924

1. ♙f7+ ♜h8 2. ♙e8! 1-0

□ E1-19

Alekhine – Frieman, New York (sim) 1924

1. ♙xf6 ♜xf6 [1. ... gxf6 2. ♜h6 ♜f8 3. ♙e8 +-] 2. ♙e8+ ♜f8 3. ♜h6+! ♜xh6 4. ♙xf8+ ♜xf8 5. ♙d8# 1-0

□ E1-20

Alekhine – Johner, Trinidad 1939

1. ♙c8! [1. ♙c7 g6 2. ♙d6 ♜xd6 3. exd6 ♜g7] 1. ... ♙xc8 [1. ... ♜xd7 2. ♜f8+! +-] 2. ♙e7! ♜xe7 [2. ... ♙g8 3. d8♙] 3. dxc8♙+ 1-0

□ E1-21

Vidmar – Euwe, Karlsbad 1929

1. ♙e8+ ♙f8 [1. ... ♜h7 2. ♙d3+ +-] 2. ♙xf8+ ♜xf8 3. ♜f5+ 1-0 [3. ... ♜g8 4. ♜f8+ ♜xf8 5. ♙d8#]

□ E1-22

Capablanca – Fonaroff, New York (casual) 1918

1. ♜h6+ ♜h8 2. ♜xe5!! ♜xe5 3. ♜xf7+ 1-0

□ E1-23

Vodopyanov – Kanzyn, 1974

1. ... ♜g1+!! 2. ♜xg1 f2+ 3. ♜h1 fxe1♙ 0-1

□ E1-24

Shampouw – Silalachi, Indonesia 1971

1. ♜xe8! ♜xh5 2. ♜e7+! ♜xe7 3. ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 4. ♙d8# 1-0

□ E1-25

Sokolov – Yusupov, Riga (m3) 1986

19. ... ♜xe5!! 20. ♜xe5 [20. ♙xd8 ♜xf3+ +-] 20. ... ♜c3! 21. ♙e2 [21. ♙xd8 ♜xc2 22. ♙xf8+ ♜xf8 23. ♙b8+ ♜c8 -+] 21. ... ♜xe5 22. ♙e3

□ E1-26

Lepek – Kohnen, 1962

1. ♙c2! ♜xd4 2. ♙c4! ♜b6 [2. ... ♙d2 3. ♙c8+ ♙d8 4. ♜xd2 +-] 3. ♙c8+ ♙d8 4. ♜b5! +- 1-0 [4. ... ♙d4 5. ♜e8+]

□ E1-27

Crouch – Speelman, Hastings 1992

26. ♙xd7?? [26. ♙b8! ♙a8 27. ♙a1!! ♜xa1 (27. ... ♙dxb8 28. ♙xa2 +-) 28. ♙xd8+ ♙xd8 29. ♜xa1] 26. ... ♙f8 27. ♙b2 ♙xe5 ½-½

□ E1-28

Śliwa – Stoltz, Bucharest, 1953

1. ♜xc6! bxc6 2. b7 ♙d8 3. b8♙ [3. ♙a1 ♙h3, ♙a8] 3. ... ♙d1+ 4. ♙xd1 ♜xb8 5. ♜b7!+- 1-0

□ E1-29

Łowcki – Tartakower, Jurata 1937

Black has to try to exploit the weakness of the back-rank by deflecting the white queen from its defence. The best way to achieve this aim is the double attack on queen and rook.

1. ... ♜c5+!

[1. ... ♜b6+ 2. ♜h1 ♜f6 3. h4]

2. ♜h1 ♜c4!

[2. ... ♜e3?? 3. ♜xe3 ♙f1+ 4. ♜g1 +-]

3. ♜g1 ♙d4+ 4. ♜h1 ♜e4!

Nothing else works:

[4. ... ♙d2? 5. ♙xe5; 4. ... ♜e3?? 5. ♜xe3 +-; 4. ... ♜h4? 5. ♙xe5; 4. ... ♙d3 5. ♜g1 ♙d4+; 4. ... ♜f4 5. h4]

The white queen was well placed on e1. This deflection forces it to leave its best position.

5. ♜c1

[5. ♙xe5 ♜xe5 -+; 5. ♙d1 ♜f4 -+; 5. ♜g1 ♜e2 -+]

5. ... ♙d3!

A crucial move. The queen has to control the important f5 square. 5. ... ♜e2 was worse because

of the deflecting sacrifice 6. ♖f5! (Black also has back-rank problems!).

6. ♖g1 ♖d4+ 7. ♖h1 ♖d2! -+

Now the double attack works. You may only award yourself the points if you found this move.

0-1

□ E1-30

Adams – Torre Repetto, New Orleans 1920

In this celebrated example, both sides have back-rank weaknesses. But White has the possibility of deflecting Black's queen from its main task, the protection of the rook on e8.

1. ♖g4! ♖b5

[1. ... ♖d8 2. ♖xc8 ♖xc8 (2. ... ♖xe2 3. ♖xd8+

♙xd8 4. ♖xe2) 3. ♖xe8+]]

2. ♖c4!! ♖d7

[2. ... ♖xc4 3. ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 4. ♖xe8#]

3. ♖c7!! ♖b5 4. a4!!

The key move, and the only one to get points. The immediate 4. ♖xb7? would have been a mistake, because of the counter 4. ... ♖xe2! exploiting the weakened back-rank: 5. ♖xe2 ♖c1+.

4. ... ♖xa4

[4. ... ♖xe2 5. ♖xc8+; 4. ... ♖xe2 5. ♖xe2]

5. ♖e4

Now White threatens 6. ♖xc8.

5. ... ♖b5

Black can no longer play 5. ... ♖xe2!

6. ♖xb7! 1-0

Score table

Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1	_____	11	2	_____	21	3	_____
2	1	_____	12	2	_____	22	3	_____
3	1	_____	13	2	_____	23	3	_____
4	1	_____	14	2	_____	24	3	_____
5	1	_____	15	2	_____	25	3	_____
6	1	_____	16	2	_____	26	3	_____
7	1	_____	17	2	_____	27	3	_____
8	1	_____	18	3	_____	28	4	_____
9	1	_____	19	3	_____	29	5	_____
10	1	_____	20	3	_____	30	6	_____
							total	69

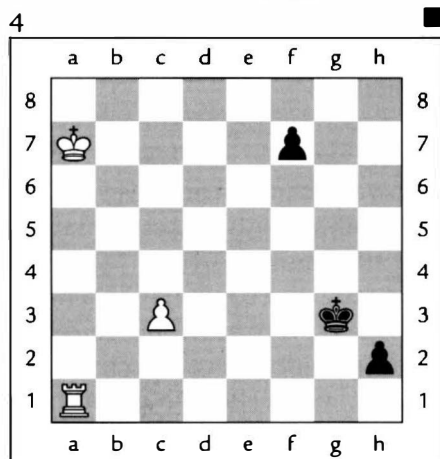
Points	Playing Strength
less than 5 points	beginner
5-10 points	ELO 800-1000
11-20 points	ELO 1000-1500
21-30 points	ELO 1500-1700
31-40 points	ELO 1700-1900
41-54 points	ELO 1900-2100
55-58 points	ELO 2100-2200
59-63 points	ELO 2200-2300
more than 63 points	ELO above 2300

2 Candidate Moves

Before we start to calculate, we have to identify the most likely possibilities: these are the candidate moves. All calculation begins with the selection of candidate moves. Sometimes we are limited to one single possibility, but more often we can choose between two or three moves. In some rare cases we may find even more alternatives than this. While a computer will calculate all possible lines in a position, we deliberately limit our choice to the main lines. This is our strength, but unfortunately it can also turn out to be the main weakness of human thinking: if we limit our choice too much, we can simply miss the strongest continuation.

Peter Svidler – Eric Lobron

Yerevan (ol) 1996



This game was played at a critical moment: the German team faced Russia, the tournament favourites. For the whole game Eric Lobron had had to defend an almost lost position. His stubbornness finally paid off: in the diagram position Black has a saving resource. There followed:

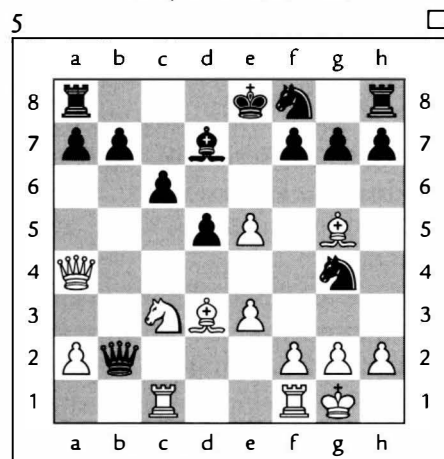
60. ... f5 61. ♖b6

(The other possibility 61. c4, leads to a simple theoretical draw: 61. ... ♜g2 62. c5 h1♙ 63. ♜xh1 ♜xh1 64. c6 f4 65. c7 f3 66. c8♙ f2)

The time control had been reached, so Eric could calmly consider the position. Our team captain, Grandmaster Darga, was delighted to see a simple way to draw. He glanced at Eric, looking tired after the long struggle, and realised that he was preparing to resign. Sadly, the rules of chess don't permit any prompting, so our team lost an important half point. Black only has two candidate moves (or rather, two candidate ideas): 61. ... f4 and advancing the pawn; or 61. ... ♜g2 to win the rook for the pawn first. Lobron satisfied himself that after 61. ... f4? 62. ♜c5 ♜g2 63. ♜d4 f3 64. ♜e3 f2 65. ♜e2 the white king returns in time to stop the passed pawn, and he resigned. The other idea was either not considered by Black, or he rejected it too early in his calculations. He could have drawn easily with 61. ... ♜g2! 62. ♜c5 h1♙ 63. ♜xh1 ♜xh1 64. ♜d4 ♜g2 65. ♜e5 ♜f3 66. ♜xf5 ♜e3 67. ♜e5 ♜d3.

The selection of candidate moves has a crucial influence on the accuracy of calculation, and therefore determines the strength of a chess player. One can say that candidate moves are central to calculation, and the search for candidate moves is the soul of this calculation. If the strongest continuation falls into the master's mind, then in the majority of cases further calculation is unnecessary.

Artur Yusupov – Jesús Nogueiras
Montpellier (ct) 1985



Here I fell into deep contemplation. In return for the sacrificed pawn I have a great lead in development and a mighty initiative. 14. ♙c2 suggests itself, gaining a tempo for further development, but I failed to find a clear way to gain the advantage. The position after 14. ... ♖b6 15. ♙b1 ♜c7 16. ♙f4 (16. ♜xd5 ♜xe5) 16. ... ♜e6 is better for White, but I got the feeling that the starting position promised more. The evaluation of a position is like a compass for the chess player; it led me back – eventually – to the search for other candidate moves. The right attitude led to success. I found a move that created five threats! After

14. ♜d4!!

(threatening 15. ♜xd5, 15. ♜b5, 15. ♜e4, 15. ♙b1 and 15. e6 ♙xe6 16. ♜xg7)

14. ... f6

(if 14. ... ♖b6, then 15. e6!)

15. exf6 gxf6 16. ♙xf6 ♜g8

Or 16. ... ♜xf6 17. ♜xf6 ♜g8 18. ♜xd5!.

17. ♜b5! ♜xb5

17. ... ♜xd4 18. ♜d6#.

18. ♙xb5 ♜e6 19. ♜b2 cxb5 20. ♙h4

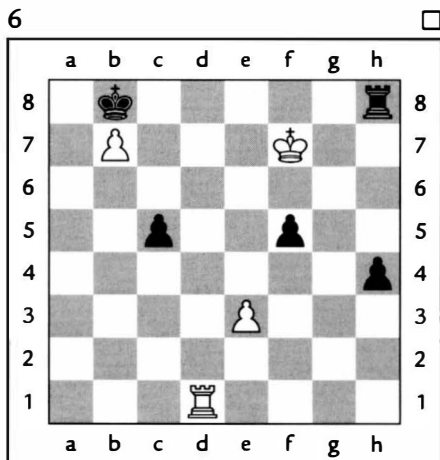
Black resigned.

* * *

The search for candidate moves is a creative process. There is no simple algorithm, but there are some priorities to follow. First, you must *consider all forcing moves*, namely checks, captures and attacks. Some of these moves can be discarded immediately, but others remain as candidate moves. With these remaining moves you have to begin calculating. One can imagine the whole game as a series of problems. When analysing the candidate moves and moving the pieces in your mind, it is advisable to *look at the position through your opponent's eyes* and to include his possibilities.

It is also very important *not to immediately engross your mind in calculation*. After you draw up your candidate moves, carry out a short analysis with a provisional assessment of the position. If you fail to find a clear and attractive continuation among the chosen moves, it is advisable to return to the starting point and to search for further candidates. *Ask yourself occasionally if there aren't other possibilities*. Sometimes it happens that during the calculation of variations you might spot new ideas that change the way you view the initial position.

Wotawa 1938



My trainer Mark Dvoretsky gave me this study to solve. I spent a long time looking for a resource in this difficult endgame, but without success. Nothing good comes of 1. ♖g7?, because of 1. ... ♜e8. Blocking the h-pawn with the rook is a somewhat better approach, but for a study, the lines are simply too complicated and, in the end, aren't good enough for a draw. I was in deep con-

templation with these lines when my trainer's voice distracted me: 'What haven't you considered yet?'

I found the solution straightaway:

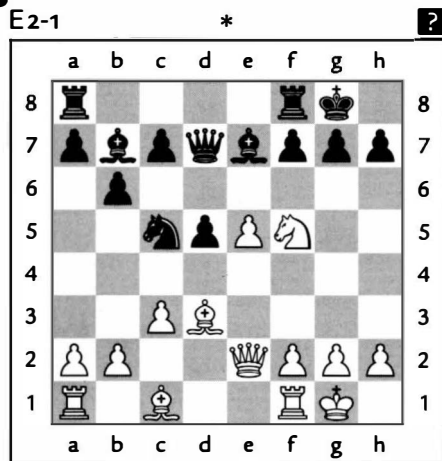
1. e4!! fxe4 2. ♖g7 ♜h5 3. ♖g6 ♜e5 4. ♖f6 ♜e8 5. ♖f7 with a perpetual attack on the rook.

* * *

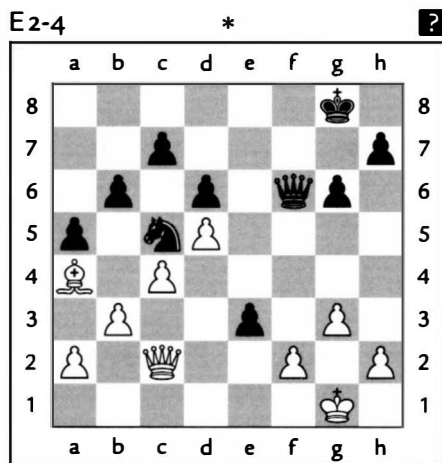
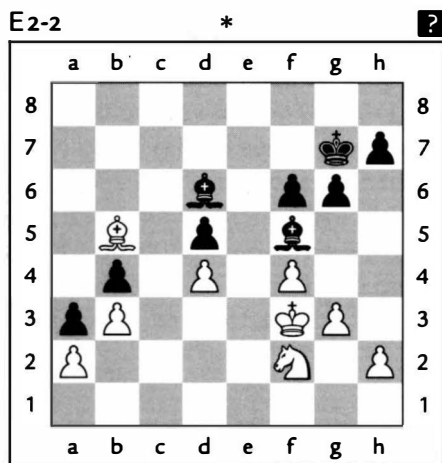
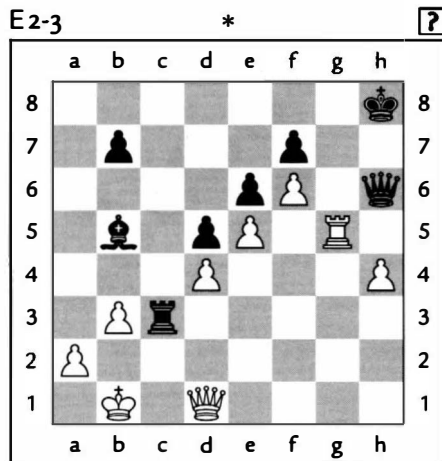
The precise, short calculation of the initial moves in a position is more important than the ability to calculate long lines. A mistake in these first moves is more dangerous than a mistake in the tenth move of a variation. The key to solving a problem is very often the *discovery* of the best continuation, but not its calculation. When going through the exercises and solutions from this booklet you should concentrate on the search for candidate moves. *Try to find all the candidate moves, first.* If these moves don't help much, go back and ask yourself: *what other possibilities are there in this position?*

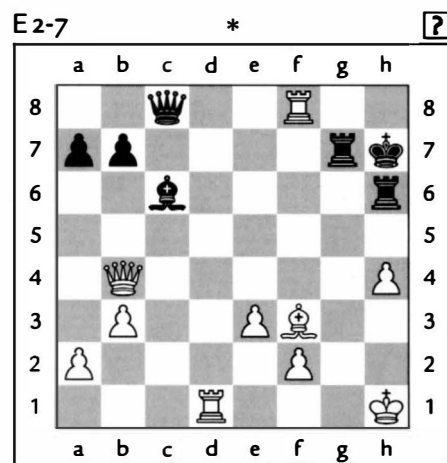
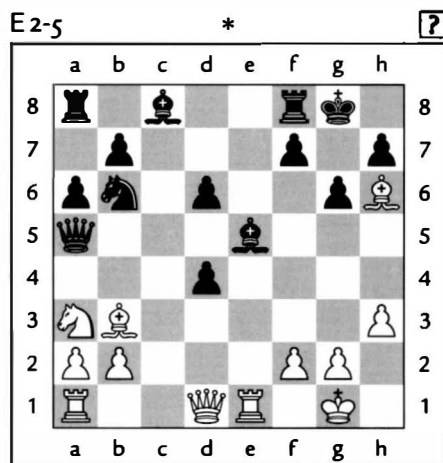


Exercises (solutions p. 24-27)

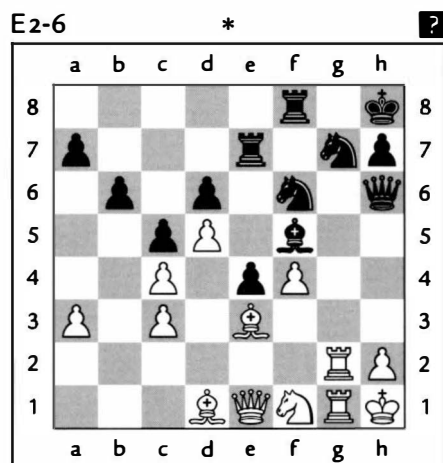


Evaluate the move 1. ... $\text{d} \times \text{d}_3$

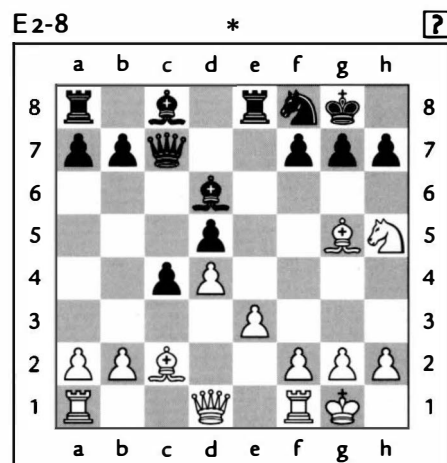




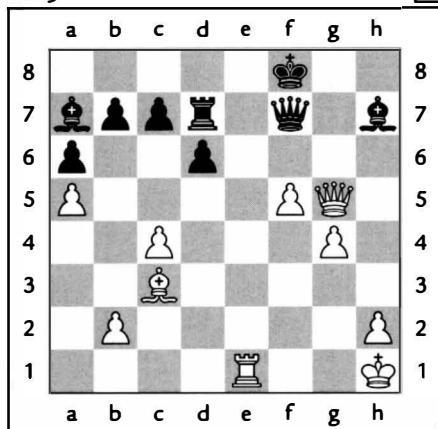
Evaluate the move 1. ♖e4+



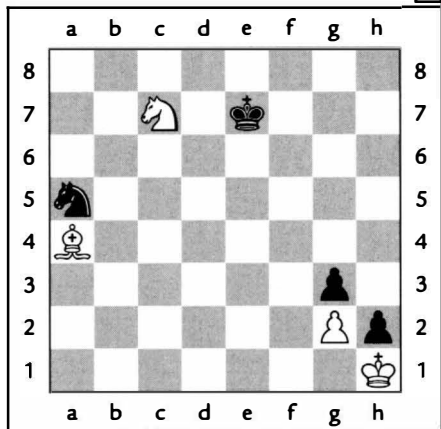
Evaluate the move 1. ... ♗h3



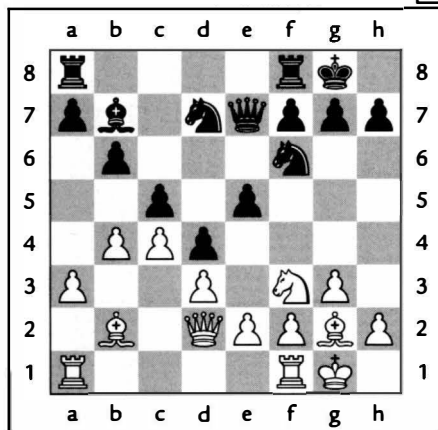
E2-9 ** ?



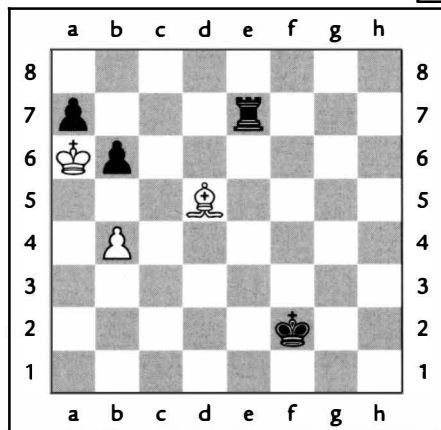
E2-11 ** ?



E2-10 ** ?



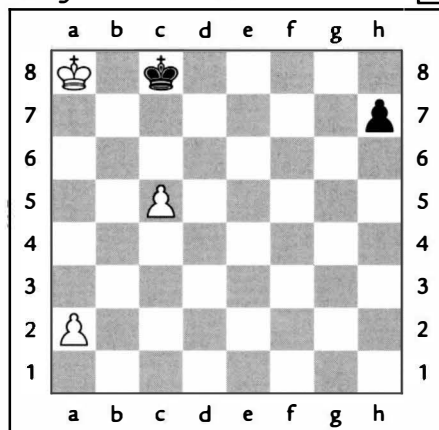
E2-12 ** ?



E2-13

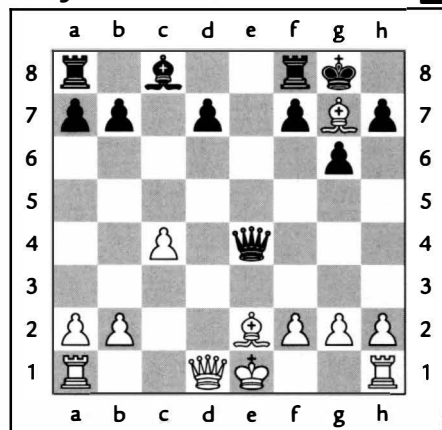
**

?



E2-15

?

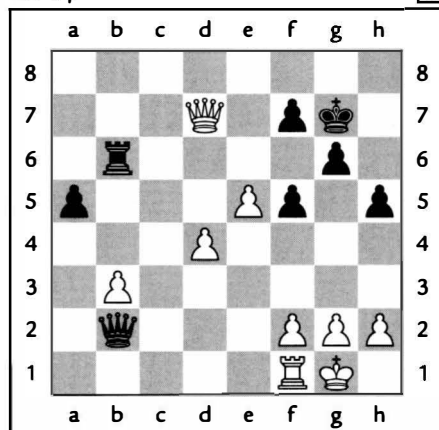


Evaluate the move 1. ... ♖xg2

E2-14

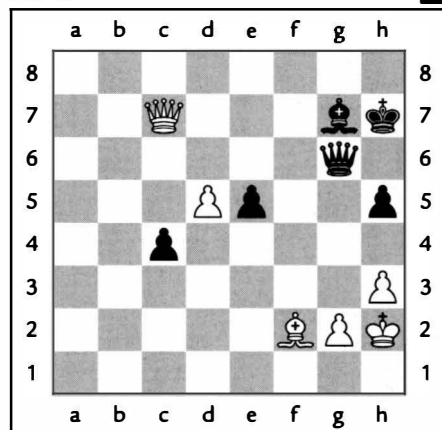
**

?



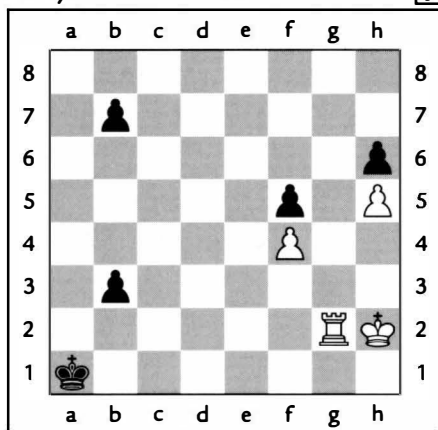
E2-16

?



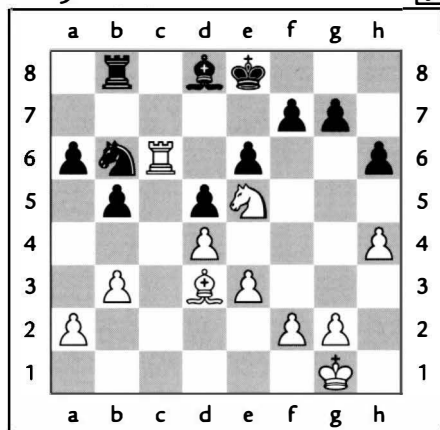
E2-17

?



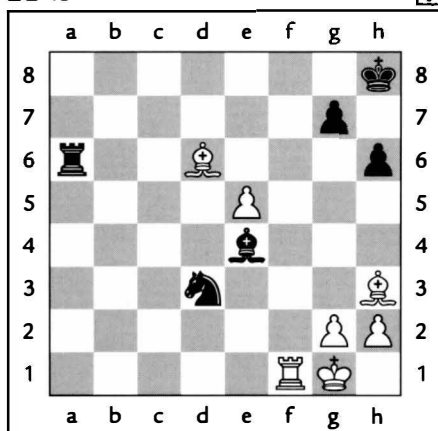
E2-19

?



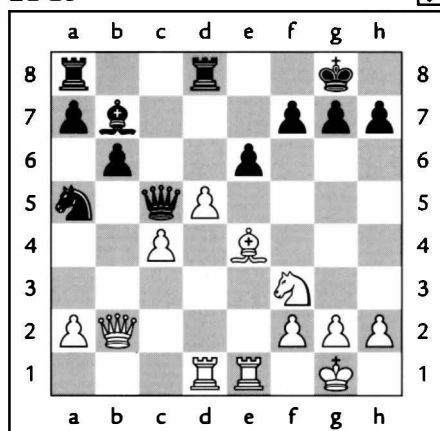
E2-18

?

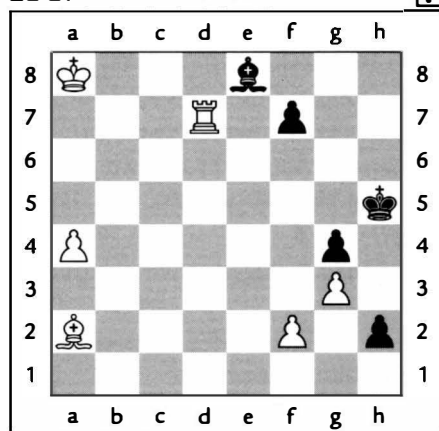


E2-20

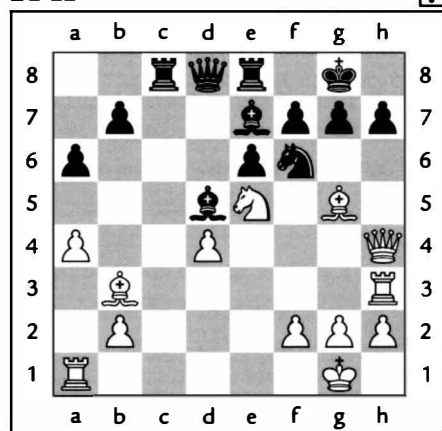
?



E2-21



E2-22



Solutions

□ E2-1

Bogoljubow – Hussong, Karlsruhe 1938/39

1. ... ♖xd3??

A grave error. Black was only expecting the 'automatic' answer 2. ♜xd3.

2. ♜g4! g6

[△2. ... ♙g5 3. ♜h6+ ♙xh6 4. ♜xd7 ♜xc1 5. ♜axc1 ♙xc1 6. ♜xc1 +-]

3. ♜h6+ 1-0

□ E2-2

Yusupov – Salov, Barcelona 1989

1. ... ♙c2! [1. ... ♙b1? 2. ♙d3 ♙xa2?? 3. ♙c2 +-] 2. ♙d3 [2. ♙a4 ♙b1 +-] 2. ... ♙xb3 3. ♙b1 ♙c4 +- 0-1

□ E2-3

Olland – Wolf, Karlsbad 1907

1. ♜b2! [1. ♜h5? ♜c1+ 2. ♜xc1 ♜xh5 ♞] 1. ... ♜d3 2. ♜c1 [2. ♜g4 +-] 2. ... ♙c6 [2. ... ♜h7 3. ♜g7+ +-; 2. ... ♙d7 3. ♜g8+ ♜h7 4. ♜h8+ +-; 2. ... ♜xh4 3. ♜c8+ ♜h7 4. ♜g8+ ♜h6 42. ♜g7#] 3. ♜g8+ ♜xg8 4. ♜xh6 +- 1-0

□ E2-4

Tukmakov – Anand, New Delhi 1986

1. ... ♜d3! [1. ... exf2+ 2. ♜xf2 ♞] 2. ♜e2 [2. fxe3 ♜a1+ 3. ♜g2 ♜e1 +-+-; 2. ♜xd3 ♜xf2+ 3. ♜h1 e2 +-] 2. ... ♜xf2+ 3. ♜xf2 exf2+ 4. ♜f1 ♜g7 +- 5. ♙b5 ♜f6 6. c5 ♜xc5 7. ♜xf2 ♜e5 0-1

□ E2-5

Anand – Salov, Paris (rapid) 1991

1. ♙d2! [1. ♙xh8 ♜xf8 2. ♜f3 f6 ±] 1. ... ♜c5 2. ♜c1 ♜xc1 3. ♙xc1 ♙d7 4. ♙h6 ♜fe8 5. ♜f3 1-0

□ E2-6

Granda Zúñiga – Svidler, Madrid 1998

1. ... ♙h3??

Svidler was obviously only expecting the continuation that followed in the game. Instead 2. f5! ♙xg2+ 3. ♜xg2! +- would have won.

What was overlooked by the two players: the second or even the first move?

2. ♜g5?? ♜f5 ♞

and Black finally managed to win the game.

□ E2-7

Silich – Rokhlin, Odessa 1929

1. ♙e4+??

The best way to victory was 36. ♜e4+! +-, though 36. ♜xc8 ♙xf3+ 37. ♜h2 ♙xd1 38. ♜e4+ ♜hg6 39. f3 +- was also good enough. An unpleasant surprise now awaits.

1. ... ♜f5!! +-

Look for your opponent's candidate moves too!

0-1

□ E2-8

Yusupov – Milov, Dresden (zt) 1998

1. ♜f3?

1. ♙f6 g6 wasn't any better. But just after carrying out my move I found an easy way to get a big advantage:

1. ♙h6! ♙xh2+ (1. ... ♜e6 2. ♜g4 f5 3. ♜xf5 gxf6 4. ♜f6+ +-; 1. ... gxf6 2. ♜f6+ +-) 2. ♜h1 ♜c6 (2. ... ♙d6 3. ♜xg7 ♜d8 4. ♜h5 ±) 2. ♙xg7 ♙c7 3. ♜f3 ♜g6 4. ♙h6 ± (4. ♙f6 ±).

1. ... ♜g6! 2. h4

The position has become very complicated. The situation after 2. ♙f6! was also unclear:

2. ♙f6! ♙f8! (2. ... gxf6 18. ♜xf6+ ♜f8 3. ♜h5 ♙e6 4. ♜xe8 ♜xe8 5. f4 c3 6. b3 ±) 3. ♜xd5 ♙g4 ∞ or 2. ♜xd5! ♙xh2+ 3. ♜h1 ♙g4! 4. ♙xg6! hxf6 5. ♜f4 ♙xf4 6. ♙xf4 ±.

I realised here that I had probably missed a win and I lost interest in playing on. I offered a draw which my opponent accepted.

After 2. ... ♙e6 (△♜d7) 3. e4 ♜d7 (or 3. ... dxe4 4. ♙xe4 ♜d7 5. ♙xb7 ♙g4 6. ♜d5 ♙e6 7.

♙c6 ♙xd5 8. ♙xd7 ♞e2 ♞ 3. e5 ♙xe5 4. dxe5 ♙g4 5. e6! ♜xe6 6. ♜f4 ♙xf3 (6. ... ♜xf4 7. ♜xf4 f6 8. ♙xf6 gxf6 9. ♞ae1 ♞ 7. ♜xe6 ♞xe6 8. gxf3 h6 chances are balanced.

□ E2-9

Tomczak – Anand, Lugano 1988

1. ♞e6??

Correct was 35. ♜h6+ ♜g8 36. ♞e6 (Δ ♜g5, ♞f6) and White wins.

1. ... ♜xe6! –+ 0-1

□ E2-10

Anand – Andersson, Monte Carlo (rapid) 1997

Anand finds a surprising way to win a pawn.

1. ♜xd4! ♙xg2 2. ♜f5 ♜e6 3. ♜g5 ♜e8

Or 3. ... g6 4. ♜h6+.

4. ♙xg2 h6 5. ♜g4 ♜df6 6. ♜f3 +–

There followed

6. ... e4 7. dxe4 ♜xe4 8. ♞fd1 ♜h7 9. bxc5 bxc5 10. ♞d5 ♜8f6 11. ♙xf6! ♜xf6 12. ♞xc5 ♞ab8 13. ♞d1 ♞b2 14. ♜d4 ♜e7 15. ♞b5 and Black resigned.

□ E2-11

Richard Réti, 1922

To win the game, White has to attack the g-pawn with his knight as quickly as possible.

1. ♜e8!! [1. ♜d5+ ♜e6 2. ♜f4+ ♜f5 3. ♜e2 ♜g4 4. ♙d7+ ♜h4 5. ♜d4 ♜g5 =] 1. ... ♜e6 [1. ... ♜b3 2. ♜g7 ♜d4 3. ♜h5 ♜f5 4. ♙c2 (4. ♙b5) 4. ... ♜e3 5. ♙e4 +–; 1. ... ♜c4 2. ♜g7 ♜d6 (2. ... ♜e3 3. ♜h5 ♜f5 4. ♙b5 ♜e6 5. ♙d3) 3. ♙c2 +–] 2. ♜g7+ ♜e5 3. ♜h5 1-0

□ E2-12

Jindřich Fritz, 1965

1. ♙b7! [1. b5 ♜e3 2. ♙b7 ♜d4 3. ♙xa7 ♜c5 –+] 1. ... ♞xb7 [1. ... ♜e3 2. ♙xa7 b5 3. ♙b6 ♜d4 4. ♙c6 =; 1. ... b5 2. ♙xa7 =] 2. b5! [2. ♙xb7? a5 –+] 2. ... ♞b8 [2. ... ♞d7 =; 2. ... ♜e3?? 3. ♙xb7 ♜d4 4. ♙xa7 ♜c5 5. ♙a6 ♞ 3. ♙xa7 ♞h8 4. ♙xb6 ♜e3 5. ♜c7 [5. ♙a7 ♞h1 6. b6

♞a1+ 7. ♜b8 =] 5. ... ♜d4 6. b6 ♜c5 7. b7 ♞h7+ 8. ♜c8 ♜c6 9. b8 ♜+ =

□ E2-13

Tigran Gorgiev, 1930

The key to this study is the zugzwang position after move 6. Both sides have to reach this position with the other to move.

1. c6!

1. a4? h6! 2. a5 h5 3. a6 h4 4. a7 h3 5. c6 h2 6. c7 h1 ♜# is too fast! 1. a3? h5! 2. a4 h4 3. a5 h3 4. a6 h2 5. a7 h1 ♜+ is too slow!

1. ... h6

[1. ... ♜c7 2. a4 ♜xc6 3. a5 ♜b5 4. ♜b7! =; 1. ... h5 2. a4!]

2. a3! h5

[2. ... ♜c7 3. a4 ♜xc6 4. a5 ♜b5 5. ♜b7! ♜xa5 6. ♜c6 h5 7. ♜d5 and the king reaches the h-pawn.]

3. a4 h4 4. a5 h3 5. a6 h2 6. a7 =

□ E2-14

Smyslov – Lilienthal, Moscow 1938

1. ♜a7?

Correct was 1. ♜d8! ♞xb3 (if 1. ... ♜xb3, then 2. d5! +– and d6; 1. ... ♞e6 wasn't better because of 2. f4 +– with the threat of d5) 2. ♜f6+ ♜g8 3. e6 and White wins.

1. ... ♜xb3?

Instead, 1. ... ♜xd4? 2. e6 +– was also poor; but 1. ... ♞xb3 would have led to equality (2. e6 ♞b7).

2. ♜xa5 ±

and Smyslov converted his advantage to victory.

□ E2-15

Gaprindashvili – Servaty, Dortmund 1974

1. ... ♜xg2?

This move loses. Black should have tried to defend a worse position with 1. ... ♜xg7.

2. ♙d4!!

[2. ♙f3? ♞e8+ –+; 2. ♙xf8 ♜xh1+ 3. ♙f1 ♜e4+ =]

2. ... ♜xh1+ 3. ♜d2 ♜xa1

[3. ... ♖xh2 4. ♔f3! ♚e8 5. ♚h1 ♜c7 6. ♔h8! +-]

4. ♖f6! +-

and because of 4. ... ♖xa2 5. ♔h6 ♖a5+ 6. ♔d1 ♖a4+ 7. ♔c1 ♖a1+ 8. ♔c2 ♖a4+ 9. ♔b1 Black resigned.

□ E2-16

Yusupov – Adams, Dortmund 1994

1. ... ♖d3?

1. ... ♖f5!! would have saved the game:

A) 2. ♔g3 ♖e4 3. d6 (3. ♖f7 =) 3. ... h4! =;

B) 2. ♔e3 ♖e4 3. ♔g5 ♖xd5 (or 3. ... ♔g6 4. d6 ♔f6 5. ♔xf6 ♖f4+ 6. ♔g1 ♖e3+ 7. ♔f1 ♖d3+ =) 4. ♔f6 ♖g8 5. ♔xe5 ♔h8 6. ♔xg7+ ♖xg7 7. ♖xc4 ♖e5+.

2. d6 c3

[2. ... ♔g6 3. d7 ♔f6 4. ♔b6 ±]

3. d7 c2 4. ♔e3!

This move was overlooked by Adams.

4. ... ♖xe3 5. ♖xc2+ e4 6. ♖c7!

Even simpler than 6. d8 ♖ ♔e5+ 7. g3 ♔xg3+ (7. ... ♖xg3+ 8. ♔h1 ♖xh3+ 9. ♔g1 ♖g3+ 10. ♔f1) 11. ♔h1 ♖f3+ 12. ♖g2.

Black resigned.

In sharp positions it is very dangerous to base one's play on general assessments alone.

□ E2-17

G. Kissling, 1915

1. ♔g5! [1. ♔g7?? b2 2. ♚xb7 b1 ♖ -+; 1. ♔g8? b2 2. ♚a8+ ♔b1 3. ♚a5 ♔c2 4. ♚c5+ ♔d2 5. ♚b5 =] 1. ... h×g5 [1. ... b2 2. ♚xf5 b6 (2. ... b1 ♖ 3. ♚a5+ ♖a2+ 4. ♚xa2+ ♔xa2 5. f5+-) 3. ♚b5+-] 2. h6 b2 3. h7 b1 ♖ 4. h8 ♖+ ♔a2 5. ♖a8+ ♔b2 6. ♖xb7+ ♔a2 7. ♖xb1+ ♔xb1 8. f×g5 1-0

□ E2-18

Yusupov – Timman, Reykjavík 1988

1. g3?

Sadly, this was the wrong choice. Needless to say, I saw the alternative 1. e6!, but after 1. ... ♚xd6 2. e7 ♔c6 (2. ... ♔g6 3. ♚f8+ ♔h7 4. ♔f5+-) 3.

♚f8+ ♔h7 I calculated just one line:

A) 4. ♚d8 ♚f6 and none of the three continuations promises White victory:

A1) 5. ♔d7 ♔xd7 6. ♚xd7 ♚e6 =;

A2) 5. ♔d7! ♔xd7 (5. ... ♔f4 6. e8 ♖ ♔xh3+ 7. g×h3 ♔xd7 8. ♖xd7 h5! =) 6. ♔xd7 ♚b6 7. ♔f5+ g6 8. ♔xg6+ ♔g7 =;

A3) 5. ♚xd3 ♔g6 6. ♔d7 ♔xd7 7. ♚xd7 ♔f7 ±. But you always have to search for candidate moves, and not just in the initial position! After the intermediate check, White wins very easily:

B) 4. ♔f5+! g6 5. ♚d8 ♚f6 (5. ... g×f5 6. ♚xd6 ♔e5 7. ♚xc6+-) 6. ♔d7 ♔xd7 7. ♚xd7 and there is no defence against 8. e8 ♖+!

In the game Timman managed to hold the position after

1. ... ♔h7 2. ♔g2 ♔xg2 3. ♔xg2 ♔g6 ±.

□ E2-19

Dautov – Yusupov, Bundesliga 1997/98

1. ♔g6!!

I almost fell off my chair when he made this move.

1. ... f×g6

1. ... ♚b7 2. ♚xe6+ ♔f8 wasn't any better, due to 3. ♔xf7! ♚xf7 4. ♔g6+ ♔g8 5. ♚e8+ ♔h7 6. h5+-.

2. ♚xe6+ ♔f8

Or 2. ... ♔e7 3. ♚xe7+ ♔xe7 4. ♔c6+ ♔d6 5. ♔xb8 a5 6. ♔f1+-.

3. ♔c6 ♔d7 4. ♚d6!

But Black gets more chances after 4. ♔xb8 ♔xb8 5. g3 ♔f7 6. ♚d6 ♔e7 7. ♚xd5 (Or 7. ♚b6 ♔d7 8. ♚xa6 b4) 7. ... ♔e6 8. ♚e5+ ♔d6.

4. ... ♚c8 5. ♚xd7 ♔xh4

Let's weigh up the results of the combination. White is much better: his pieces are more active than Black's and his pawn structure healthier. Later Dautov gave me some chances, but his eventual win was certainly deserved.

□ E2-20

Yusupov – Schlosser, Bundesliga 1997/98

1. ♖e5 (with the idea ♔h7) looks promising, but I couldn't find a concrete way to continue after 1. ... h6! My main hopes were connected with 1. dxe6?, but then I saw that 1. ... ♙xd1 2. exf7+ ♜f8! 3. ♙xd1 ♔xe4 would be better for Black. I went back to the beginning and found another candidate move.

1. ♖g5!

Now White attacks with vigour.

1. ... h6

If 1. ... ♖xc4 2. ♔xh7+ ♜f8 3. ♖e2! ♔xd5 (Or 3. ... ♙xd5 4. ♖xe6+!! fxe6 5. ♖xe6 ♙xd1 6. ♖g8#) 4. ♖h5 with a decisive attack.

2. ♔h7+ ♜h8

There is no defence after 2. ... ♜f8 3. ♖xf7!! ♜xf7 4. ♙d3 +- or 4. ♖e5 +-.

3. ♖xf7+ ♜xh7 4. ♖c2+!

Naturally not 4. ♖xd8? ♙xd8 5. ♙xe6 ♖xc4 ±.

4. ... ♜g8

Black's king position would have been too open after 4. ... g6. There would follow 5. ♖xd8 (5. ♙xe6 ♙g8 6. ♖e5 is good too) 5. ... ♙xd8 6. ♙xe6 ♙g8 7. ♙de1

A) 25. ... ♖xc4 26. ♙e7+ ♙g7 27. ♖b2 +-;

B) 25. ... ♖xc4 26. ♙e7+ (26. ♙xg6? ♙xg6 27. ♙e6 ♖e5!) 26. ... ♙g7 27. ♙xg7+ ♜xg7 28. ♙e6 +-;

C) 25. ... ♔c8 26. ♙e7+ ♙g7 27. ♙xg7+ ♜xg7 28. ♖c3+ +-

5. ♖xh6+! +-

This sacrifice ruins Black's king position.

5. ... g×h6 6. ♖g6+ ♜f8 7. ♖xh6+ ♜g8

Or 7. ... ♜f7 8. ♖h7+ (8. dxe6+ ♜g8 9. ♙xd8+ ♙xd8 10. ♖g6+ +-) 8. ... ♜f8 9. dxe6 +-.

8. ♖g6+ ♜f8 9. ♖f6+ ♜g8 10. ♙e5

And Black resigned.

□ E2-21

Bondarenko & Kuznetsov, 1977

1. ♙d5+!

Other candidate moves were worse: 1. ♔d5

♔xd7 2. a5 ♔b5 3. ♜b7 ♔e2 4. a6 ♔f3 5. ♔xf3 gxf3 6. a7 h1♖ ♖; 1. ♙d1 ♔xa4! 2. ♙c1 ♔c6+ 3. ♜b8 (3. ♙xc6 h1♖) 3. ... h1♖ =.

1. ... f5!

1. ... ♜g6? 2. ♙d6+ ♜g7 3. ♔d5 +-.

2. ♙d1!

2. ♙xf5+? ♜g6 3. ♙h5 (3. ♔d5 ♜xf5 4. a5 ♜e5 5. ♔b7 ♔f7 6. a6 ♔d5 -+) 3. ... ♜xh5 4. ♔d5 ♔xa4 -+.

2. ... ♔xa4 3. ♙c1 ♔c6+ 4. ♙xc6! h1♖ 5. ♔f7+ ♜g5 6. f4+!

The point. The rook is unpinned.

6. ... gxf3 7. ♙g6+ ♜h5 8. ♙g8+ ♜h6 9. ♙h8+ 1-0

□ E2-22

Najdorf – Kotov, Mar del Plata 1957

1. ♔d1?!

△ ♔h5. Other candidate moves:

A) 1. ♔xf6 ♔xf6 2. ♖xh7+ ♜f8 ±;

B) 1. ♖g4 looks good, for example:

B1) 1. ... h6? 2. ♖xh6+ +- or

B2) 1. ... ♔xb3? 2. ♖xf6+ ♔xf6 3. ♖xh7+ ♜f8 4. ♖h8+ ♜e7 5. ♖xg7 +-.

But Black can put up a better defence:

B3) 1. ... ♜f8! 2. ♖xf6 (2. ♔h6!?) 2. ... ♔xf6 3. ♔xf6 ♖xf6 4. ♖xf6 gxf6 5. ♔xd5 exd5 6. ♙xh7 ♜g8 and Black still has counter chances.

But, besides the move Najdorf played in the game, there is still one more candidate move.

C) 1. ♔c2!! (an idea of Zaitsev)

The threat is 2. ♔xh7+ and if Black takes the bishop, White wins the rook after 2. ♔xf6 ♔xf6 3. ♖xh7+ and 4. ♖xc2. Let's consider Black's possible defences:

C1) 1. ... g6 2. ♔xf6 +-;

C2) 1. ... h6 2. ♔xh6 +-;

C3) 1. ... ♜f8 2. ♔xh7 ♖xh7 3. ♖h5! +- aren't too interesting.

In principle, there only remains

C4) 1. ... ♙xc2 2. ♔xf6 h6 (2. ... ♔xf6 3. ♖xh7+ ♜f8 4. ♖xc2 +-) 3. ♖h5! ♔xf6 (3. ... ♙f8 4. ♔xg7 +-) 4. ♖xf7+ ♜h7 (4. ... ♜h8 5. ♙xh6+!

g×h6 6. ♖g6#) 5. ♜×h6+! ♜×h6 6. ♜g6#.

Zaitsev's analysis removes any doubts. To find a move like 1. ♜c2!! during an actual game is incredibly tough, but the constant search for candidate moves can help us a little bit.

1. ... ♜a5?

Kotov does not see the threat. It was much better

to play 1. ... ♜c7!?, to protect the weak f7 point (2. ♜h5 ♖×h5 3. ♜×h5? ♜×g5).

2. ♜h5! ♜ed8

22. ... ♖×h5 23. ♜×h5 +-; 22. ... ♜f8 23. ♜×f6 ♜×f6 24. ♜×f7+ ♜×f7 25. ♜×h7+ +-.

3. ♜×f7+ ♜f8 4. ♜h6! +- ♖e8 5. ♜f4 ♜f6

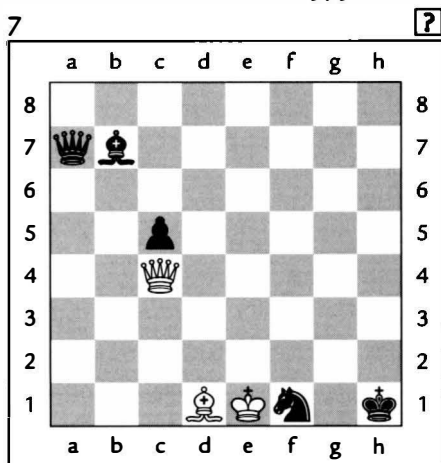
6. ♜×g7+ ♜e7 7. ♜×e8 ♜×g7 8. ♜×h7 1-0

Practical exercises

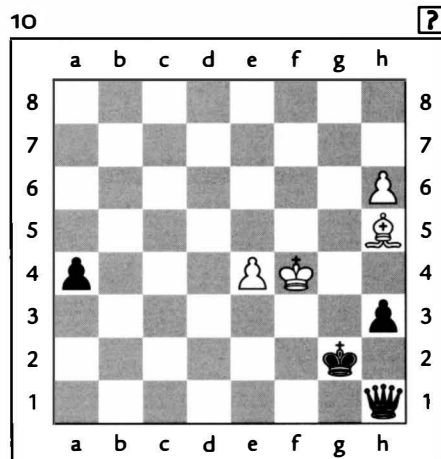
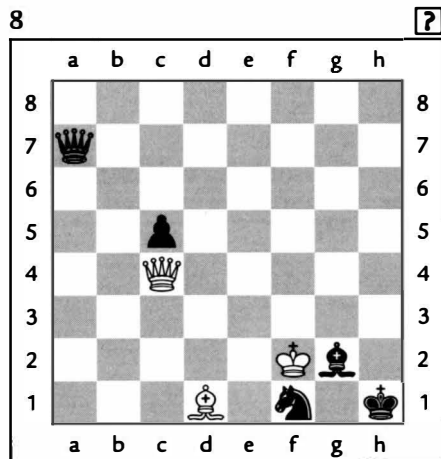
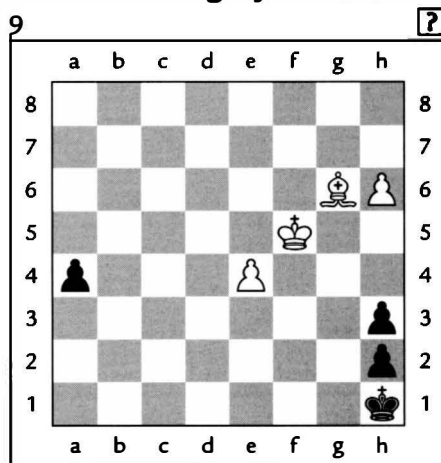
Try to play the following two studies like real games. You take White and allow yourself one hour's thinking time. Cover the moves and diagrams with a sheet of paper. When you have made your decision, you are allowed to look at the right move (on the solutions page), the comments, and your 'opponent's' next move. For every correct move you are awarded points.

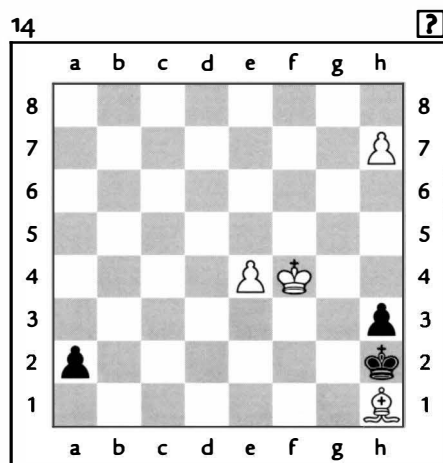
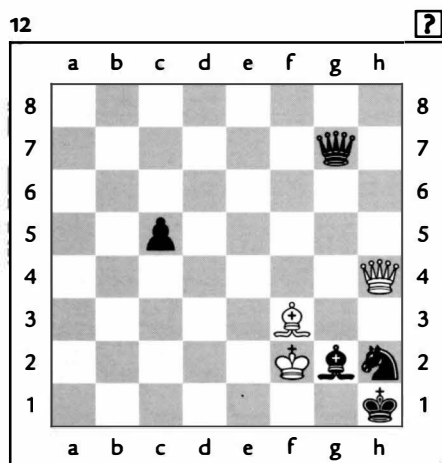
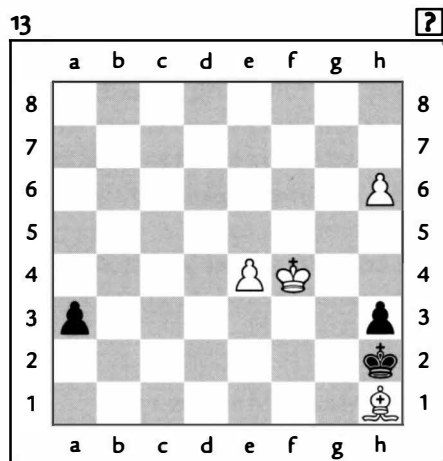
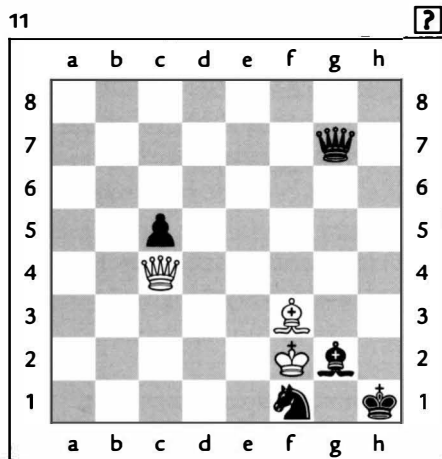
The left column shows you a study by Matous, the right one, a study by Pogosjants. Concentrate on the candidate moves and don't try to calculate everything from beginning to end.

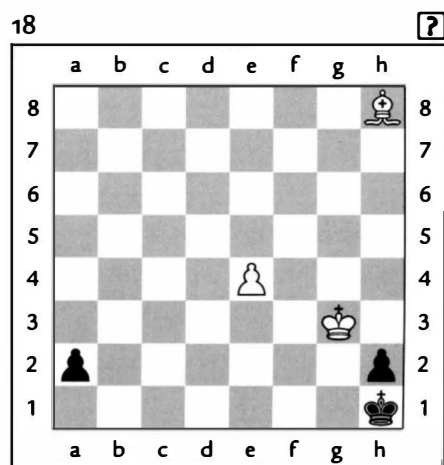
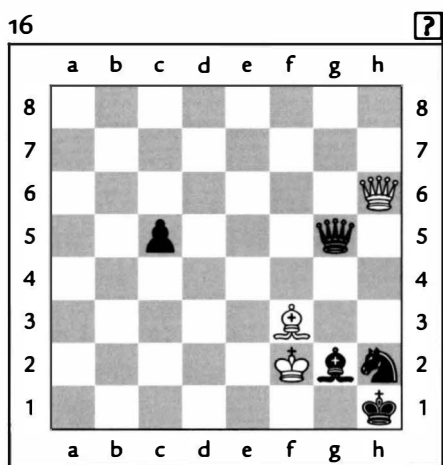
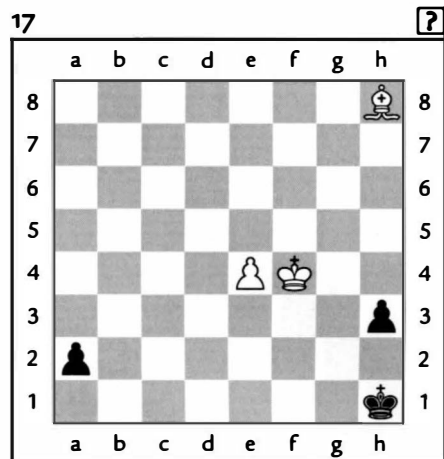
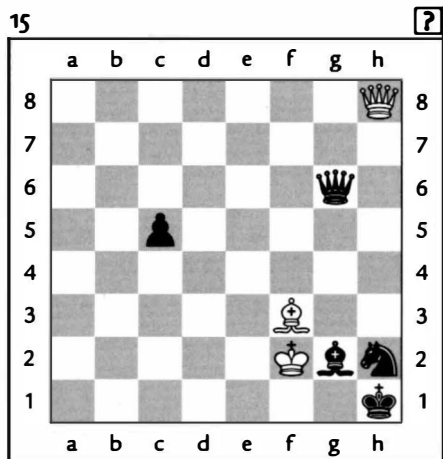
Mario Matous 1979

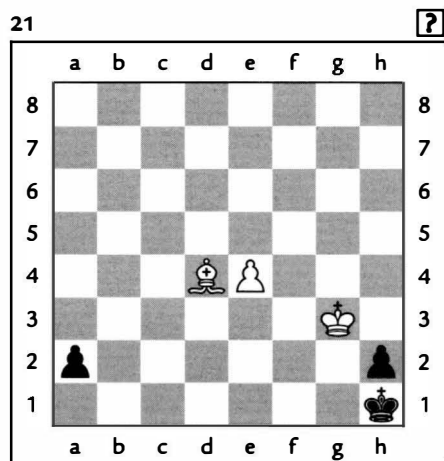
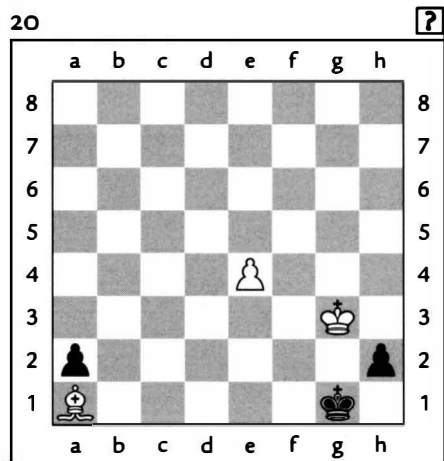
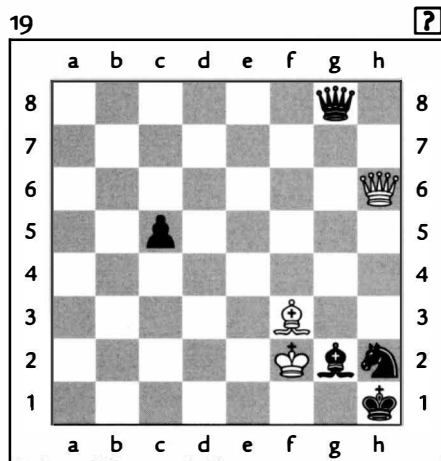


Ernest Pogosjants 1969









Matous 1979: solution**Diagram 7 on page 29**1. $\text{cf}2! \Delta \text{wf}_1\text{-g}_1\text{-g}_3\#$ (2 points)1. $\text{wf}_1+? \text{ch}_2$; 1. $\text{cf}_1? \text{a}_6$; 1. $\text{wh}_4+? \text{ch}_2$ 1. ... ag_2 1. ... wa_3 2. $\text{wf}_1+ \text{ch}_2$ 3. $\text{wg}_1+ \text{ch}_3$ 4. $\text{wg}_4+ \text{ch}_2$ 5. $\text{wf}_4+ \text{ch}_1$ 6. $\text{wh}_4+ \text{wh}_3$ 7. $\text{wx}_3\#$;1. ... ch_2 2. $\text{cf}_3+! \text{cf}_3$ 3. $\text{wc}_1+ + -$;1. ... wa_6 2. $\text{cf}_3+ + -$ **Diagram 8 on page 29**2. $\text{cf}_3!$ (1 point)2. ... $\text{wg}_7!$ 2. ... cf_3 3. $\text{wf}_1+ + -$ **Diagram 11 on page 30**3. $\text{wh}_4+!!$ (2 points)3. $\text{wf}_1+? \text{ch}_2$ 4. $\text{wg}_1+ \text{ch}_3$ 5. $\text{cx}_2+ \text{ch}_4$ 6. $\text{wh}_2+ \text{cg}_5 =$ 3. ... ch_2 **Diagram 12 on page 30**4. $\text{wh}_8!$ (1 point)4. ... wg_6 4. ... wx_8 5. $\text{cx}_2\#$ **Diagram 15 on page 31**5. $\text{wh}_7!$ (1 point) 5. ... wg_5 **Diagram 16 on page 31**6. $\text{wh}_6!$ (1 point) 6. ... wg_8 **Diagram 19 on the facing page**7. wc_1+ (1 point)and after 8. ... cf_1 8. $\text{wf}_1+ \text{ch}_2$ 9. $\text{wg}_1+ \text{ch}_3$ 10. $\text{cx}_2+ \text{ch}_4$ 11. $\text{wh}_2+ \text{cg}_5$ 12. wg_3+ White wins.**Pogosiants 1979: solution****Diagram 9 on page 29**1. $\text{ch}_5!$ (1 point)1. $\text{h}_7? \text{cg}_2 = (1. \dots \text{cg}_1)$ 1. ... cg_2 2. $\text{cf}_4 \text{h}_1\text{w}$ **Diagram 10 on page 29**3. $\text{cf}_3+ \text{ch}_2$ 4. $\text{cx}_1 \text{a}_3!$ **Diagram 13 on page 30**5. $\text{h}_7 \text{a}_2$ **Diagram 14 on page 30**6. $\text{h}_8\text{ch}_1!$ (1 point)6. $\text{h}_8\text{w}? \text{a}_1\text{w}$ 7. $\text{wx}_1 =$ 6. ... cx_1 **Diagram 17 on page 31**7. $\text{cg}_3 \text{h}_2$ **Diagram 18 on page 31**8. $\text{ca}_1!!$ (3 points)8. $\text{cd}_4? \text{a}_1\text{w}$ 9. $\text{cx}_1 \text{cg}_1$ 10. $\text{cd}_4+ \text{ch}_1 =$; 8. $\text{ch}_3? \text{cg}_1$ 9. $\text{cd}_4+ \text{ch}_1$ 10. $\text{ce}_5 \text{cg}_1$ 11. $\text{cx}_2+ \text{cf}_2$ 12. $\text{ce}_5 \text{cf}_3 =$ 8. ... cg_1 **Diagram 20 on the preceding page**9. $\text{cd}_4+ \text{ch}_1$ **Diagram 21 on the facing page**10. $\text{ch}_3!$ (1 point)and after 10. ... a_1w 11. $\text{cx}_1 \text{cg}_1$ 12. $\text{cd}_4+ \text{ch}_1$ 13. $\text{ce}_5 + -$ White wins.

Score table

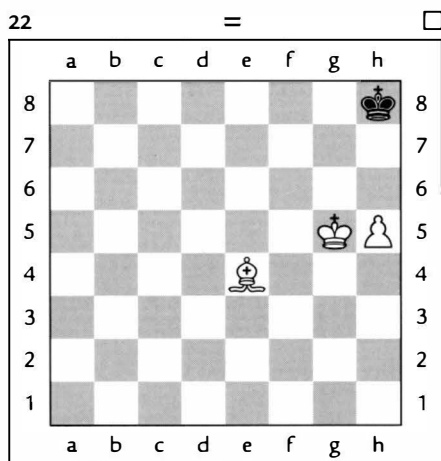
Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1		12	2		Ma	2	
2	1		13	2			1	
3	1		14	2			2	
4	1		15	3			1	
5	1		16	3			1	
6	1		17	3		1		
7	1		18	3		1		
8	1		19	4		Po	1	
9	1		20	4			1	
10	1		21	4			3	
11	2		22	5			1	
total							64	

Points	Playing Strength
less than 4 points	beginner
4-8 points	ELO 800-1000
9-18 points	ELO 1000-1500
19-25 points	ELO 1500-1800
26-32 points	ELO 1800-2100
33-45 points	ELO 2100-2300
46-55 points	ELO above 2300
56-64 points	ELO above 2400

3 The Wrong-Coloured Bishop

I.

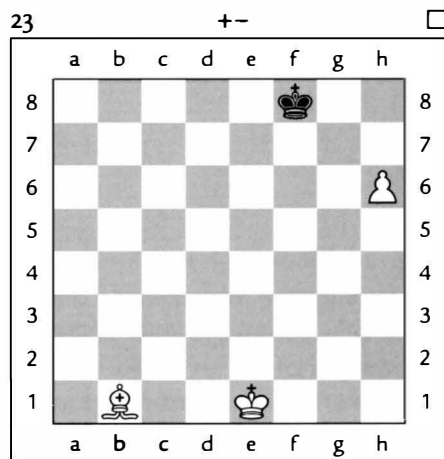
Why do so many games end in a draw? One of the main reasons is the range of defensive possibilities. Even the great material advantage of an extra minor piece does not inevitably result in a win. Diagram 22 shows one of the most important theoretical drawing fortresses.



Even though White is a bishop and a pawn up, the position is totally drawn. The defence is very easy here: the black king just has to stay in the corner. White's king and bishop cannot drive it from h8. This is due to the fact that the bishop does not control the h-pawn's promotion square. This is the well-known 'wrong-coloured bishop'. (This only works with a rook's pawn. In all other cases White wins with the help of zugzwang.) It is impossible to force Black's king to leave the corner. White can only deliver stalemate:

1. ♖f6 ♜g8 2. h6 ♜h8 3. ♖f7 =

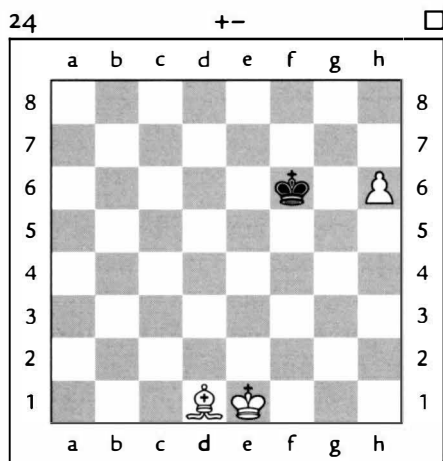
Another important point is that the evaluation of the position does not change if White has more than one h-pawn. Only if the stronger side manages to prevent the king from entering the corner does he have winning chances.



After

1. ♙a2! +-

Black's king is cut off from the vital corner, and the pawn advances to the queening square. The other method of keeping the king from the corner is less effective here. After 1. ♙h7? there follows 1. ... ♜f7 2. ♜f2 ♜f6, and a typical drawing mechanism is initiated: the threat is ♜g5, and after the bishop retreats the king reaches the corner: 3. ♙e4 ♜f7 4. ♙h7 ♜f6 = ♙g8 In this line, White would win if his king reached the f4 square.



Here White can cut off the black king on the e8-h5 diagonal:

1. ♖h5 +-

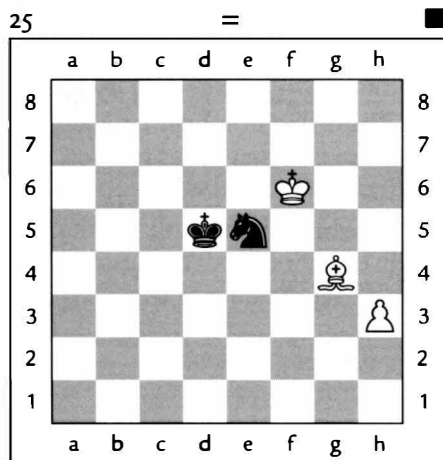
In spite of the simplicity of these endgames, there are many hidden subtleties.

Exercises 1 to 9 will help you to cement, and to deepen, your understanding of this highly practical endgame.

II.

The possibility of transposing into the endgame of wrong-coloured bishop and rook's pawn is often an important defensive resource. This is a famous example.

Robert Fischer – Mark Taimanov
Candidate's Match (2), Vancouver 1971



As is well known, a knight has great difficulties when countering a rook's pawn. Black could have spared himself great trouble had he remembered the position from diagram 22. After 81. ... ♖d3! 82. h4 (82. ♖f5 ♗d6! ♠♗e7-f7-g7-h8) 82. ... ♘f4 83. ♖f5 ♗d6! Black has to sacrifice the knight, but the king can enter the corner. 84. ♗xf4 ♗e7 85. ♗g5 ♗f7 86. ♗h6 ♗g8 =. Instead there followed

81. ... ♗e4??

This unfortunate move loses the game, for now Taimanov does not have time to bring the knight back to defend. Other king moves were better: 81. ... ♗d6! 82. ♗e2 ♘d7+ (82. ... ♗d5 83. h4 ♘d7+ 84. ♗e7 ♗e5) 83. ♖f7 ♗e5 84. h4 ♘f6 =; or 81. ... ♗d4 82. ♗e6 (82. ♗d1 ♘d7+) 82. ... ♘f3 =.

82. ♗c8 ♖f4

82. ... ♖f3 83. ♙b7+ ♜f4 84. ♙xf3 ♜xf3
85. ♜g5+- also loses, as does 82. ... ♖d3 83.
♙f5+.

83. ♙h4 ♖f3 84. ♙h5 ♖g5 85. ♙f5 ♖f3 86.
♙h6 ♖g5 87. ♜g6

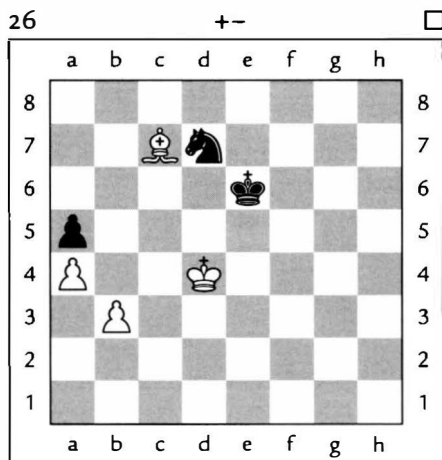
Black is in zugzwang.

87. ... ♖f3 88. ♙h7 ♖e5+ 89. ♜f6 1-0

* * *

In the game Portisch – Kavalek, White underestimated Black's chances, which were connected, of course, with the wrong-coloured bishop.

Lajos Portisch – Lubomir Kavalek
Montréal 1979



61. ♙xg5

It would have been better to play 61.
♜c4!

61. ... ♜d6 62. ♙b4??

White could win with either 62. ♜c4 ♜c6
63. ♙b4+- or 62. ♙d8 ♖b8 63. ♜c4 ♜c6 64.
♙b6+-, Black is now able to eliminate his
main enemy, the b-pawn, with a fork.

62. ... ♖b8!

(♙c6+ and ♖xb4)

63. ♜c4

The point is that 63. ♙b5 can be answered
by 63. ... ♖c6+! 64. ♙xc6 ♜xc6= and the
game transposes into our drawn position
from diagram 22.

63. ... ♖c6 64. ♜b5 ♖xb4 65. ♜b6

Or 65. ♙xb4+ ♜c7 66. ♙d6+ ♜b7=.

65. ... ♖d3!

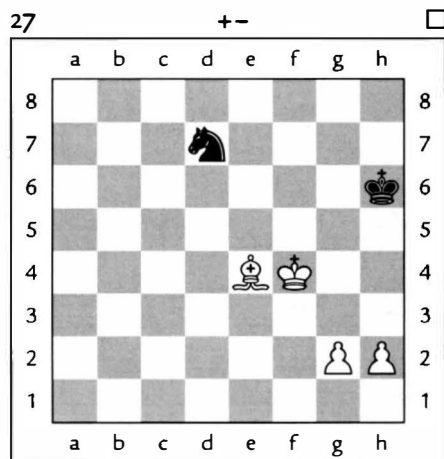
Threatening ♖b2, and the draw is clear:
66. ♙c3 ♜d7 67. ♜b7 ♖c5+

½-½.

* * *

Here is a similar endgame. We have already
seen that Black's main hope lies in sacrific-
ing a knight for the g-pawn.

Murray Chandler – Zsuzsa Polgár
Montréal 1979



50. ♜f5 ♜g7 51. ♙g4 ♖f6 52. ♙g5 ♖g8 53.
♜e6 ♖h6 54. ♙xh6+??

Such a grave mistake has just one explanation: Chandler expected the automatic recapture. In that case the black king would have been cut off from the corner, and the win would be easy: 54. ... ♖×h6 55. ♜f6 ♜h5 56. ♜g7+-. The correct winning method was demonstrated by Dvoretsky: 54. h4 ♖g4 55. ♜f5 ♖h6+ 56. ♜f4 ♖f7 57. ♙d5 ♖h6 58. h5 ♜h7 59. ♙e6 ♜g7 60. ♜e5 ♜h8 61. ♜f6 ♜h7 62. ♜e7 ♜g7 63. ♜e8 ♜h7 (63. ... ♜h8 64. g6 ♜g7 65. ♜e7 ♜h8 66. ♜f8 Yusupov) 64. ♜f8 ♜h8 65. g6 ♖f5 66. h6 ♖×h6 67. g7+ ♜h7 68. ♙f5+ ♖×f5 69. g8♙+.

54. ... ♜h8!

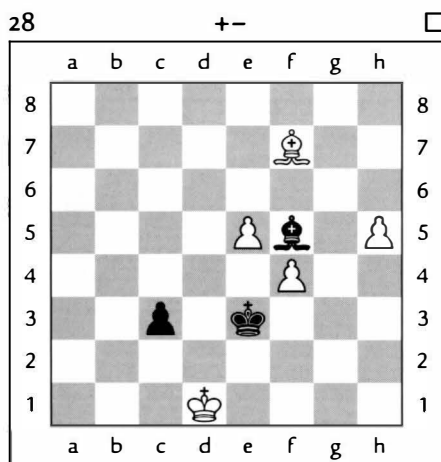
Of course! As we know, the number of pawns on the h-file makes no difference.

55. ♙d5 ♜h7 56. ♜f7 ♜h8 ½-½

The same sad mistake occurred in this game too.

Lev Gutman – Vladas Mikenas

Riga 1969



Instead of the simple 53. e6 ♜×f4 54. e7 ♙d7 55. h6+-, White tried to play the technically neat

53. ♙g6?? ♜×f4 54. ♙×f5

White expected the bishop to be recaptured: 54. ... ♜×f5? 55. h6+-. Black did not miss his chance:

54. ... ♜×e5! 55. h6 ♜f6

Δ♜f7-g8

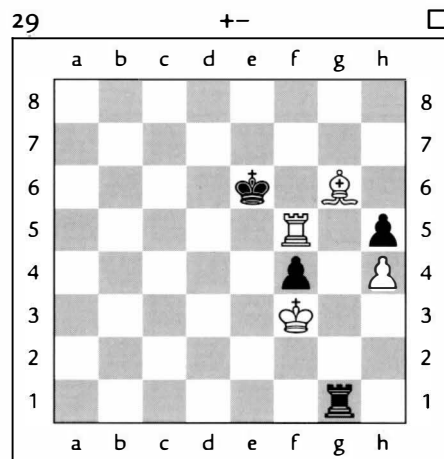
56. ♜c2 ♜f7 57. ♙h7 ♜f6!

Δ♜g5

58. ♙g8 ♜g6 59. h7 ♜g7 = ½-½

Vladimir Raičević – Albin Planinc

Zagreb 1977



In the next example the player with the better position also underestimated his opponent's chances. The rooks had to be kept on the board with 61. ♙h7! +-, followed by ♙×h5. The attempt to win the game quickly led to an elegant draw.

61. ♙g5?? ♙g3+! 62. ♜×f4

62. ♜f2 ♜f6 =; 62. ♙×g3 ♙×g3 =.

62. ... ♙g4+! 63. ♜f3

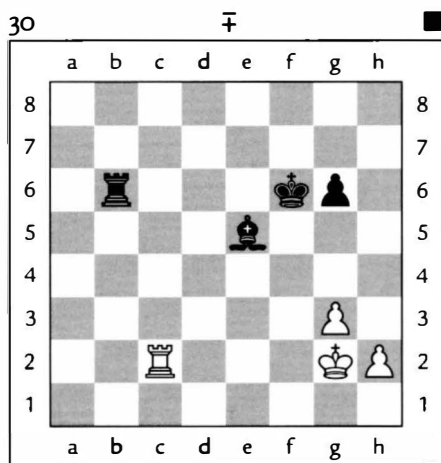
63. $\text{R}\times\text{g4}$ $\text{h}\times\text{g4}$ 64. $\text{c}\text{g5}$ g3 65. $\text{d}\text{e4}$ $\text{c}\text{f7}=\text{}$.

63. ... $\text{c}\text{f6} = \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

However, 63. ... $\text{R}\times\text{h4}$ 64. $\text{d}\text{e}\times\text{h5}$ would not have been clever, when White can still try to win.

Kenneth Smith – Mario Campos Lopez

San Antonio 1972



1. ... Rb2

As Edmar Mednis correctly noted, Black shouldn't be in a hurry to exchange rooks.

1. ... $\text{g5}!?$, would have given more chances, although even in this case White will, after the cold-blooded 2. $\text{c}\text{f3}$ $\text{c}\text{f5}$ 3. $\text{c}\text{g2}$, be able to hold the game.

2. $\text{R}\times\text{b2}$ $\text{d}\text{e}\times\text{b2}$ 3. $\text{c}\text{f3}?!$

It would have been more precise to play 3. $\text{h4}!$ $\text{c}\text{e5}$ 4. g4 $\text{c}\text{f4}$ 5. $\text{c}\text{h3}$ Δg5 , h5 .

3. ... $\text{c}\text{f5}$

Black could have given White a little more to worry about with 3. ... $\text{d}\text{c3}$ 4. h4 $\text{d}\text{e1}!$ (4. ... $\text{d}\text{d2}$ 5. g4 $\text{d}\text{e1}$ 6. $\text{g5}+=$) 5. $\text{c}\text{g4}$ $\text{d}\text{d2}$ 6. $\text{c}\text{f3}$ $\text{c}\text{e5}$ 7. $\text{c}\text{e2}$ $\text{d}\text{a5}$ 8. $\text{c}\text{f3}=\text{}$. Now White forces the position from diagram 22.

4. $\text{h4}!$

4. $\text{g4}+?$ $\text{c}\text{g5}+=$.

4. ... $\text{d}\text{c3}$ 5. $\text{g4}+ \text{c}\text{f6}$ 6. $\text{g5}+!$

6. $\text{h5}?$ g5 .

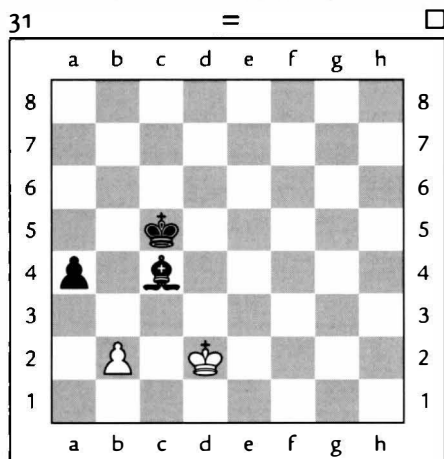
6. ... $\text{c}\text{f5}$ 7. $\text{h5}!$ $\text{g}\times\text{h5}$ 8. $\text{c}\text{g2}$ $\text{c}\times\text{g5} = \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

For independent study you might consider exercises 10 to 22. The main theme in these positions is the struggle to reach a position with the wrong-coloured bishop.

III.

The presence of more pawns on the defending side adds complexity and often changes the assessment of the position. As in the next example.

von Holzhausen 1910



Without the b-pawn, White would easily reach the corner. But in this case, White has more problems, e. g. 1. ♖c1?? loses to ♜d3-+.

1. ♜c2!

If the white king reaches a1, the draw is clear: 1. ... ♜b4 2. ♜b1 ♜b3 3. ♜a1 ♜c2 4. b4 a×b3 stalemate.

1. ... ♜a2!

Now it looks bad for White, but the unfortunate positions of Black's bishop and king saves him.

2. b4!+

But not 2. b3??, because of 2. ... a3! -+.

2. ... a×b3+

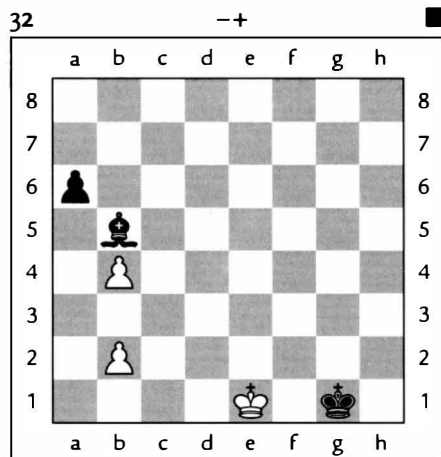
2. ... ♜×b4 3. ♜b2 =.

3. ♜b2 = ½-½

This fortress is also impregnable.

* * *

However, if White has another pawn, the position turns against him.

Nigel Short – Garry Kasparov
Belgrade 1989

The winning plan is easy: Black stalemates the enemy king and forces the b-pawn to advance. After this the a-pawn leaves the edge and White has just one useless move with his remaining pawn.

93. ... ♜g2 94. ♜d1 ♜f3 95. ♜d2 ♜e4 96. ♜c3 ♜e3 97. ♜c2 ♜e2 98. ♜c1

Or 98. ♜c3 ♜d3 99. ♜b3 ♜d2 100. ♜a3 ♜c2 101. ♜a2 ♜c4+ 102. b3 (102. ♜a1 ♜c1 103. b3 ♜b5 104. ♜a2 ♜d3 -+) 102. ... ♜b5 103. ♜a1 ♜c1 104. ♜a2 ♜d3 105. ♜a1 ♜b1 and Black wins.

98. ... ♜d3 99. b3 ♜e1 100. ♜b2 ♜d2 101. ♜a1 ♜c2 102. ♜a2 ♜c1!

Under no circumstances should Black capture the pawn with his king. For example 102. ... ♖c3 103. ♖a1 ♗xb4? = or 103. ... ♗xb3? 104. b5 = leads to a draw.

103. ♖a1

103. ♖a3 ♖b1 104. ♖a4 ♖b2+- 105. ♖a5 ♗xb3 106. ♖b6 ♗xb4+-.

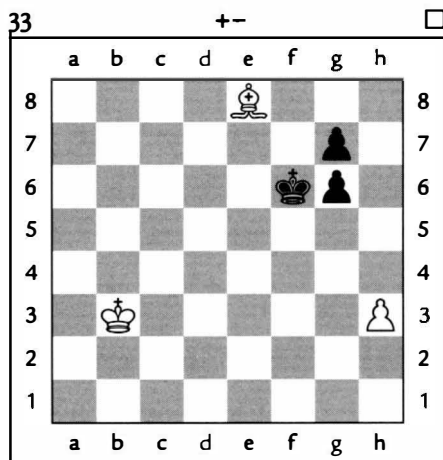
103. ... ♖b1 0-1

And because of 104. b5 a×b5 105. b4 ♖d3+- White resigned.

The same method was used by White in the following game.

Rustem Dautov – Drazen Sermek

Dresden 1998



49. ♖c4 ♖g5

49. ... ♗e7!? 50. ♖a4 +- (50. ♖xg6?? ♗f8 51. ♖h7 g5 =).

50. ♖d5 ♖h6

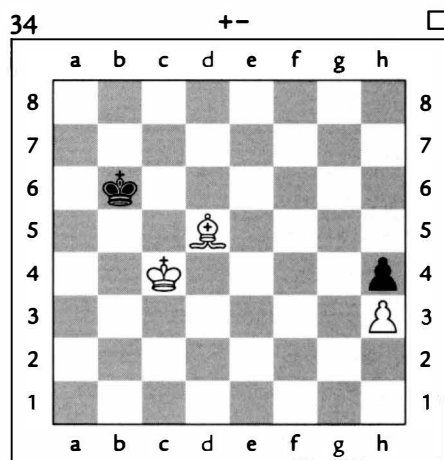
50. ... ♖h4 51. ♖d7 +-.

51. ♖e6 ♖h7 52. ♖f7 ♖h8 53. ♖f8 ♖h7 54. ♖f7 ♖h8 55. ♖g8! 1-0

Here Black resigned. The winning plan is nearly identical to the Short – Kasparov game. 55. ... g5 56. ♖e6 ♖h7 (56. ... g6 57. ♖g8 +-) 57. ♖f5+ g6 (57. ... ♖h8 58. ♖e4 g6 59. ♖d5 ♖h7 60. ♖e6 ♖h6 61. ♖g8+-) 58. ♖e6 ♖h8 (58. ... ♖h6 59. ♖g8 ♖h5 60. ♖g7 ♖h4 61. ♖xg6+-) 59. ♖g8 g4 60. h×g4 g5 61. ♖e6 +-.

Eric Lobron – John van der Wiel

Ter Apel 1987



This is another important situation. To win, White has to capture the pawn on h4 without allowing the black king to reach the h8 square. Rauzer analysed endgames with rook-pawns and kings in different positions. He discovered a zone where the black king must be to hold the draw. This zone is marked by the squares a8-a6-c4-d5-e4-h7-h8. However, a word of warning: 'Even if the king is situated in the drawing zone, the draw is still not guaranteed. The following has to be considered: if the white bishop gets onto the a2-g8 diagonal, the black king has to manoeuvre in such a way that it reaches e7 when the white king gets to the g5 square.' (Averbakh)

71. ... ♖c7 72. ♜d4 ♜d6 73. ♜e4 ♜d7
74. ♜e5 ♜e7 75. ♜e6 ♜e8 76. ♜f6 ♜f8 77.
♜c4 ♜e8 78. ♜g7 ♜e7 79. ♜f7 ♜d6 80.
♜f6 ♜d7 81. ♜g6 ♜d8 82. ♜e6

The defence is very easy: the black king has to stay on the back-rank.

82. ... ♖c7 83. ♜e8 ♜d8 84. ♜d7 ♜c7
85. ♜e7 ♜b8 86. ♜d6

86. ♜f6 ♜c7 87. ♜e6 ♜d8 88. ♜g5 ♜e7=.

86. ... ♜b7 87. ♜g4 ♜b8 88. ♜c6 ♜a7
89. ♜c7 ♜a8

The black king manoeuvres in such a way that it remains near the a8 square; if it is displaced from there, it heads for the safe square h8.

90. ♜f3+ ♜a7 91. ♜c6

91. ♜d8 ♜b8 (91. ... ♜b6) 92. ♜d5 ♜a7
93. ♜e7 ♜b6 94. ♜f6 ♜c5! =.

91. ... ♜a6 92. ♜b8 ♜b6 93. ♜b7 ♜c5
94. ♜c7 ♜b5!

94. ... ♜d4? 95. ♜d6 ♜c4 96. ♜c6. The king must not leave the drawing zone.

95. ♜c8 ♜c5 96. ♜e6

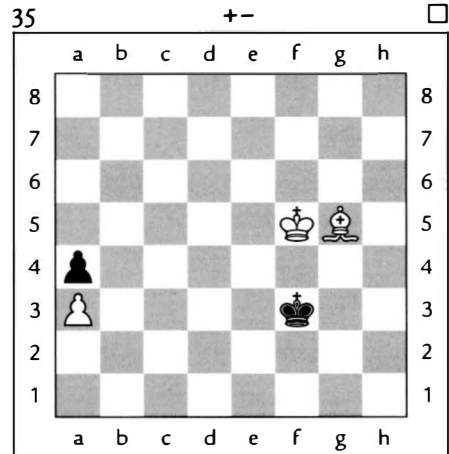
96. ♜d7 ♜d5 ♜e5-f6-g7 97. ♜d8. The king mustn't be allowed to reach h8. 97. ... ♜d6 98. ♜c8 ♜c6 99. ♜g4 ♜b7 100. ♜f3+ ♜b8 (100. ... ♜b6 101. ♜d7 ♜a7) 101. ♜g2 ♜a7 102. ♜e7 ♜b6 103. ♜f6 ♜c7 104. ♜g5 ♜d7 105. ♜xh4 ♜e7=. The white bishop is not on the a2-g8 diagonal!

96. ... ♜b5 97. ♜d5 ♜a6! 98. ♜c4+ ♜a7
99. ♜d3 ♜a8 100. ♜e2 ♜a7 101. ♜c4 ♜a8
102. ♜d6 ♜b7 103. ♜e5 ♜c7 104. ♜f6 ♜d7
105. ♜g5 ♜e7

Just in time!

106. ♜xh4 ♜f6 107. ♜h5 ♜g7 108. ♜g5
♜h8 109. h4 ½-½

Kling & Horwitz 1851



The black king is outside the drawing zone a8-a7-d4-e5-f4-h6-h8. With precise play White can win the game.

1. ♜f4! ♜g2!

1. ... ♜f2 2. ♜e4 ♜g2 3. ♜d4 ♜f3 4. ♜h2
♜g4 5. ♜c4 ♜f5 6. ♜b4 ♜e6 7. ♜xa4 ♜d7
8. ♜b5 ♜c8 9. ♜c6 +-.

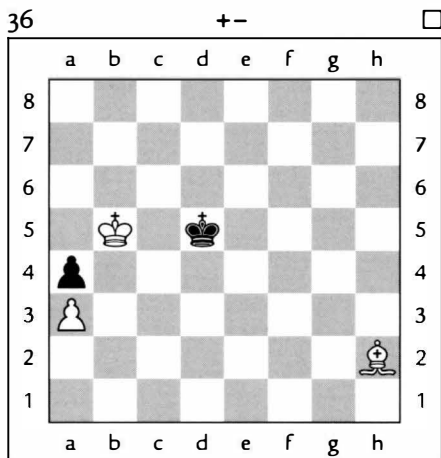
2. ♜g4!

2. ♜e4 ♜h3 3. ♜d4 ♜g4 4. ♜h2? ♜f5! 5.
♜c4 ♜e6 6. ♜b5 ♜d7=.

2. ... ♜f2 3. ♜c1! ♜e2 4. ♜f4 ♜f2

If 4. ... ♜d1 5. ♜e3 ♜c2, then 6. ♜e5! (6.
♜e4? ♜b3 7. ♜c5 ♜c4 8. ♜e3 ♜b3 9. ♜c1
♜c4) 6. ... ♜b3 7. ♜c5 ♜c4 8. ♜d6 ♜b3 9.
♜c6 ♜c4 10. ♜d6 and White reaches a po-
sition analysed in the line with 4. ... ♜d3 -
though somewhat quicker. After 4. ... ♜d3
5. ♜e3! ♜c4 6. ♜e5 ♜b3 7. ♜c5 ♜c4 8. ♜d6
♜b5 9. ♜d5 ♜a5 10. ♜c6 ♜a6 11. ♜g1 ♜a5 12.
♜b7 ♜b5 13. ♜b6! ♜c4 14. ♜c6 ♜b3 (14. ...
♜d3 15. ♜b5 ♜e4 16. ♜xa4 ♜d5 17. ♜b5 +-)

15. ♖c5 ♜c4 16. ♖d6 ♜d4 17. ♜b5 ♜d5 18. ♖h2 +- White achieves his aim.



That's the key position of this endgame. Black is in zugzwang. He loses the a-pawn and cannot reach the a8 square.

5. ♖e3+ ♜g2 6. ♜g4 ♜h2

6. ... ♜h1 7. ♖f4 ♜g2 8. ♖g3.

7. ♖f4+ ♜g2 8. ♖g3 ♜g1 9. ♜f3 ♜h1 10. ♖b8 ♜g1 11. ♜e3 ♜g2 12. ♜d3 ♜f3 13. ♜c4 ♜e4 14. ♜b5 ♜d5 15. ♖h2

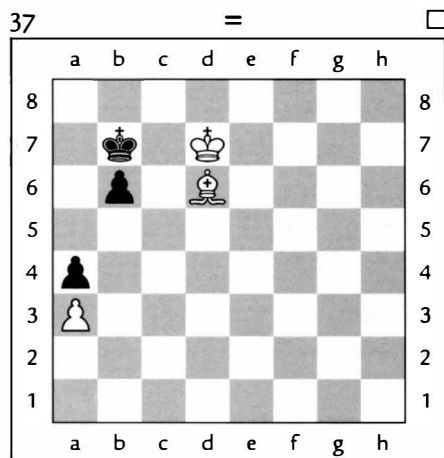
(see diagram 36)

15. ... ♜d4 16. ♜x a4 1-0

* * *

It is interesting to see how the addition of another pawn changes the defensive strategy. The next example is a good model for playing the endgame rook's pawn and knight's pawn versus rook's pawn with wrong-coloured bishop.

Viktor Korchnoi – Anatoly Karpov
Baguio 1978



Without the b-pawn it would be a clear-cut draw. But the second pawn gives White the chance to play for a win. White can try to stalemate the enemy king and so force the advance of the b-pawn.

74. ♖e7 ♜a7 75. ♜c7 ♜a8 76. ♖d6 ♜a7

76. ... b5?? 77. ♖c5 b4 78. axb4 +-.

77. ♜c8 ♜a6

77. ... ♜a8?? 78. ♖b8 b5 79. ♜c7 b4 80. axb4 a3 81. b5 a2 82. b6 a1 ♖ 83. b7#.

78. ♜b8 b5 79. ♖b4

79. ♜c7 b4! 80. axb4 (80. ♖xb4 ♜a7 =) 80. ... ♜b5 =.

79. ... ♜b6 80. ♜c8 ♜c6!

Black's king has to leave the dangerous triangle a6–a8–c8 at once.

80. ... ♜a6? 81. ♜c7 ♜a7 82. ♜c6

A) 82. ... ♜b8 83. ♖d6+

A1) 83. ... ♜c8 84. ♖c7 +-;

A2) 83. ... ♜a7 84. ♖c7 ♜a6 (84. ... ♜a8

85. ♜b6 +-) 85. ♖b6 +-;

A3) 83. ... ♜a8 84. ♜b6 +-;

B) 82. ... ♖a6 83. ♙c5 ♖a5 84. ♙d4 ♖a6 (84. ... b4 85. ♙b6+ ♖a6 86. a×b4 a3 87. b5#) 85. ♙b6 b4 86. a×b4.

81. ♖d8 ♖d5 82. ♖e7 ♖e5 83. ♖f7 ♖d5 84. ♖f6 ♖d4 85. ♖e6 ♖e4 86. ♙f8 ♖d4 87. ♖d6 ♖e4 88. ♙g7

88. ♖c5 ♖e5 89. ♖×b5 ♖e6 (White's bishop isn't on the h2-b8 diagonal.) 90. ♖×a4 ♖d7 91. ♖b5 ♖c7 92. ♙d6+ (92. ♖a6 ♖b8) 92. ... ♖b7=.

88. ... ♖f4 89. ♖e6 ♖f3 90. ♖e5 ♖g4 91. ♙f6 ♖h5 92. ♖f5 ♖h6 93. ♙d4 ♖h7 94. ♖f6

94. ♖g5 ♖g8 95. ♖g6 ♖f8 96. ♙c5+ ♖e8 97. ♖f6 ♖d7 98. ♖e5 ♖e8 99. ♖e6 ♖d8 100. ♙d6 ♖c8 101. ♖e7 ♖b7 (101. ... b4! An important resource for the defence. 102. a×b4 ♖b7 103. ♖e6 ♖c6 =) 102. ♖d7 b4! =.

94. ... ♖h6!

Here, the corner is dangerous for Black.

94. ... ♖g8?? 95. ♙c5 ♖h7 96. ♙f8 ♖g8 97. ♙g7 ♖h7 98. ♖f7+-.

95. ♙e3+ ♖h5 96. ♖f5 ♖h4 97. ♙d2 ♖g3 98. ♙g5 ♖f3 99. ♙f4

Without the pawn on b5 the position is won for White – see diagram 35. The presence of the second pawn changes the result.

99. ... ♖g2 100. ♙d6

100. ♖g4 ♖f2 101. ♙c1 ♖e2 102. ♖f4 ♖d3 103. ♖e5 (103. ♙e3 b4! =) 103. ... ♖c4 104. ♙d2 b4! (104. ... ♖c5) 105. ♙×b4 ♖b5=.

100. ... ♖f3 101. ♙h2 ♖g2 102. ♙c7 ♖f3 103. ♙d6 ♖e3 104. ♖e5 ♖f3

104. ... ♖d3? 105. ♖d5 ♖e3 106. ♖c5 ♖e4 107. ♖×b5 ♖d5 108. ♙h2+-.

105. ♖d5 ♖g4 106. ♖c5 ♖f5 107. ♖×b5 ♖e6

Black exploits the awkward position of the bishop and wins an important tempo. Now we have reached an endgame we know already.

108. ♖c6 ♖f6 109. ♖d7 ♖g7 110. ♙e7 ♖g8 111. ♖e6 ♖g7 112. ♙c5 ♖g8 113. ♖f6 ♖h7 114. ♖f7 ♖h8 115. ♙d4+ ♖h7 116. ♙b2 ♖h6 117. ♖g8 ♖g6 118. ♙g7 ♖f5 119. ♖f7 ♖g5 120. ♙b2 ♖h6 121. ♙c1+ ♖h7 122. ♙d2 ♖h8 123. ♙c3+ ♖h7 124. ♙g7 ½-½

* * *

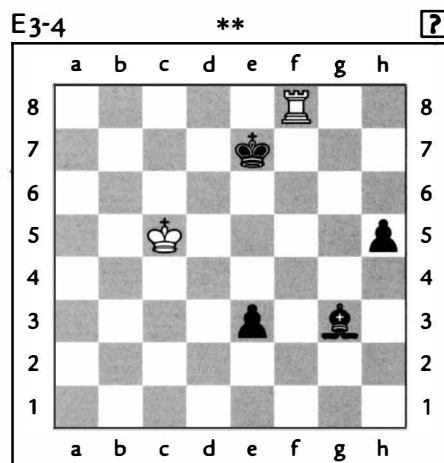
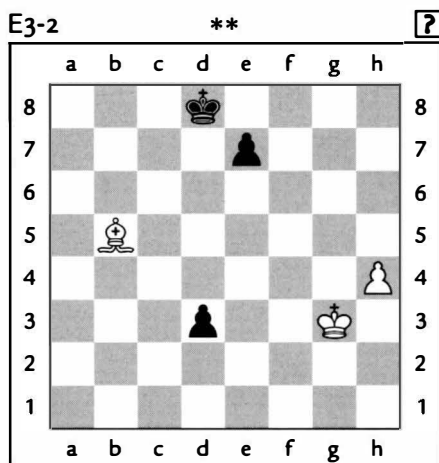
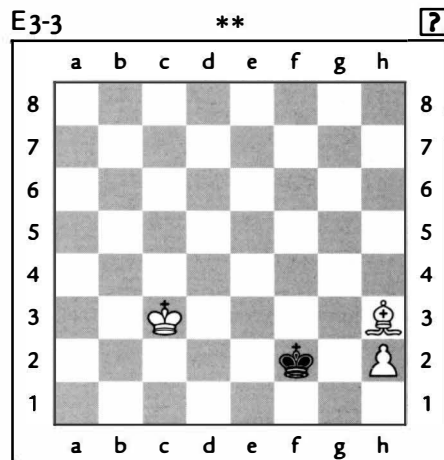
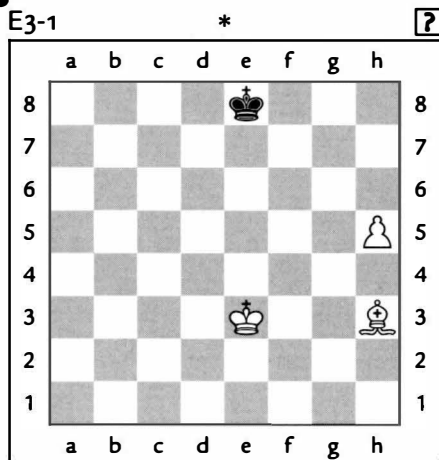
The last endgames were difficult. To deepen your understanding of this theme, I would recommend that you take a look at the final exercises 23 to 25. Good luck and have fun.

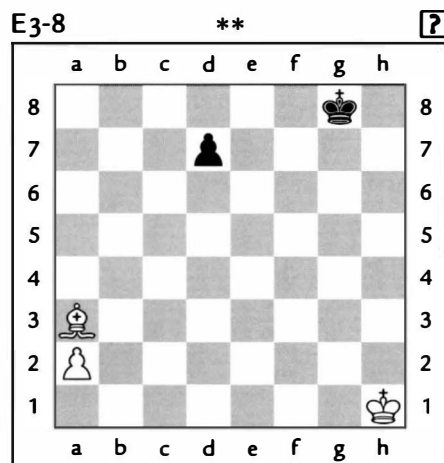
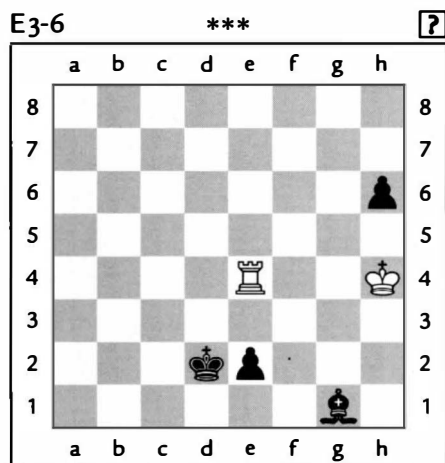
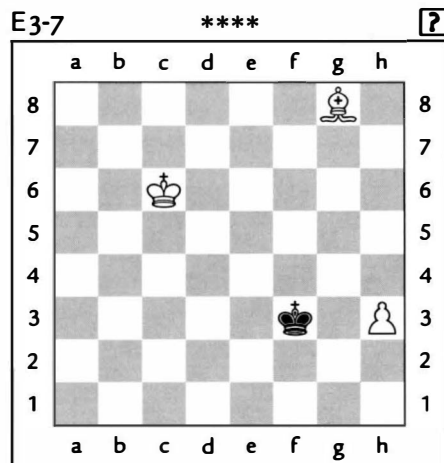
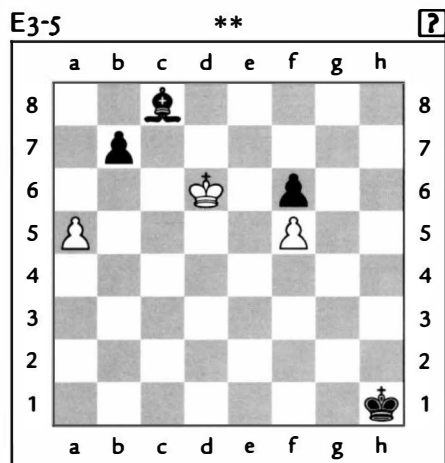
Finally, I append a list of books with more material regarding the theme 'wrong-coloured bishop':

1) Yuri Averbakh: Comprehensive Chess Endings: Bishop Endings: Knight Endings: 001 (Pergamon Russian Chess Series)

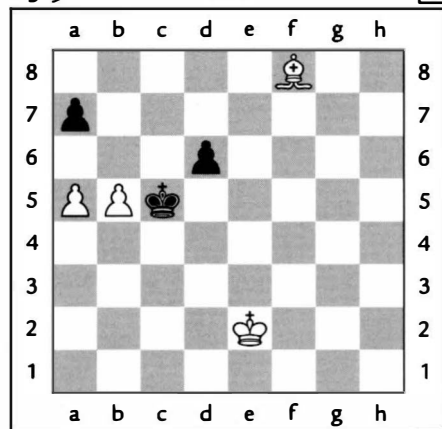
2) Edmar Mednis: Practical Endgame Lessons (Cadogan 1997)

3) Edmar Mednis: Better Endgame Play (Chess Enterprises 2000)

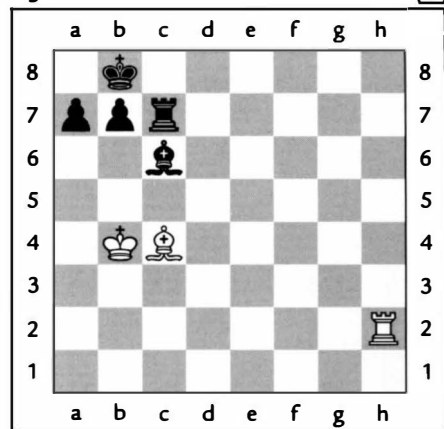

Exercises (solutions p. 52-54)




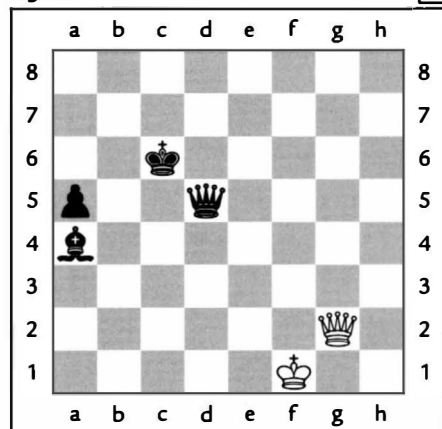
E3-9 *** [?]



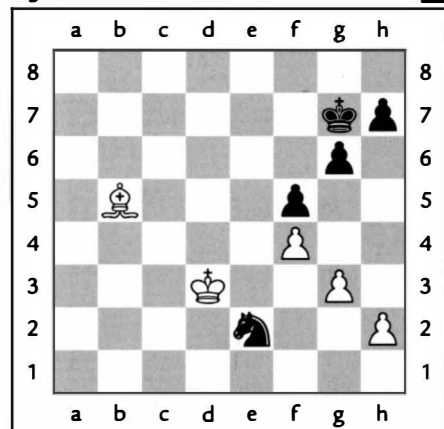
E3-11 * [?]



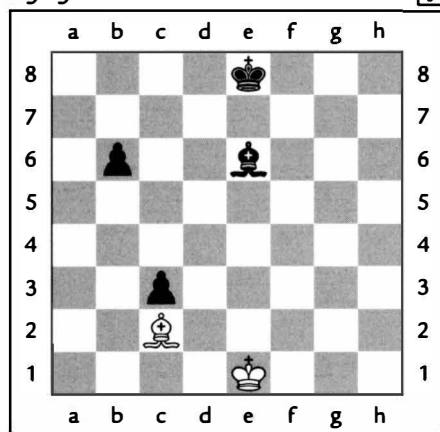
E3-10 * [?]



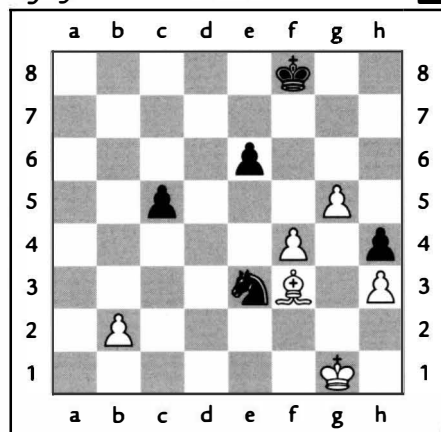
E3-12 ** [?]



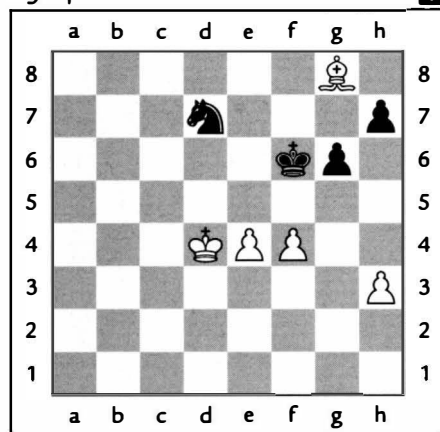
E3-13



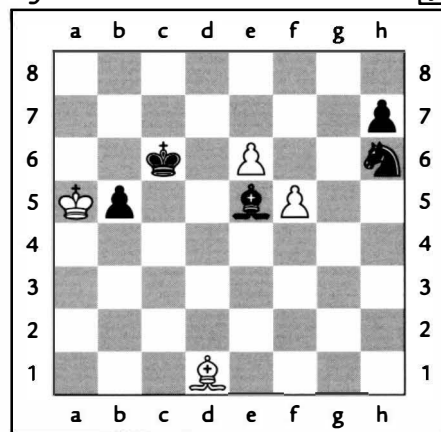
E3-15

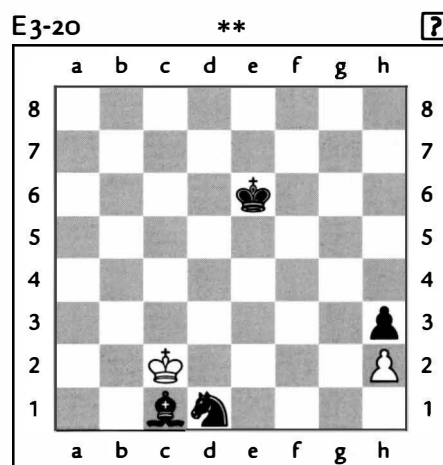
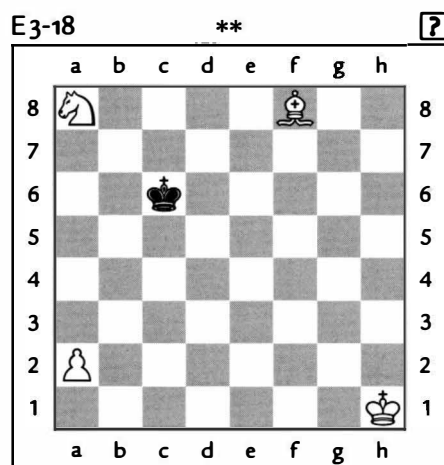
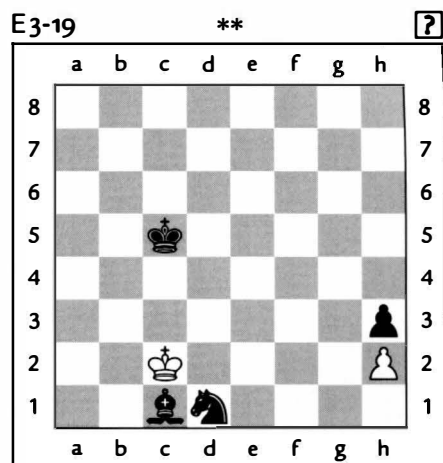
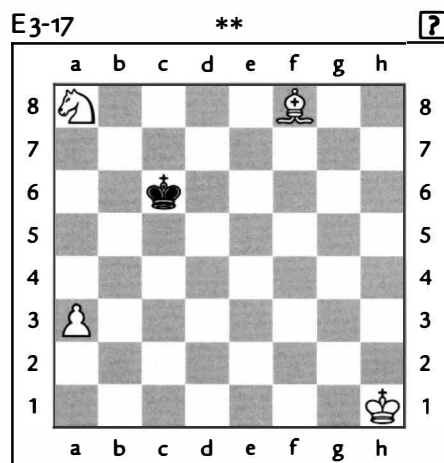


E3-14



E3-16

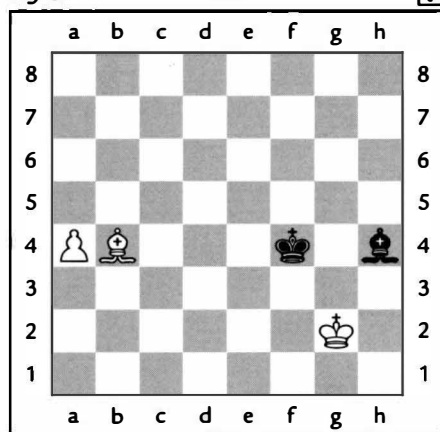




E3-21

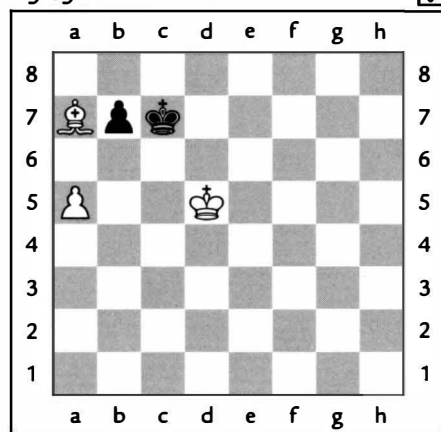
**

?



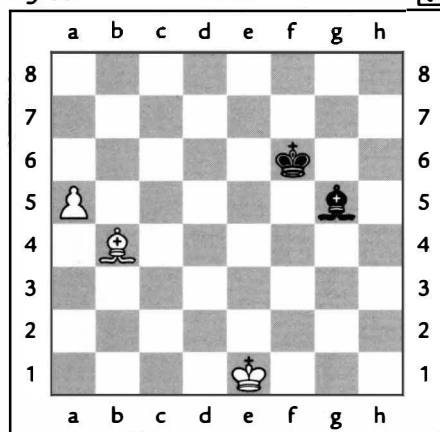
E3-23

?



E3-22

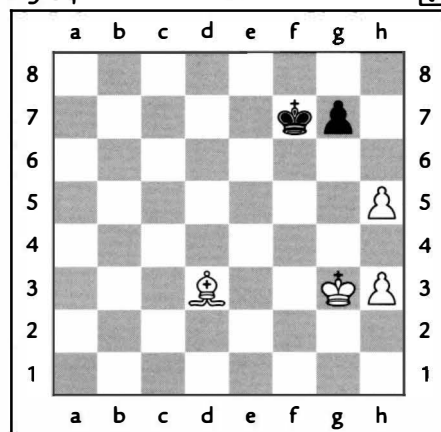
?

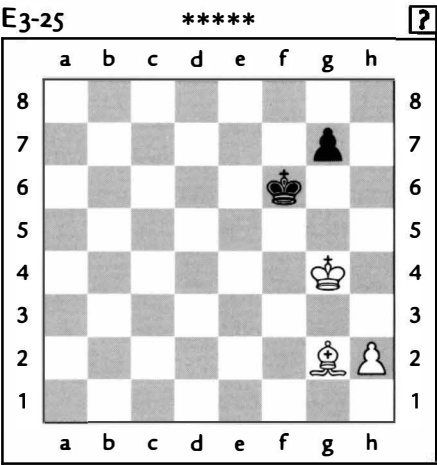


E3-24

*

?





Solutions

□ E3-1

Alexei Troitzky, 1896

1. ♖e6! ♜e7 2. ♗h6 ♜f6 3. ♙f5! ♜f7 4. ♙h7 ♜f6 5. ♜f4 ♜f7 6. ♜f5 ♜f8 7. ♜f6 ♜e8 8. ♙f5 1-0

□ E3-2

Gijs van Breukelen, 1967

1. ♗h5 [1. ♜f4? d2 2. ♙a4 d1♙ 3. ♙x d1 ♜e8] 1. ... d2 2. ♙a4 d1♙ 3. ♙x d1 ♜e8 4. ♙b3 e6 5. ♙xe6 ♜e7 6. ♗h6 ♜f6 7. ♙f5 ♜f7 8. ♙h7 1-0

□ E3-3

Orrin Frink, 1923

1. ♙d7!! ♜e3 2. ♗h4 ♜e4 3. ♗h5 ♜e5 4. ♗h6 ♜f6 5. ♙e8!! +- 1-0

□ E3-4

Evgeny Dvizov, 1987

1. ♙f3 ♙f2 2. ♙xe3+ [2. ♜d5? e2 3. ♙f4 e1♙ 4. ♙e4+ ♜f6 5. ♙xe1 ♙xe1 6. ♜e4 h4 7. ♜f3 h3] 2. ... ♙xe3+ 3. ♜d5 h4 4. ♜e4 h3 5. ♜f3 ♙f4 6. ♜f2 ♙h2 7. ♜f3 ♙b8 8. ♜f2 ♙h2 9. ♜f3 ½-½

□ E3-5

G. Gotsdiner, 1978

1. ♜e7 ♙xf5 2. a6 bxa6 3. ♜xf6 a5 4. ♜e5 a4 5. ♜d4 a3 6. ♜c3 ♙e6 7. ♜c2 ♙a2 8. ♜c3 ½-½

□ E3-6

Iosif Krikheli, 1985

1. ♙xe2+! ♜xe2 2. ♜g4!
[2. ♜g3 ♜f1 ⊙ 3. ♜f3 (3. ♜h3 ♜f2 4. ♜g4 ♜g2 5. ♜h5 ♙e3 6. ♜g4 ♙g5 7. ♜f5 ♜f3 -+) 3. ... ♙f2 4. ♜g4 ♜g2 5. ♜h5 ♙e3 6. ♜h4 ♙d2 7. ♜g4 ♙g5 -+]
2. ... ♜e1
[2. ... ♙e3 3. ♜g3 ♜f1 4. ♜h2 =]
3. ♜f3!

[3. ♜h4! =]

3. ... ♜f1 4. ♜g3 ⊙ ½-½

□ E3-7

Gijs van Breukelen, 1969

1. ♜d7
[1. ♜d5? ♜f4 2. ♜e6 ♜g3; 1. ♜d6? ♜f4 2. ♜e7 ♜g5 3. ♜f8 ♜g6]
1. ... ♜f4

Corresponding squares e7-g5, f8-g6.

[1. ... ♜g3 2. ♙e6]

2. ♜e8!

[2. ♜e7 ♜g5 ⊙ =]

2. ... ♜g5

[2. ... ♜f5 3. ♜f7 +-]

3. ♜e7!

[3. ♜f7? ♜h4; 3. ♜f8? ♜g6]

3. ... ♜g6 4. ♜f8 ♜h6 5. ♜f7 ♜g5 6. ♜g7 ♜f5 7. ♜h6 1-0

□ E3-8

Oldřich Duras, 1908

1. ♙b4! ♜f7 2. a4 ♜e8 [2. ... ♜e6 3. a5 ♜d5 4. a6 ♜c6 5. ♙a5!] 3. a5 ♜d8 4. ♙d6 ♜c8 5. a6 1-0

□ E3-9

Alexander Herbstman, 1928

1. b6! axb6
[1. ... ♜c6 2. ♙e7! (2. bxa7 ♜b7 =) 2. ... axb6 (2. ... ♜b7 3. ♙d8! +-) 3. a6 +-]
2. a6 ♜c6 3. ♙e7!
[3. ♙xd6 b5 4. ♙c5 ♜c7 5. ♙a7 ♜c6 6. ♜d3 b4 7. ♜c4 b3 8. ♜xb3 ♜b5 =]
3. ... ♜c7!
[3. ... b5 4. ♙d8 d5 5. ♜d3 b4 6. ♜d4 ⊙]
4. ♙xd6+! ♜c6! 5. ♜d3 b5 6. ♙c5! ♜c7 7. ♙a7 b4 8. ♜c4 1-0

□ E3-10

unknown, 1911

1. ♖e1! ♙b3 [1. ... ♜xg2] 2. ♜xd5+ ♜xd5 3. ♜d2 ½-½

□ E3-11

Gioacchino Greco, 1619

1. ♜h8+ ♜c8 2. ♜xc8+ ♜xc8 3. ♙a6!! bxa6 = ½-½

□ E3-12

Reshevsky – Tatai, Netanya 1973

50. ... ♜xf4+!

[50. ... ♜c1+? 51. ♜c2 ♜a2 52. ♜b3 ♜c1+ 53. ♜b2 +-; 50. ... ♜g1 51. ♜e3 ♙f1, ♜f2 Mednis 51. ... g5 52. ♙f1 (52. ♜f2 ♜h3+ =) 52. ... g4 53. ♙g2 ♜f6 54. ♜f2 ♜h3+ 55. ♙xh3 g×h3]

51. gxf4 g5! 52. fxg5 h6! =

[52. ... h6 53. h4 h×g5 54. h×g5 ♜g6 =] ½-½

□ E3-13

Gijs van Breukelen, 1980

1. ♜e2 b5

[1. ... ♜d7 2. ♜d3 ♙f5+ 3. ♜xc3 ♙xc2 4. ♜xc2 ♜c6 5. ♜b2 =; 1. ... ♙c4+ 2. ♜e3 b5 3. ♜d4 =]

2. ♙a4!

[2. ♜d3? b4 3. ♜d4 ♜e7 -+]

2. ... ♙c4+

[2. ... bxa4 3. ♜d3 =; 2. ... ♙d7 3. ♜d3! (3. ♙b3? ♙f5 4. ♜e3 ♜d7 5. ♜d4 c2 -+) 3. ... b4 4. ♙b3 ♜e7 (4. ... ♙b5+ 5. ♜d4 =) 5. ♜c4 =]

3. ♜d1 bxa4 4. ♜c2 a3 5. ♜xc3 ♜d7 6. ♜c2 ♙a2 7. ♜c3 ♜d6 8. ♜b4 ½-½

□ E3-14

Petukhov – Kuznetsov, SSSR 1977

1. ... g5! 2. e5+

[2. fxg5+ ♜xg5 3. ♙xh7 (3. e5 ♜xe5! =) 3. ... ♜f6! = ♙e4]

2. ... ♜g7 3. ♙e6

[3. e6 ♜f6 =]

3. ... ♜f8 4. ♙f5

[4. f5 ♜xe6+ 5. fxg6 ♜f8 6. ♜e4 h5 7. ♜f5 g4 8. h×g4 h×g4 9. ♜xg4 ♜e7 10. ♜f5 ♜e8 11. ♜f6

♜f8 =]

4. ... gxf4 5. ♜e4 ♜h6! 6. ♜xf4 ♜h5 7. ♜f3

[7. e6 ♜xe6+ 8. ♙xe6 ♜g6 =]

7. ... ♜g5 8. ♜e4 h5 9. h4+

[9. ♙c8 ♜g6 10. e6 ♜f6 = ♙f8-e6]

9. ... ♜xh4 10. ♜f4 ♜e6+! 11. ♙xe6 stale-mate ½-½

□ E3-15

Petrosian – Larsen, San Antonio 1972

47... e5!!

[47. ... ♜c4 48. b3 ♜a5 49. ♙d1 c4 50. b4 +- Yusupov]

48. fxg5 ♜c4 49. ♜f2

[49. e6 ♜xb2 50. g6 c4 51. ♙d5 c3 52. ♙b3 ♜d3 53. e7+ ♜xe7 54. g7 c2! 55. ♙xc2 ♜f7! 56. ♙xd3 ♜xg7 = Mednis]

49. ... ♜xe5

[49. ... ♜xb2? 50. ♜e3! Petrosian]

50. ♙e4 ♜g7 51. b3 ♜f7 52. g6 ♜g5??

[52. ... ♜e5 53. ♜e3 ♜xg6 54. ♙xg6 ♜xg6 = Petrosian 55. ♜e4 ♜f6 56. ♜d5 ♜f5 57. ♜xc5 ♜f4 58. b4 ♜g3 59. b5 ♜xh3 60. b6 ♜g2 61. b7 h3 62. b8♙ h2 =]

53. ♙f5 +- ♜f6 54. ♜e3 ♜e6 55. ♙xe6 ♜xe6 56. ♜e4 ♜f6 57. ♜d5 ♜xg6 58. ♜xc5 ♜f5 59. b4 ♜f4 60. b5 ♜g3 61. b6 1-0

□ E3-16

Anatoly Kuznetsov, 1965

1. e7 ♙c3+

[1. ... ♙c7+ 2. ♙a6! ♜d7 3. f6 ♜f7 4. ♙h5 ♜d6? 5. e8♙+ ♜xe8 6. f7 +-]

2. ♙a6 ♜d7 3. f6!

[3. ♜xb5? ♙f6! -+]

3. ... ♙xf6 4. ♜xb5 ♜g8!

[4. ... ♜f5? 5. ♙g4 =; 4. ... ♜f7 5. e8♙+! ♜xe8 6. ♙h5 =; 4. ... ♜xe7 5. ♙c2 =]

5. ♙c2 h6!

[5. ... h5? 6. ♙g6 =]

6. ♙f5+ ♜e8! 7. ♙g6+! ♜xe7 8. ♙h7! ♜f8 9. ♙xg8 ♜xg8 10. ♜c4! h5 11. ♜d3 h4

12. ♖e2 h3 13. ♜f2!

[13. ♜f3? ♙h4; 13. ♜f1? ♙d4]

13. ... h2 14. ♜g2 ½-½

□ E3-17**W. Mees, 1940**

1. ♙d6! [1. ♙c5 ♜xc5 2. ♜c7 ♜c4 3. ♜g2 ♜b3 4. ♜b5 ♜a4 =] 1. ... ♜xd6 2. ♜b6 ♜c5 3. ♜a4+ ♜c4 4. ♜b2+ ♜b3 5. a4 1-0

□ E3-18**W. Mees, 1940**

1. ♙c5! [1. ♙d6 ♜xd6 2. ♜b6 ♜c5 3. ♜a4+ ♜b4 =] 1. ... ♜xc5 2. ♜c7 ♜b4 3. ♜d5+ ♜c4 [3. ... ♜a3 4. ♜c3 ♜b4 5. a4] 4. ♜f4 ♜b4 5. ♜e2 ♜a3 6. ♜c1 1-0

□ E3-19**Osmo Kaila, 1978**

1. ♜xd1! [1. ♜xc1? ♜c3 2. ♜c2 ♜c4 (2. ... ♜d4? 3. ♜d2) 3. ♜d2 ♜d4 4. ♜e1 ♜e3 5. ♜f1 ♜e2 6. ♜e1 ♜g3] 1. ... ♙f4 2. ♜e2 ♙xh2 3. ♜f3 ♙e5 4. ♜f2 ½-½

□ E3-20**Osmo Kaila, 1978**

1. ♜xc1! [1. ♜xd1? ♙f4 2. ♜e2 ♙xh2 3. ♜f3 ♜f5+-] 1. ... ♜e3 2. ♜d2 ♜f1+ 3. ♜e1 ♜xh2 4. ♜f2 ♜g4+ [4. ... ♜f3 5. ♜xf3 = (5. ♜g3? ♜g5)] 5. ♜g3 h2 6. ♜g2 ½-½

□ E3-21**N. Megvishvili, 1973**

1. a5 ♙d8 2. a6 ♙b6 3. ♙e1 ♙a7 4. ♙f2 ♜e5 5. ♙xa7 ♜d6 6. ♙b6 ♜c6 7. ♙a5 1-0

□ E3-22**G. Umnov, 1986**

1. ♙d2!

[1. a6 ♙e3 2. ♜e2 ♙a7 3. ♙d2 (3. ♜d3 ♜e6 4. ♜c4 ♜d7 5. ♙c5 ♙xc5 =) 3. ... ♜e5 4. ♙e3 ♜d5 5. ♙xa7 ♜c6 ♜b5 6. ♙d4 ♜c7 =; 1. ♜e2 ♙f4 2. a6 ♙b8 3. ♜d3 ♜e6 4. ♜c4 ♜d7 5. ♜b5

♙a7 =]

1. ... ♙h4+

[1. ... ♜e6 2. a6 +-]

2. ♜e2 ♙g3 3. a6 ♙b8 4. ♙f4!

[4. ♜d3?

A) 4. ... ♜e5? 5. ♜c4 ♜d6 6. ♜b5 (6. ♙f4+ ♜c6 =) 6. ... ♙a7 = 7. ♙a5;

B) 4. ... ♜e6! 5. ♙f4 (5. ♜c4 ♜d7 6. ♜b5 ♙a7 =) 5. ... ♜d5! 6. ♙xb8 ♜c6 =]

4. ... ♙a7 5. ♙e3 ♜e6

[5. ... ♙b8 6. ♜d3 ♜e6 7. ♜c4 ♜d6 8. ♜b5 ♜c7 9. ♙d4 +- ♜c8 10. ♜c6]

6. ♙xa7 ♜d5 7. ♜d3 ♜c6 8. ♜c4 +- 1-0

□ E3-23**Paulsen – Metger, Nürnberg 1888**

1. ♜c4?

[1. ♜c5? b6+! =. The correct move was 1. ♜d4!! ♜c6 (1. ... b6 2. a6! ♜c6 3. ♜c4 ♜d6 4. ♜b4 ♜c6 5. ♙b8 b5 6. ♙a7! ♜c7 7. ♜xb5 +-; 1. ... b5 2. a6! ♜c6 3. ♜c3 ♜d6 4. ♜b4 ♜c6 5. ♜a5 +-) 2. ♙b6! (2. ♜c3? b6 3. a6 ♜b5 =) 2. ... ♜d6 (2. ... ♜b5 3. ♜d5 ♜a6 4. ♜d6 ♜b5 5. ♜c7 ♜a6 6. ♜b8 +-; 2. ... ♜d7 3. ♜c5 ♜c8 4. ♙a7 ♜c7 5. ♜b5 +-) 3. ♜c4 ♜c6 4. ♜b4 ♜d6 5. ♜b5 ♜d7 6. ♙g1 ♜c7 7. ♙h2+ ♜d7 8. ♜b6 ♜c8 9. ♙g3 +-]

1. ... b5+ 2. axb6+ ♜b7 3. ♜b5 ♜a8 4. ♙b8 ♜xb8 5. ♜c6 ♜c8 ½-½

□ E3-24**Sveshnikov – Gulko, Moscow 1983**

75. ♙h7! +- [75. ♙c4+ ♜f6 76. ♜f4? (76. ♙d3 +-) 76. ... g5+ =; 75. ♜f4? ♜g8 =] 1-0

□ E3-25**V. Kosek, 1930**

1. ♜h5 g5!

[1. ... ♜f7 2. ♙d5+ ♜f6 3. h4 ♜f5 4. ♙f7 ♜f6 5. ♙e6! ♜xe6 6. ♜g6 +-]

2. ♜h6 g4!

[2. ... ♜f5 3. h3 ♜f6 (3. ... ♜f4 4. ♜g6) 4. ♙d5 ♜f5 5. ♜g7 g4 6. h4 +-]

3. ♙d5!

[3. ♖e4 ♜f7 4. ♜h7! (4. ♜h7 ♜f6) 4. ... ♜f6
 (4. ... ♜e6 5. ♜g8+ ♜f6 6. ♜d5 ♜e5 7. ♜b7 see
 mainline 3. ♜d5; 4. ... ♜f8 5. ♜g6 ♜e7 6. ♜g8
 ♜d6 7. ♜f6 +- Δ♜e6) 5. ♜g6 ♜e6 (5. ... ♜e5 6.
 ♜g5 ♜e6 7. ♜h5 ♜e7 8. ♜h6 ♜f8 9. ♜h7 +-) 6.
 ♜e8 ♜e7 (6. ... ♜f5 7. ♜c6 see mainline 3. ♜d5)

7. ♜h5 ♜f8 8. ♜h7 +- Averbakh]

3. ... ♜e5! 4. ♜b7! ♜f5! 5. ♜c6! ♜e5
 [5. ... ♜f6 6. ♜d7 ♜f7 7. ♜h7!]

6. ♜g6! ♜e6 7. ♜e4! ♜e5 8. ♜b7! ♜f4 9.
 ♜f6! g3 10. h3 g2 11. ♜xg2 ♜g3 12. ♜g5 1-0

Score table

Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1	_____	11	1	_____	21	2	_____
2	2	_____	12	2	_____	22	4	_____
3	2	_____	13	3	_____	23	3	_____
4	2	_____	14	3	_____	24	1	_____
5	2	_____	15	5	_____	25	5	_____
6	3	_____	16	5	_____			
7	4	_____	17	2	_____			
8	2	_____	18	2	_____			
9	3	_____	19	2	_____			
10	1	_____	20	2	_____			
						total	64	_____

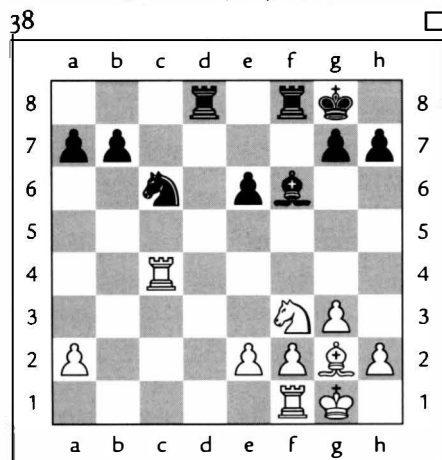
Points	Playing Strength
less than 5 points	beginner
5-10 points	ELO 800-1000
11-20 points	ELO 1000-1500
21-30 points	ELO 1500-1800
31-39 points	ELO 1800-2100
40-48 points	ELO 2100-2200
49-53 points	ELO 2200-2300
54-58 points	ELO above 2300
59-64 points	ELO above 2400

4 Exchanging Pieces

Exchanging is arguably the most important element of positional play. Fundamentally, most games are mainly just a series of different exchanging operations. Grandmaster Kotov recalled the advice given to him and Smyslov by the experienced master Makagonov before a game at Venice 1950. 'Why sharpen the game? Exchange queens, leave a rook and two or three minor pieces on the board, and you will win easily. Which pieces have to be exchanged and which have to remain? Very few of today's chess players can successfully grapple with this question. In tactics they are in their element, but in this matter you will out-class them.' This is indeed one of the most important questions that should concern a chess-player during a game. Often the right answer acts like a key to the position. The next example shows how easily one can then develop the correct plan.

* * *

Artur Yusupov – Kevin Spraggett
Québec (ct3) 1989



Black has a weak pawn on e6. The opposite-coloured bishops are another important factor. As a general rule, that can make the game more drawish. If I am to use the active potential of my pieces, I have to avoid simplification.

18. e3!?

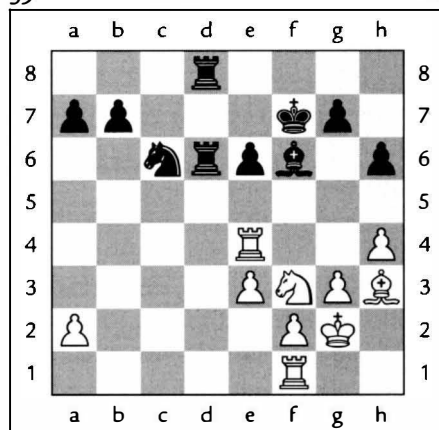
I take control over the d4 square, and so avoid unfavourable exchanges.

18. ... ♖d6 19. h4 h6 20. ♗e4 ♗fd8 21. ♕h3!? ♜f7

21. ... e5?! 22. ♜g2 ♖d1 23. ♖×d1 ♖×d1 24. ♕c8 ±.

22. ♜g2!?

39



With my last two moves I prevented the exchange of a pair of rooks.

22. ... ♗e8 23. ♖c1! [Δ♗c2, ♜d2]

I came to the conclusion that the main task now was to activate the knight. I can do that by moving it to d2, the only square where I don't need to fear an exchange. So the

first stage of the plan becomes clear: the rook must cross to c2. Then the knight has the option of moving to c4.

23. ... ♖e7 24. ♜c2 b6? [△24. ... ♜d5]

25. ♜f4! ± [△♜c6]

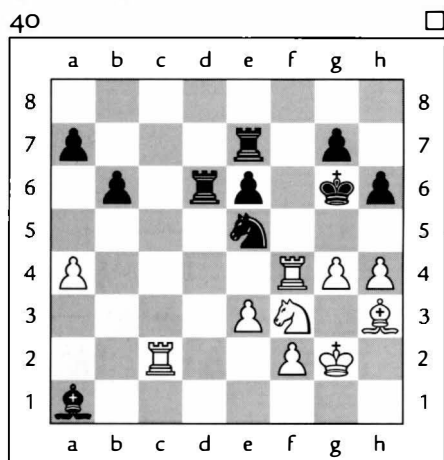
25. ... ♘g6

25. ... ♘g8? 26. ♜d2 △♜e4 ×f6.

26. g4! ♙a1 27. ♜c1 ♙b2 28. ♜c2 ♙a1 29. a4!?

29. h5+ ♘h7 30. g5 g6!; 29. ♜fc4 ♜e5 ±; 29. ♜f8!?

29. ... ♜e5



The situation has changed. Black's king is unsafe and the pawns can be advanced to attack it. The exchange of knights is no longer a problem.

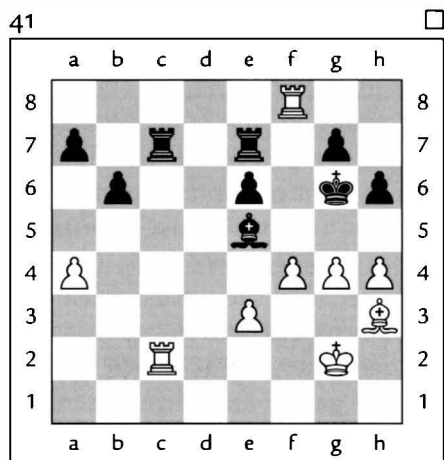
30. ♜×e5+ ♙×e5 31. ♜f8!

△f4 → ♞

31. ... ♜dd7?!

△31. ... ♘h7 32. f4 ♙a1 33. g5 g6 ±.

32. f4 ♜c7



I must not exchange the rooks!

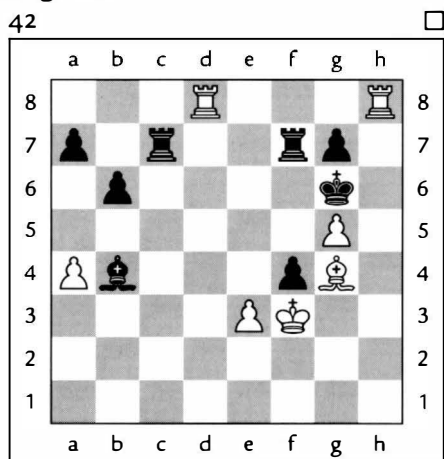
33. ♜d2 ♙c3 34. ♜d6 ♘h7 35. g5 h×g5 36. h×g5 ♙b4 37. ♜dd8?!

Sadly, I now missed the powerful 37. g6+!! ♘h6 38. ♙f5!, which would have decided the battle at once.

37. ... ♘g6 [△37. ... g6 38. ♜f6 →]

38. ♘f3 ♜f7 39. ♜h8 e5 40. ♙g4 e×f4

Nevertheless, I succeeded in weaving a mating net.



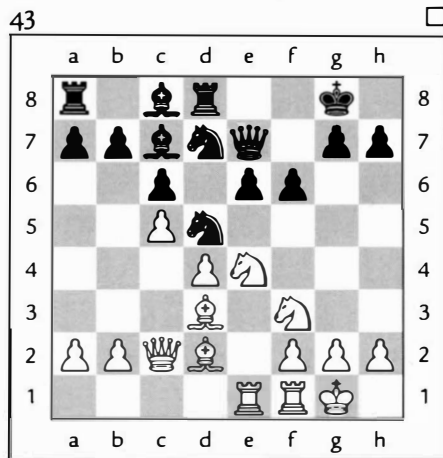
41. ♜d5! [△♙h5#]

f×e3+ 42. ♖g3

and Black resigned.

Vladimir Kramnik – Alexey Dreev

Linares 1997



Here Kramnik played a move that was, to many spectators, incomprehensible:

14. ♖d6!?,

and after the forced

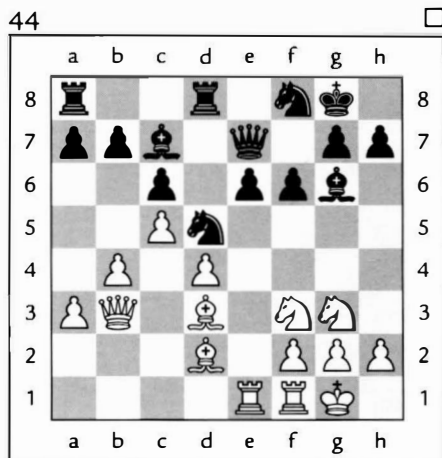
14. ... ♖f8

he exchanged off the passive bishop, still sitting on its starting square, for his active knight. Why did he lose a couple of tempi to make an exchange that looks, at first glance, quite illogical? Kramnik is a wonderful player. He doesn't just see the present position, he also understands how the game will develop. Let's suppose that White had played instead the quieter 14. a3 ♖f8 15. b4 ♖d7 16. ♖g3 ♖e8 17. ♗b3 ♖g6.

(see next diagram)

Comparing both diagrams we can see that the 'passive' bishop has become, arguably, Black's most active piece! With a well-timed exchange, Kramnik eliminated

what was, potentially, the most dangerous of Black's pieces. The game continued



15. ♖×c8 ♖a×c8 16. ♖e4 ♗f7 17. ♖fe1 ♖e8 18. b4 a6 19. a4

with a clear advantage to White.

* * *

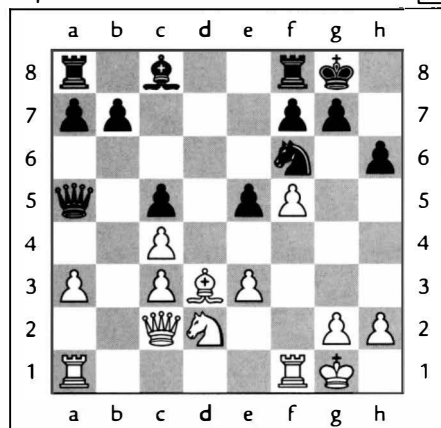
How do you develop a feel for exchanges? First of all, study the games of grandmasters and try to understand when and why they exchange. The most suitable games are of course those annotated by the players themselves. Analyse your own games, paying particular attention to exchanges; and keep exchanges in mind during the game. For instance, ask yourself whether it's sensible to remove a particular pair of pieces from the board.

I hope this book provides you with enough training material on this theme. Unfortunately there is too little decent material on this subject, but I can at least recommend the classic Euwe/Kramer book 'The Middle Game' (Vol. 6, chapters 3 and 4, Vol. 10). You will find many additional examples in the book 'Positional Play' by Dvoretsky and Yusupov.

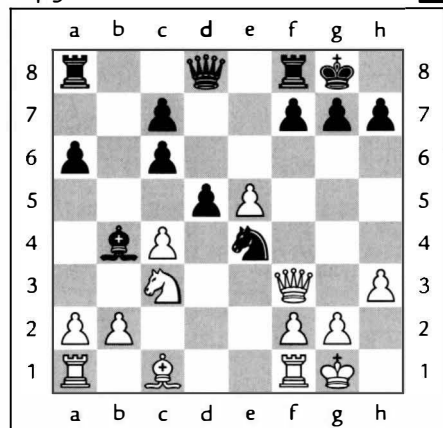


Exercises (solutions p. 69-73)

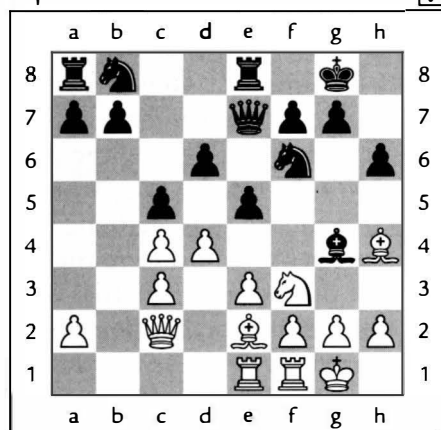
E4-1 * ?



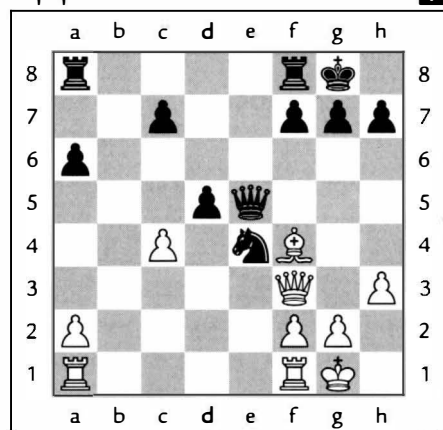
E4-3 * ?



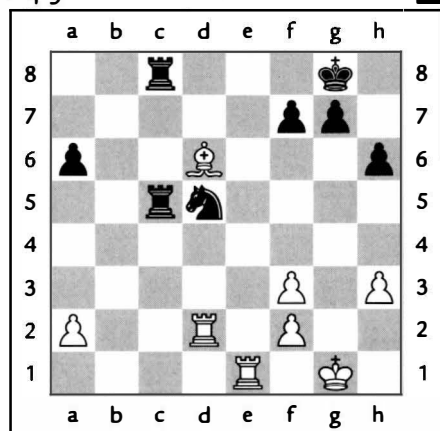
E4-2 * ?



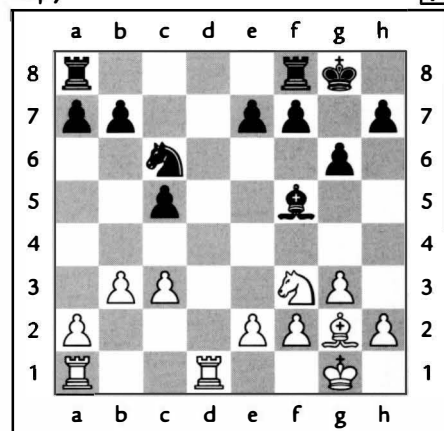
E4-4 * ?



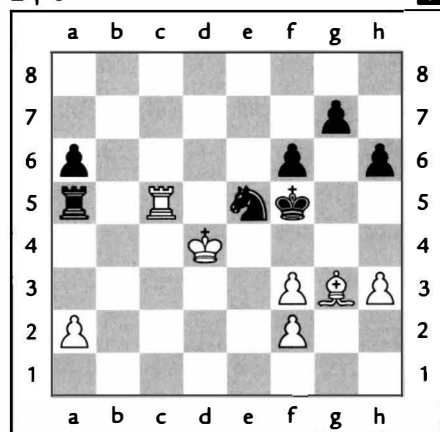
E4-5 * ?



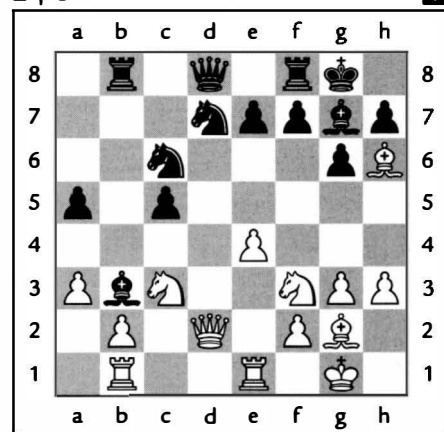
E4-7 * ?



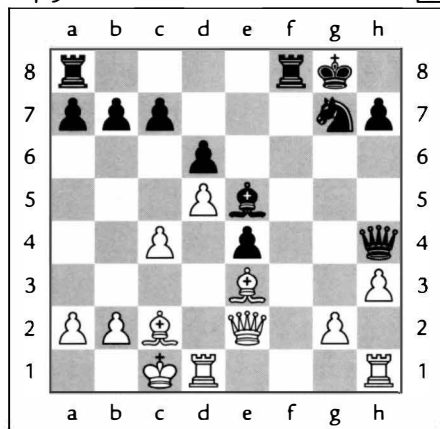
E4-6 * ?



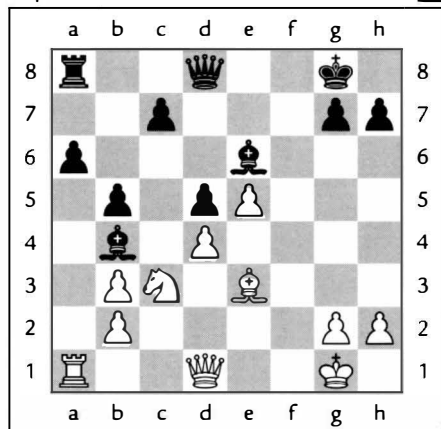
E4-8 * ?



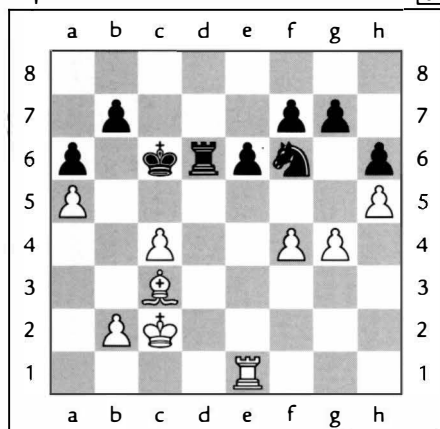
E4-9 * ?



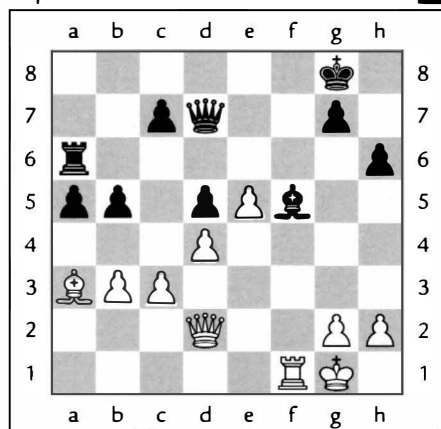
E4-11 * ?



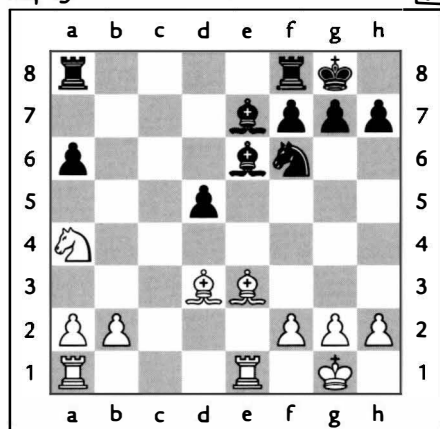
E4-10 * ?



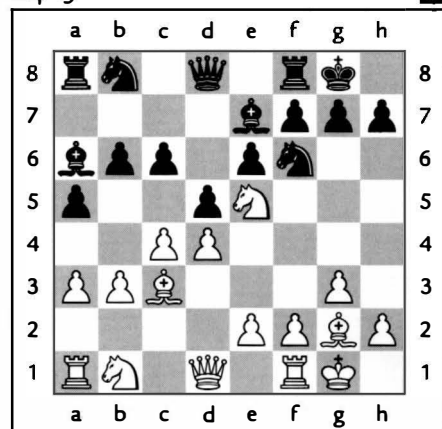
E4-12 ** ?



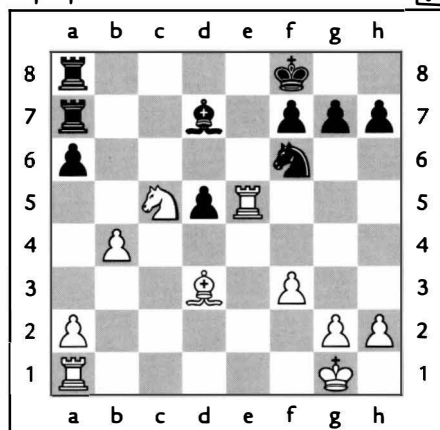
E4-13 * [?]



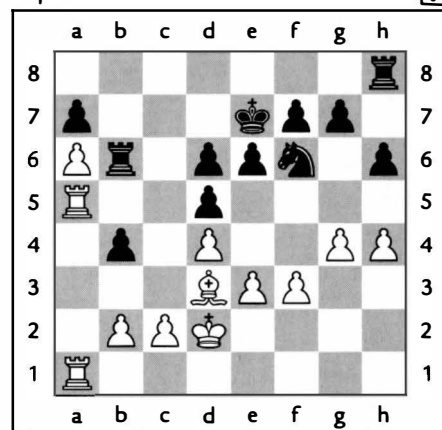
E4-15 ** [?]



E4-14 **** [?]



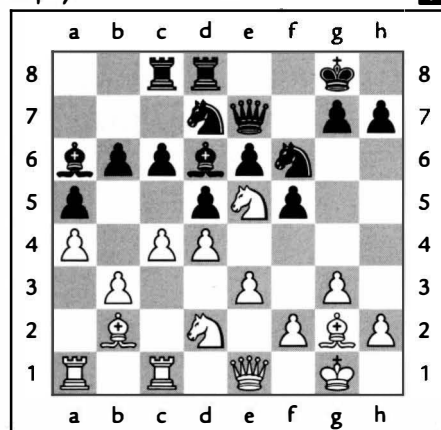
E4-16 ** [?]



E4-17

**

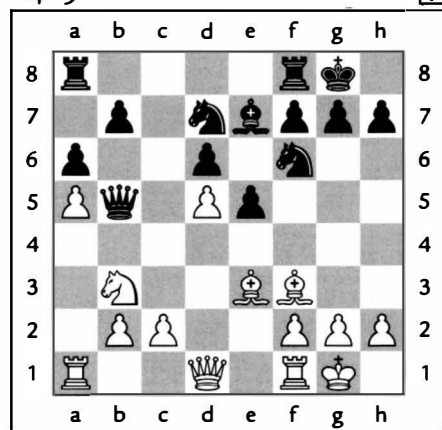
?



E4-19

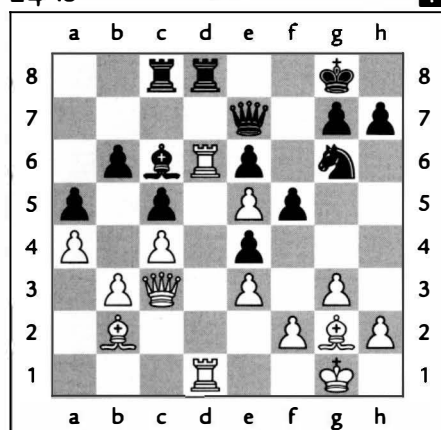
**

?



E4-18

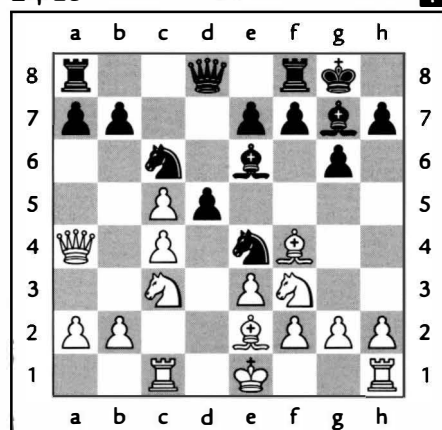
?



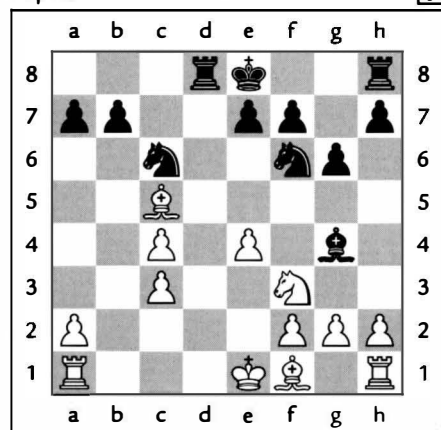
E4-20

**

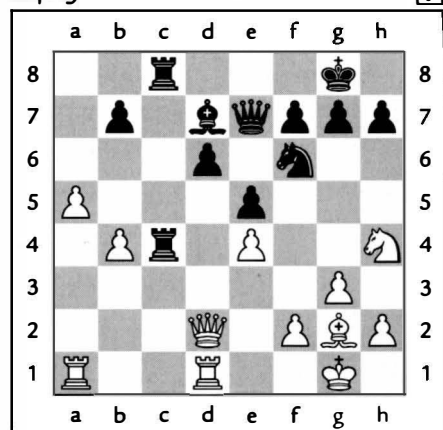
?



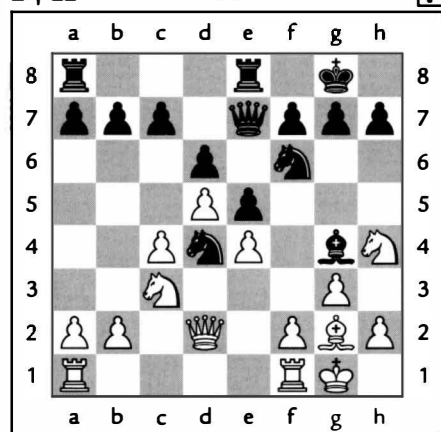
E4-21 ** ?



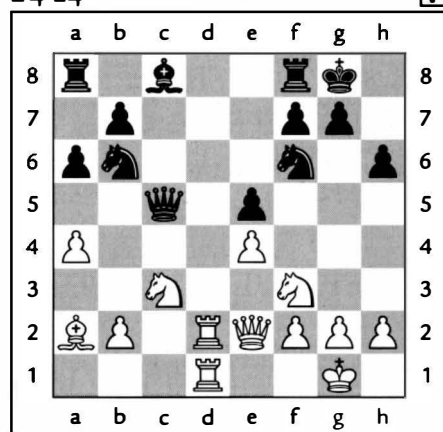
E4-23 * ?



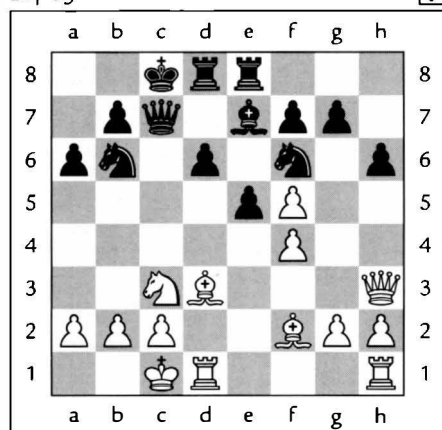
E4-22 ** ?



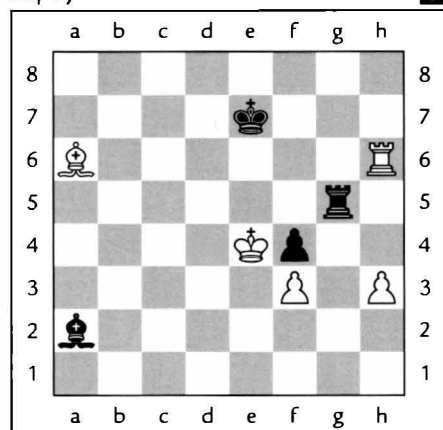
E4-24 *** ?



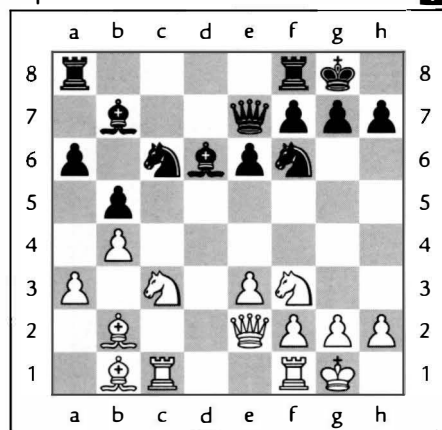
E4-25



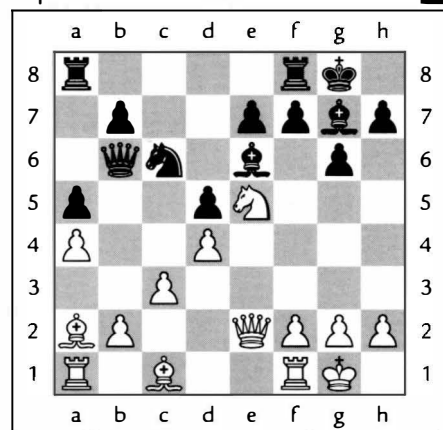
E4-27



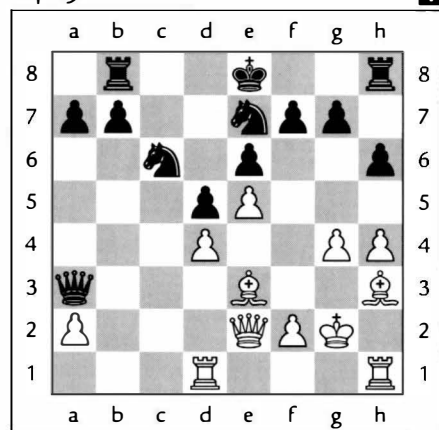
E4-26



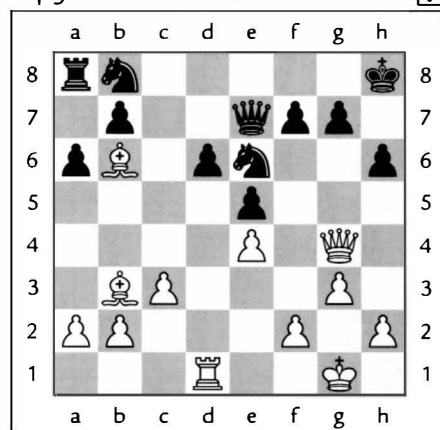
E4-28



E4-29

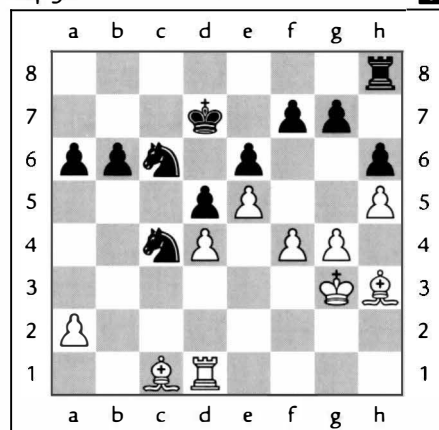


E4-31

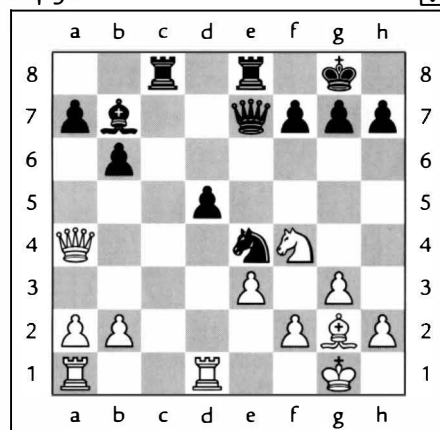


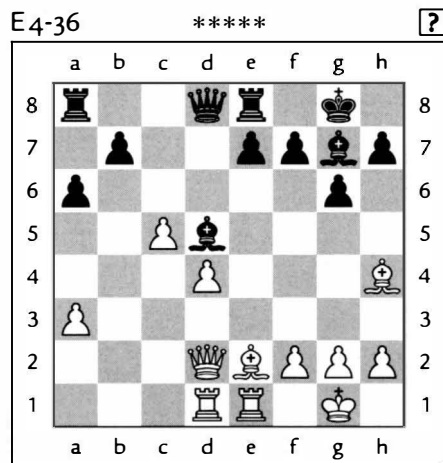
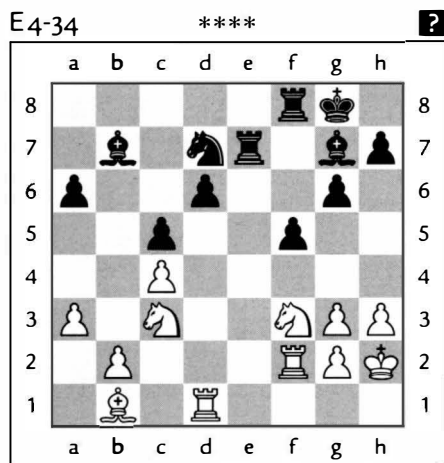
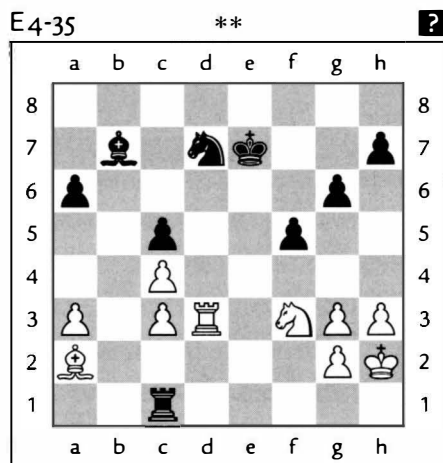
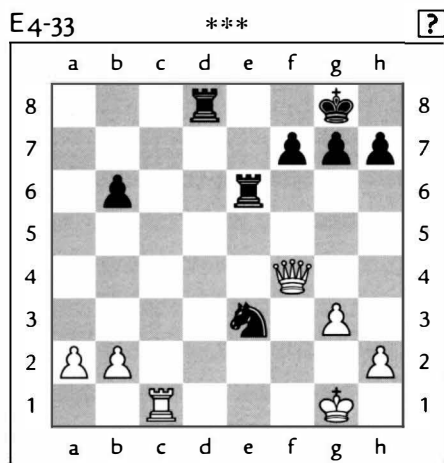
E4-30

**



E4-32





Solutions

□ E4-1

Botvinnik – Kan, Leningrad 1939

16. ♖e4! ♜d8 17. ♜xf6+ [17. ♜xc5? ♜b6] 17. ... ♜xf6 18. ♙e4 ♜b8 19. ♖ad1 ±. White gains control over the important central square d5.

□ E4-2

Botvinnik – Chekhover, Leningrad 1938

13. ♙xf6! [13. ♜d2?! ♙xe2 14. ♜xe2 exd4 15. cxd4 cxd4] 13. ... ♜xf6 14. ♜e4 ♙xf3 15. ♙xf3 ♜c6 16. dxc5 dxc5 17. ♜d1 ♜ad8 18. ♜d5 ±. In this game, exchanging enabled Botvinnik to carry out the same strategic plan as against Kan: he gained control of the d5 square.

□ E4-3

Boleslavsky – Smyslov, Leningrad 1948

14. ... ♙xc3! A protected knight in the centre is often stronger than a bishop. 15. bxc3 ♜e7 [xc3, e5] 16. cxd5 cxd5 17. c4! [17. ♙f4? g5! 18. ♙g3 (18. ♙e3 ♜xe5) 18. ... ♜d2; 17. ♜e3? ♜xe5 18. f3 ♜xc3 –+] 17. ... ♜xe5 18. ♙f4

continued in the next solution

□ E4-4

(sequel to E4-3)

18. ... ♜c3! 19. cxd5 [≠ 19. ♜xc3 ♜xc3 ♙d2] 19. ... ♜xf3 20. gxf3 [xf2–f3–h2] 20. ... ♜c3 21. ♙xc7 ♜xd5 22. ♙g3 ♜fc8 ♢ 23. ♜fd1 ♜c5 24. ♜d2 h6 [≠ 24. ... f6 × 7. Reihe] 25. ♜e1 ♜ac8 26. ♙d6?! [≠ 26. ♙g2]

continued in the next solution

□ E4-5

(sequel to E4-4)

Black exploits his opponent's carelessness and exchanges a pair of rooks. His opponent no longer has any counter chances.

26. ... ♜c1! ♢ 27. ♜xc1 ♜xc1+ 28. ♙g2 ♜b6 29. ♙g3 ♜c6 30. ♙f1?! [≠ 30. ♜d6! ♜xd6 31. ♙xd6 f5 32. f4 ♙f7 33. ♙f3 ♢] 30. ... f6 31. ♙e2 ♙f7

32. ♙d3 ♜c5! [≠ ♙a5] 33. ♜b2 ♜d7 34. ♙d4 ♙a5 35. ♜c2 ♙e6 36. ♜c6+ ♙f5 37. ♜c7 ♜e5 38. ♜c5 The threat is 39. f4. Instead 38. ♜xg7 ♜xf3+ 39. ♙e3 ♙a3+ 40. ♙e2 ♜d4+ 41. ♙f1 ♜xa2 –+ was bad.

continued in the next solution

□ E4-6

(sequel to E4-5)

The threat is 39. f4. By exchanging rooks White gains counterplay, as his king can attack the a6 pawn. Smyslov finds a tactical way to exchange the minor pieces!

38. ... ♜a3! [≠ ♜d3; 38. ... ♜xc5? 39. ♙xc5 ♢; 38. ... ♜a4+ 39. ♙c3 ♜a3+ 40. ♙b4 ♜xf3 41. a4 g5 42. ♙a5 ♢] 39. ♙xe5 ♜a4+ 40. ♜c4?! [≠ 40. ♙e3 fxe5 41. ♜c2 ♜a3+ 42. ♙e2 a5 43. ♜d2 g6 44. ♜c2 h5 45. ♜b2 ♜c3 –+ ≡ 46. ... ♙f4] 40. ... fxe5+ 41. ♙d5 ♜xa2 –+ [41. ... ♜xc4 42. ♙xc4 ♙f4 –+] 42. ♙g4 g5 and White resigned.

□ E4-7

Smyslov – Tal, Moscow 1969

13. ♜h4! ♙e6 [13. ... ♜ad8 14. ♜xf5 gxf5 15. f4 ±] 14. ♙xc6! bxc6 15. ♜f3 f6 [15. ... ♙g4 16. ♜e5 ♙xe2 17. ♜e1 ♙a6 18. ♜d7 ♜fe8 19. ♜xc5 ♙c8 20. ♜ad1 ±] 16. ♜d2 ♜fd8 17. ♜e4 c4 18. ♜c5 ±.

□ E4-8

Furman – Smyslov, Rostov-on-Don 1971

20. ... ♜de5! 21. ♜xe5 [21. ♜xd8 ♜fxd8 22. ♙xg7 ♙xg7 23. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 24. f4 ♜c4 25. ♜e2 ♜d3 26. ♙f2 ♜xb2 ♢] 21. ... ♜xd2 22. ♙xd2 ♙xe5 23. ♜bc1 ♙d4 [≠ ♜e5] 24. ♙f4 [24. ♜e2 ♜e5 25. ♜xd4 cxd4 ♢ ≡ ♜d3, ♜c4] 24. ... ♜e5 25. ♙xe5 [25. ♜e2 ♜d3 26. ♜xd4 cxd4 27. ♙xb8 ♜xb8 28. ♙f1 ♜xe1 29. ♜xe1 ♙c2 30. ♜e2 ♜xb2 31. ♜d2 ♜a2 ♢] 25. ... ♙xe5 26. ♜e2 e6! 27. ♙f1 [27. f4 ♙d4+ 28. ♙h2 ♙c4 ♢] 27. ... g5! 28. ♜d2 ♜fd8 29. ♜xd8+ ♜xd8 30. ♜b5 c4

31. ♖c3 [31. ♙xc4 ♜c8 -+] 31. ... ♜d2 -+ 0-1.

□ E4-9

Timman – Díez del Corral, Luzern (ol) 1982

19. ♖g4! [19. g4?! ♜ae8] 19. ... ♜xg4 20. h×g4 ± Black has two weaknesses: e4 and h7. At the same time White's pawn on g4 cuts out the enemy knight from the game. 20. ... ♙f4 21. ♙d2! ♜f6? [Δ21. ... ♜ae8] 22. ♙xe4 h6 23. ♜df1 ♜af8 24. ♜f3 ♙xe3+ 25. ♙×e3 ♜8f7 26. ♜fh3 h5 1-0.

□ E4-10

Kasparov – Vukić, Skara 1980

36. ♙xf6! g×f6 37. ♜d1 [37. ♜d1 ♜×d1 38. ♙×d1 ♙c5 39. g5 f×g5 40. f×g5 h×g5 41. h6 +-] 1-0.

□ E4-11

Ghinda – Yusupov, Dubai (ol) 1986

18. ... ♙xc3 19. b×c3 a5 'What prompted Black to exchange his bishop for the knight? First, the once backward pawn on a6 has turned into a dangerous passed pawn. Second, the remaining bishop is obviously stronger than its white colleague.' (Mark Dvoretsky) 20. ♜d3?! [Δ20. ♙c1 Δ ♙a3] 20. ... ♜d7 21. ♙c1 ♙f5 22. ♜d2 h6 23. ♙a3 ♜a6! ♢ 24. ♜f1

continued in the next solution

□ E4-12

(sequel to E4-11)

24. ... ♜g6?! Seriously sloppy. White can exchange rooks, and that increases his survival chances. The correct move was 24. ... ♙e4! and then ♜g6 ♢. 25. ♜f3! ♙e4 26. ♜g3 ♜×g3 27. h×g3 a4 28. b×a4 b×a4 ♢.

□ E4-13

Fischer – Petrosian, Buenos Aires 1971

16. ♙c5! ♜fe8 17. ♙xe7 ♜xe7 18. b4! [≤18. ♙c5 a5] 18. ... ♙f8 19. ♙c5 ♙c8 20. f3! ± ♜ea7 21. ♜e5 ♙d7

continued in the next solution

□ E4-14

(sequel to E4-13)

Here Fischer found a great solution to the problems of the position, one that has impressed many chess players since. Perhaps Kramnik gained inspiration from this classic game when he made his surprising decision to exchange against Dreev.

22. ♙xd7+!!

Why did Fischer exchange his active and centralised knight for the passive bishop? Above all, he wanted to remove all his opponent's hopes of counterplay. Black wanted to exchange the bishop by playing 22. ... ♙b5. That could have been prevented by 22. a4, but then 22. ... ♙c6 would follow, threatening to exchange knights with 23. ... ♙d7.

22. ... ♜xd7 23. ♜c1 [Δ♜c6] 23. ... ♜d6 [Δ♙d7] 24. ♜c7 ♙d7 [24. ... ♜e8 25. ♜×e8+ ♙×e8 26. ♜a7 +-] 25. ♜e2 g6 [25. ... a5 26. b5; 25. ... ♙b6? 26. ♜ee7] 26. ♙f2 h5 27. f4! ±.

□ E4-15

Razuvaev – Yusupov, URS Cup 1984

Black has to exchange his opponent's active knight.

11. ... ♙fd7! 12. ♙xd7 ♙xd7 13. ♙d2 ♜c8 =.

□ E4-16

Yusupov – Wirthensohn, Hamburg 1991

It is very important for White to exchange a pair of rooks. He can then act more effectively against Black's weaknesses on b4 and g7.

26. ♜b5! ♜hb8 27. ♜xb6 ♜xb6 28. g5 h×g5 29. h×g5 ♙d7 [29. ... ♙e8?! 30. ♜h1 ♙c7 31. ♜h7 ♙f8 32. ♜h8+ ♙e7 33. ♙c1 ♙×a6 34. ♜a8 ♙c7 35. ♜a7 ♙d7 36. ♙b1 +-] 30. ♜h1 ±.

□ E4-17

Renet – Yusupov, Dubai (ol) 1986

16. ... ♙xe5! 17. d×e5 ♙e4 ♢ 18. ♙xe4 d×e4 19. ♙a3 c5 20. ♙b2 ♙f8 [20. ... ♙b8! ♢] 21. ♜d1 ♙b7 [21. ... ♜×d1] 22. ♜c3 ♙g6 23. ♜d6

♙c6 24. ♖a1*continued in the next solution***□ E4-18***(sequel to E4-17)*

Black wants to exchange all the major pieces without having to open the a1–h8 diagonal.

24. ... ♖h8! [Δ ♖f7] 25. ♜f1 ♖f7 26. ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 27. ♖xd8+ ♜xd8 28. ♜e1 g5 29. ♜d2? [Δ 29. ♜c2 Δg4] 29. ... ♜xd2+ 30. ♜xd2 ♖h6 ♢.

□ E4-19**Smyslov – Tal, Bled (ct1), 1959**

15. ♜d3! ♖fc8 16. ♖fc1 ♜xd3 17. cxd3 g6?! [17. ... ♖c5? 18. ♖xc5 dxc5 19. d6; 17. ... ♜f8?! 18. ♖c3 ♜e8 19. ♖ac1 ♜d8 ±] 18. ♖c3 ♖xc3 19. bxc3 ♖c8 20. c4 [Δ ♖b1 xb7] 20. ... e4! 21. dxe4 ♖xc4 22. ♖d2 ±.

□ E4-20**Ragozin – Botvinnik, Leningrad (m8), 1940**

10. ... ♙xc3+! 11. bxc3 dxc4 12. ♖d4 [≤ 12. ♙xc4 ♖xc5 13. ♜b5 ♙xc4 14. ♜xc5 ♜d3 15. ♖g1 ♖ad8 –+; Δ 12.0–0 ♖xc5 13. ♜b5 ♜a5 14. ♙xc4 ♜xb5 15. ♙xb5 ♙xa2 ♢] 12. ... ♙d5 [Δ 13. ... e5 14. ♖c6 ♙c6] 13. ♙h6 ♖e8 [≤ 13. ... e5 14. ♙xf8 exd4 15. cxd4 ♜xf8 16. ♙xc4 ∞] 14.0–0 e5 15. ♖f3 [15. ♖b5 a6 16. ♖a3 ♜h4 –+] 15. ... ♖xc5 16. ♜b5 b6?! ♢ [16. ... ♜a5 17. ♙xc4 ♜xb5 18. ♙xb5 ♙xa2 ♢].

□ E4-21**Smyslov – Botvinnik, Moscow (wch12) 1957**

11. ♖d4! [11. ♖d2? ♖xd2 12. ♜xd2 ♖xe4+ –+; 11. ♙d4?! ♖xd4 12. ♖xd4 ♖xe4 13. f3 ♖xc3] 11. ... ♖xe4 12. ♖xc6 bxc6 13. ♙xa7 ♙f5 14. f3 ♖d6 15. a4 ±.

□ E4-22**Yusupov – Hernández, Thessaloniki (ol) 1984**

13. ♖b5! ♖xb5 14. cxb5 ♙d7 [Δ 14. ... a6 15. bxa6 ♖xa6 16. a4 ± Razuvayev – Huss, Wien

1984] 15. a4 a6 [≤ 15. ... c6 16. dxc6 bxc6 17. ♖f5! ♙xf5 18. exf5 +–] 16. bxa6 ♖xa6 17. a5 c6 18. dxc6 ♖xc6 [Δ ♖c4–d4] 19. ♖fd1 ♖ec8?! [Δ 19. ... g6] 20. b4 ♖c4

*continued in the next solution***□ E4-23***(sequel to E4-22)*

21. ♖f5! ♙xf5 22. exf5 d5 23. b5 [≤ 23. ♙xd5 ♖d4 24. ♜a2 ♖xd5 25. ♖xd4 exd4 26. ♜xd5 ♜xb4] 23. ... h5 24. a6 bxa6 25. bxa6 e4 26. ♙f1 ♖c2 27. ♜d4! +–.

□ E4-24**Botvinnik – Sorokin, Moscow 1931**

White exchanges Black's only active piece, and then continues his attack on the queenside.

20. ♜e3! ♜xe3 21. fxe3 ♙g4 22. a5 ♖c8 [22. ... ♖bd7 23. h3 ♙xf3 24. gxf3 ♖c5 (24. ... ♖fd8 25. ♖d5!) 25. b4 ♖e6 26. ♙xe6 fxe6 27. ♖a4 Δ ♖c5] 23. ♖c1 ♙xf3 [23. ... ♖e8 24. h3 ♙h5 (24. ... ♙e6 25. ♙xe6 ♖xe6 26. ♖d8+) 25. ♖h4! Δg4] 24. gxf3 ♖e7 25. ♖d5 ♖c6?! [25. ... ♖fxd5 26. ♙xd5 ♖xd5 27. ♖xd5 ±] 26. ♖xf6+ gxf6 27. ♖d7 ♖ab8 [27. ... ♖xa5 28. ♖cc7] 28. ♜f2! [Δ ♖g1] 28. ... ♖xa5 29. ♖cc7 ♖bc8 30. ♖xf7 +–.

□ E4-25**Estrin – Kletsel, corr 1975**

16. ♙xb6! ♜xb6 17. ♙c4 ± [xf7, d5] 17. ... exf4 18. ♙xf7 ♖f8 19. ♙e6+ ♜b8 20. ♖d3 ♜a5 21. ♖hd1 ±.

□ E4-26**Marshall – Schlechter, Oostende 1907**

15. ... ♖ac8?!

In such positions it is vital to be the first to open the long diagonal. The correct continuation was 15. ... ♖e5! 16. ♖xe5 ♙xe5 17. ♖xb5 ♙xb2 18. ♖c7 ♜e8 19. ♖xb7 axb5 20. ♜xb2 ♜c6 21. ♖e7 ♖fc8! (21. ... ♜d6 =) or 19. ♖d6 19. ... ♜d8 20. ♖xb7 ♜xd6 21. ♜xb2 ♜c6 22. ♖e7 ♜d6 = (22.

... ♖fc8! ♠c8f8).

16. ♖e4! ♖e4 17. ♙x4 f5 18. ♙b1 e5 19. ♖fd1 ±.

□ E4-27

Fischer – Keres, Zürich 1959

60. ... ♙f7?

By a timely exchange of rooks Black could have reached the draw: 60. ... ♙b1+! 61. ♖x4 ♖f5+ 62. ♖g4 ♖f6 63. ♖x6 ♖x6 =. 61. ♙c8! [♠c8g4 61. ♖x4? ♖h5 =] 61. ... ♖g6 [61. ... ♖c5 62. ♙g4 ♖c4+ 63. ♖e5 +-; 61. ... ♖h5 62. ♖b6! (62. ♖xh5 ♙xh5 63. ♖x4 ♙x3! =)] 62. ♖h7 [62. ♖xg6 ♙xg6+ 63. ♖x4 ♖f6 =] 62. ... ♖f8 63. ♙g4 [♠c8 ♖f7 ♖f7 65. ♙h5] 63. ... ♖g7 [63. ... ♖xg4? 64. ♖x7+ +-; 63. ... ♖b6! 64. ♖h8+ (64. ♖x4 ♖g8 65. ♖h4 ♖b4+ 66. ♖g3 ♖g7) 64. ... ♖g7 65. ♖d8 ♖b4+ 66. ♖e5 ±] 64. ♖h6 ♖g6 Now it's too late. White gets control over the important g5 square. 65. ♖xg6! ♙xg6+ 66. ♖x4 ♖g7 67. ♖g5! +-.

□ E4-28

Jiménez-Zerquera – Larsen, Palma de Mallorca, 1967

14. ... ♙xe5!

Larsen discovers that in this position the knight is stronger than the bishop. 14. ... ♖xe5 15. dxe5 d4 16. ♙xe6 fxe6 17. cxd4 leads to only a slight advantage for Black.

15. dxe5 d4! 16. ♙h6 ♖fd8 17. ♙xe6 fxe6 18. ♖fe1 [18. ♖g4? ♖xe5] 18. ... ♖d5 19. ♙f4 ♖f8 20. g3 [20. ♙g3 d3 ♢] 20. ... ♖f5 ♢.

□ E4-29

Tal – Botvinnik, Moscow (wch18) 1961

When playing against Tal, exchanging queens was advisable. 18. ... ♖a6! ♢ [18. ... ♖a5 ♠c4 19. ♖b5+ ♖ec6 20. g5 (20. ♖b1!) 20. ... h×g5 21. h×g5 ♖c4 22. ♙c1] 19. ♖a6 b×a6 20. h5 ♖d7 21. ♖b1 ♖b6! 22. ♖g3 ♖a5 [♠c4] 23. ♖xb6 a×b6 24. f4 ♖c4 25. ♙c1 ♖c6 26. ♖d1 continued in the next solution

□ E4-30

(sequel to E4-29)

Black exchanges one bishop and takes away all his opponent's counter chances.

26. ... ♖b4! 27. a3 ♖a2 28. f5 ♖xc1 29. ♖xc1 b5 -+.

□ E4-31

Smyslov – Reshevsky, Moskau (wch) 1948

Smyslov finds an elegant way to emphasise the weakness of d6.

25. ♙xe6! fxe6 26. ♖h4! ♖d7 27. ♖d8+ ♖x8 28. ♙xd8 ♖d7 29. ♙c7 ♖c5 30. ♖xd6 +- ♖c8 [30. ... ♖xe4 31. ♖xe6 +-] 31. ♙b6 ♖a4 32. ♖xe6 ♖xb2 33. ♖xe5 ♖c4 [33. ... ♖xc3 34. ♙d4×g7] 34. ♖e6 ♖xb6 35. ♖xb6 ♖xc3 36. ♖xb7 ♖c2 37. h4 ♖a2 38. ♖g2 +-.

□ E4-32

Karpov – Spassky, Riga 1975

Karpov chooses a forcing continuation and guarantees himself a material advantage.

20. ♖a7! ♖xf2 21. ♖xd5 ♙xd5 22. ♖xe7 ♖xd1 23. ♖c1 ♖b8 24. ♖b4 ♙xg2 25. ♖xg2 ♖xe3+ 26. ♖g1 ♖e6 27. ♖f4 ♖d8

continued in the next solution

□ E4-33

(sequel to E4-32)

It is important for White to eliminate any possible counterplay and to exchange a pair of rooks.

28. ♖d4! ♖de8 29. ♖d7 ♖g4 30. ♖c8 ♖f6 31. ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 32. ♖b7 ♖e6 33. ♖b8+ ♖e8 34. a4 g6 35. b4 ♖g7 36. ♖b7 h5 37. h3 ♖f6 38. ♖g2 ♖d6 39. a5 b×a5 40. b×a5 ♖e6 41. a6 ♖c7 42. a7 ♖e7 43. ♖c6+ ♖e5 44. ♖f3 1-0.

□ E4-34

Spassky – Karpov, Montreal 1979

Tartakower noted that the main advantage of the two bishops is that you can part with one of them at the right moment.

23. ... ♙xc3! 24. b×c3 ♖f6! ♢ 25. ♖fd2 ♖e3!

[≤ 25 $\text{♙} \times f3$ 26. $g \times f3$ $\text{♞} e6$ 27. $\text{♜} g2$] 26. $\text{♜} g1$
 [26. $\text{♞} \times d6$ $\text{♞} \times d6$ 27. $\text{♞} \times d6$ $\text{♙} \times f3$ 28. $g \times f3$ $\text{♜} e5$
 29. $f4$ $\text{♜} f3+$ 30. $\text{♜} g2$ $\text{♞} \times c3$ 31. $\text{♞} d5$ $\text{♜} d4$ 32. $\text{♞} \times c5$
 $\text{♞} b3$ 33. $\text{♞} d5$ $\text{♞} b2+ -+$] 26. ... $\text{♜} f7!$ 27. $\text{♞} \times d6$
 $\text{♞} \times d6$ 28. $\text{♞} \times d6$ $\text{♜} e7$ 29. $\text{♞} d3$ $\text{♞} e1$ 30. $\text{♙} a2$
 [30. $\text{♙} c2$ $\text{♜} e5$ 31. $\text{♞} d2$ $\text{♜} \times c4 -+$] 30. ... $\text{♞} c1!$ -
 $+$ [$\Delta \text{♞} c2$] 31. $\text{♜} f3$ [31. $\text{♙} b3$ $\text{♜} e5$ 32. $\text{♞} e3$ $\text{♜} f6$
 $\Delta \text{♞} b1$]

continued in the next solution

□ E4-35

(sequel to E4-34)

31. ... $\text{♙} \times f3!$ 32. $\text{♞} \times f3$ $\text{♜} e5$ 33. $\text{♞} e3$ $\text{♜} f6$ 34.
 $\text{♙} b3$ $a5$ $\text{♜} 35$. $\text{♙} a4$ $\text{♜} \times c4$ 36. $\text{♞} e8$ [≤ 36 . $\text{♞} d3$
 $\text{♜} b2 -+$] 36. ... $\text{♞} \times c3$ 37. $\text{♞} c8$ $\text{♜} e3$ 38. $\text{♙} b5$ $c4$
 [38. ... $\text{♞} c2$ 39. $\text{♙} c6$ $\text{♜} f1+$ 40. $\text{♜} g1$ $\text{♜} \times g3 -+$
 $\Delta f4$] 39. $\text{♜} g1$ $\text{♞} c2$ 40. $\text{♙} c6$ $c3$ 41. $\text{♙} f3$ $g5$ 42.

$g4$ $f4$ $0-1$.

□ E4-36

Grigorian – Kupreichik, Riga 1975

If White doesn't do something dramatic, Black might consolidate his position and take complete control of the $d5$ square. Grigorian fights dynamically for the initiative.

21. $\text{♙} f3!!$ [$\Delta 22$. $\text{♙} d5$ $\text{♞} d5$ 23. $\text{♙} e7$] 21. ... $\text{♙} \times f3$
 22. $g \times f3$ [$\Delta d5$] 22. ... $\text{♞} d5$ [22. ... $\text{♞} c7$ 23. $\text{♞} e3$
 $e6$ 24. $d5!$; 22. ... $\text{♞} c8$ 23. $d5!$ $\text{♞} \times c5$ 24. $d6$] 23.
 $\text{♙} \times e7$ $\text{♞} \times f3$ 24. $\text{♞} g5!$ $\text{♞} \times a3?! 25. d5 \pm \text{♞} a4$
 26. $d6$ $\text{♞} d7$ 27. $\text{♞} d3$ $a5$ 28. $\text{♞} f3$ $\text{♞} c6$ 29. $\text{♞} e3$
 $a4$ 30. $\text{♞} d3$ $\text{♞} d7$ 31. $\text{♞} \times f7!+-$ $a3$ [31. ... $\text{♜} \times f7$ 32.
 $\text{♞} d5+$ $\text{♞} e6$ 33. $\text{♞} f3++-$] 32. $\text{♞} d5$ $\text{♜} h8$ 33. $\text{♙} f6$
 $\text{♞} g4+$ 34. $\text{♞} g3$ $\text{♞} e6$ 35. $\text{♙} \times g7+$ $\text{♜} g8$ 36. $\text{♞} f8+$
 $1-0$

Score table

Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1		13	1		25	3	
2	1		14	4		26	3	
3	1		15	2		27	3	
4	1		16	2		28	3	
5	1		17	2		29	3	
6	2		18	3		30	2	
7	1		19	2		31	3	
8	1		20	2		32	3	
9	1		21	2		33	3	
10	1		22	2		34	4	
11	1		23	1		35	2	
12	2		24	3		36	5	
							total	77

Points	Playing Strength
less than 4 points	beginner
4-10 points	ELO 800-1000
11-20 points	ELO 1000-1500
21-28 points	ELO 1500-1800
29-36 points	ELO 1800-2100
37-52 points	ELO 2100-2250
53-65 points	ELO 2250-2400
more than 65 points	ELO above 2400

5 Passed Pawns in the Middlegame

A central passed pawn in the middlegame often constitutes a significant advantage. Top players like Kasparov and Kramnik are very fond of playing with passed pawns in the centre. Such positions are usually very dynamic and contain hidden tactical possibilities. Sometimes players sacrifice one or even two pawns to get a strong passed pawn.

Advantages of passed pawns:

- 1) They are in themselves dangerous, as they have the potential to promote to a queen.
- 2) They tie up enemy pieces.
- 3) They control important squares deep in the opposition's half of the board.
- 4) They often disturb communication in the enemy camp – pieces cannot switch so easily from one side of the board to another. In such cases, a direct attack on the enemy king becomes a possibility.
- 5) Using the passed pawn as cover, pieces can find a way into the opposition's side of the board.

Drawbacks of passed pawns:

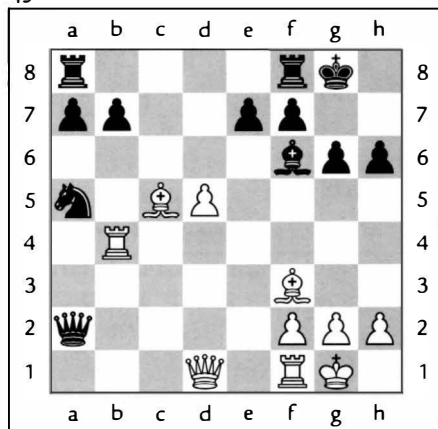
- 1) One can lose them!
- 2) If the pawn is blockaded at the right moment, it can impede the activity of its own pieces.

Vladimir Kramnik – Jan Timman

Novgorod 1995

45

□



Kramnik exploits the poor coordination of Black's pieces with a tactic.

20. ♖a4 ♜b3 21. ♖a5 ♜×d1 22. ♖×d1 b6 23. d6!

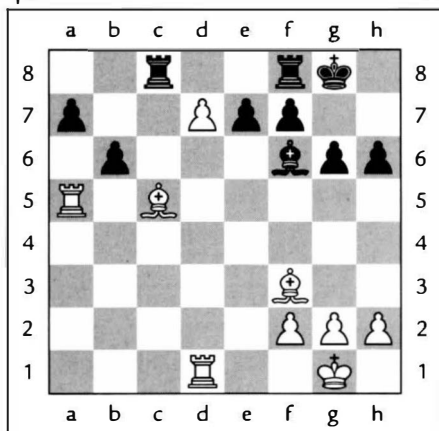
From this moment on, the far-advanced passed pawn plays a decisive role in the game.

23. ... ♖ac8

23. ... b×a5 (23. ... e×d6 24. ♕×b6 +-) 24. d×e7 ♖fc8 25. ♕×a8 ♖×a8 26. ♖d7 ♖b8 (26. ... ♖c8 27. g3; 26. ... ♖e8 27. ♜f1 +-) 27. g3 a6 28. ♕d4 +-.

24. d7

46

**24. ... ♖cd8**

Now all Black's pieces have to fight against the powerful passed pawn on d7. The mobility of the rooks is severely limited and the presence of bishops of opposite colour will not save Black. The piece sacrifice 24. ... b×a5!? offered more defensive chances: 25. d×c8 ♖×c8

A) 26. ♕×a7 a4 27. ♜f1 a3 28. ♕d5 (28. ♕d2 ♕b2 29. ♕d5 ♖d8!) ♖c2;

B) 26. ♕d4! ♕×d4 27. ♖×d4±.

25. ♕×e7 ♕×e7

Kramnik evaluated this endgame more accurately than his opponent.

25. ... b×a5? 26. ♕×f6+-.

26. ♖×a7 ♖b8

26. ... ♕c5 27. ♖e1 f5 28. ♕d5+ ♜g7 29. ♖e8+-.

27. ♖e1 ♕d8

27. ... ♕f6 28. ♕d5 b5 29. ♖e8! ♖b×e8 30. d×e8 ♖×e8 31. ♕×f7+-.

28. ♖e8 b5

28. ... ♕f6 29. ♖a8+-.

29. ♖a8!

The final preparation before the decisive king march.

♖×a8 30. ♕×a8 b4 31. ♕d5 ♜g7 32. ♜f1!

Black cannot prevent White's king going to c8, supporting the pawn's promotion.

32. ♜f1 f5 33. ♜e2 ♕c7 34. ♜d3 ♕d8 35. ♜c4+-.

1-0.

* * *

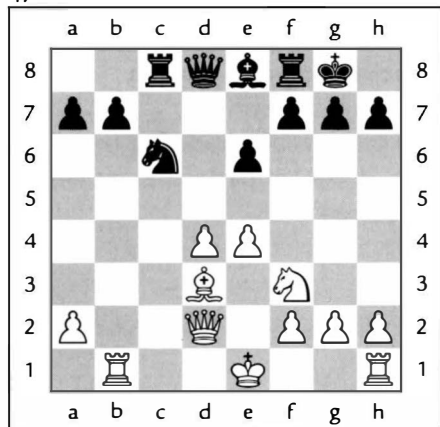
Methods of play for the side with the passed pawn:

- 1) Drive the pawn down the board to the queening square, forcing away blockers.
- 2) Use the central squares to invade with your pieces.
- 3) Attack on the wings, using the passed pawn to distract the enemy forces.

Artur Yusupov – Paul van der Sterren
Amsterdam 1994

1. d4 d5 2. c4 e6 3. ♖c3 ♖f6 4. c×d5 ♖×d5 5. e4 ♖×c3 6. b×c3 c5 7. ♖f3 c×d4 8. c×d4 ♕b4+ 9. ♕d2 ♕×d2+ 10. ♖×d2 o-o 11. ♕d3 ♖c6 12. ♖c3!? ♕d7 13. ♖b1! ♖c8 14. ♖d2 ♕e8?!

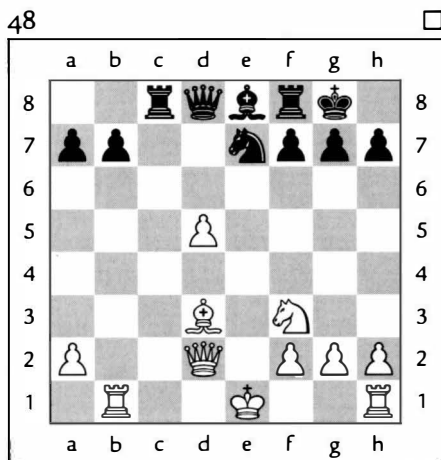
47



White seizes the chance to create a central passed pawn.

15. d5! e×d5 16. e×d5 ♖e7?

Too passive. It was better to play 16. ... ♗e7+ (Of course not 16. ... ♗×d5, due to 17. ♕×h7+) 17. ♕e2! (17. ♗e2 ♗×e2+ 18. ♖×e2 ♖a5=) ♖e5 18. o-o ♖d8 19. ♖fd1 and White only has a small advantage. Now I can use the same tactical trick for a second time and advance the pawn further.



17. d6! ± ♖g6 18. ♕×g6 h×g6

18. ... f×g6 19. o-o ♖f6 20. ♖fd1 ♕a4 was not better, because of 21. ♗d5+ ♖h8 22. d7 ♖c7 23. ♖e5! ♕×d1 24. ♖×d1 and Black has no answer to 25. ♖f7+. A pawn on the seventh rank is a huge asset.

19. o-o b6

19. ... ♕c6 20. ♖e5 ±.

20. ♖fe1 ♖c5 21. ♖bc1!

21. ♖e5?! f6; 21. ♖bd1?! ♕a4.

I exchange my opponent's only active piece and take the whole centre under control.

21. ... ♕c6

21. ... ♖×c1 22. ♖×c1+- ♖c7.

22. ♖×c5

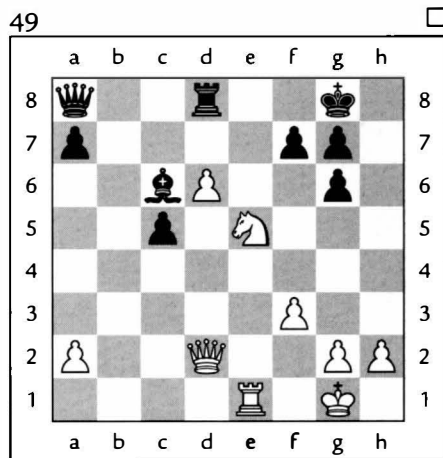
22. ♖e5?! ♖d5∞.

22. ... b×c5 23. ♖e5 ♗a8

Or 23. ... ♗b6 24. d7 ♖d8 25. ♗d6! ± with the idea 26. ♗e7. White's pawn is unstoppable.

24. f3 ♖d8?

This loses the game, but even the stronger 24. ... ♕d5 25. d7 ♖d8 26. ♖d1 ♕e6 27. ♗d6 c4 28. ♗c7 would not have changed the result of the game.



I use the superior coordination of my pieces and my control over the central squares to launch a quick attack against the enemy king.

25. ♖×f7!+-

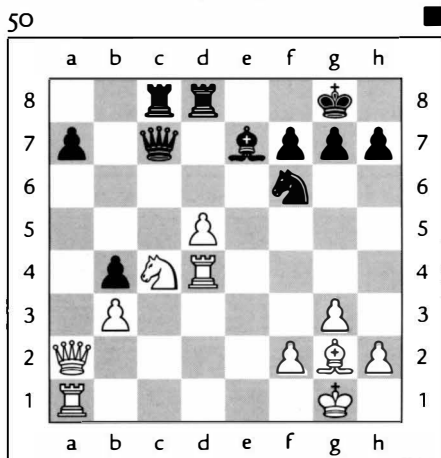
Black resigned, because of 25. ... ♖×f7 26. ♖e7+ ♖f8 27. ♗c3+-. Playing on without the pawn on f7 seemed pointless.

1-o.

Methods of play against the passed pawn:

- 1) Blockade the passed pawn as soon as possible.
- 2) A more effective, though sadly not always suitable, method: capture the pawn.
- 3) Create a passed pawn of your own so as to deflect the opposition forces from supporting their own pawn.

In the last example we saw that a passed pawn can also play a negative role by blocking out its own pieces. Sometimes the best policy is to sacrifice the central pawn so as to open diagonals and files. The central square that was previously occupied by the pawn can be used to penetrate into the enemy camp.

Artur Yusupov – Sergey Dolmatov*Graz (wchj) 1978*

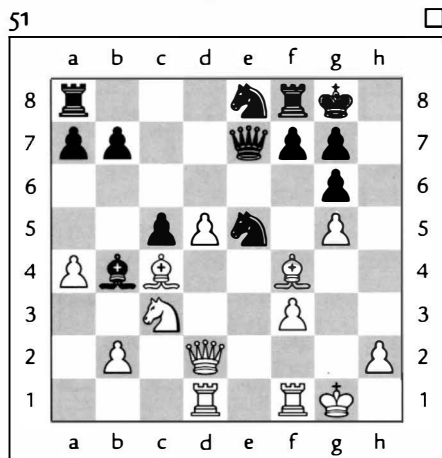
Here Black can blockade the passed pawn in good time.

24. ... ♖c5 25. ♖d2 ♜e8!

A standard manoeuvre. The knight is a splendid blockading piece.

26. ♖e1 ♜d6 27. ♜×d6 ♜×d6 28. ♜b1 ♖e8 29. ♖de2 ♖×e2 30. ♖×e2 g6 31. ♜e4 ♖b6 ♢

In spite of the bishops of opposite colour, Black could have played for a win here because of the weakness of the b3 pawn. The passed pawn on d5 obstructs White's play in the centre and blocks the long diagonal for the light-squared bishop. Luckily for me, my opponent didn't need to win this game and offered me a draw.

Artur Yusupov – Eugenio Torre*Leningrad 1987*

Black was hoping for 21. ♜e2? ♜d6! ∞, and the knight reaches its dream position.

21. d6!! +-

This unexpected move wins the game. Black can no longer coordinate his army. The pieces in the centre come under heavy fire.

21. ... ♜×d6 22. ♖a2 c4?!

The main line was: 22. ... ♜f5 23. ♖de1 ♖ad8 24. ♖d5!! (24. ♜f2 ♜d3) 24. ... ♜c4 25. ♖×c4 ♖×d2 26. ♖×e7 ♖×b2 (26. ... ♖d4 27. ♖e4 +-) 27. ♜d1! ♖c2 28. ♖b3 and White wins a piece.

Now White uses the central point d5 for the decisive attack.

23. ♖d5! ♙c5+ 24. ♜h1 ♜e6 25. ♙e5!

Black resigned as he loses the queen after
25. ... ♜e5 26. ♜fe1 ♜f5 27. ♖e7+.

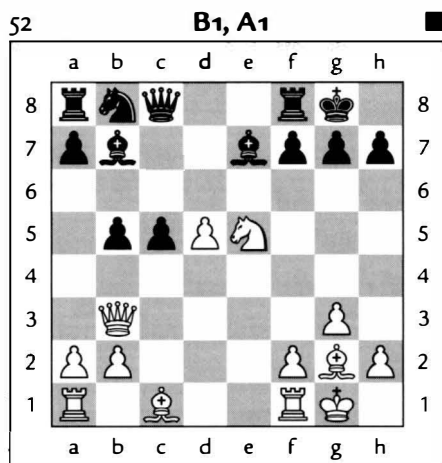
1-0.

Training material

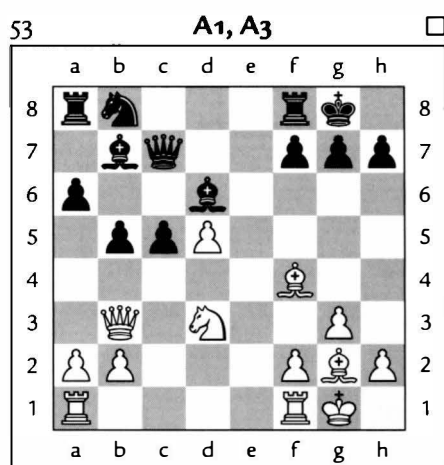
Note:

The three main methods of play with the passed pawn (see earlier) are marked before the move or diagram with **A1** to **A3**; the positional sacrifice of the passed pawn is marked **A4**; and the three methods of play against the passed pawn are marked **B1** to **B3**.

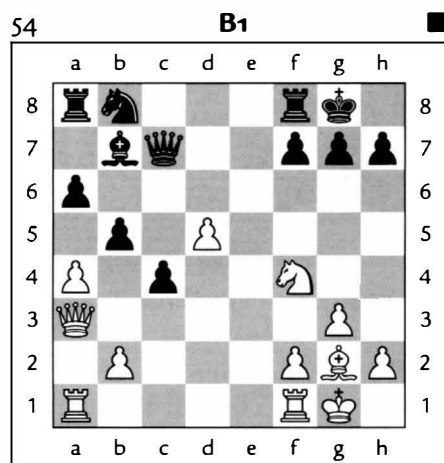
Aaron Nimzowitsch – Fritz Sämisch
Copenhagen 1923



15. ... ♙d6 16. ♙f4! ♜c7 [16. ... g5 17. ♖xg5 ♙xg5 20. ... ♜g7 21. ♜c3+ ♜g8 22. ♙h3] 21. ♜h1 ♜g1 (Nimzowitsch). 17. ♖d3! a6 [17. ... c4 18. ♙xg5 ♜xg5 19. ♜xg5 ♙a6 20. ♜c5+- (Nimzowitsch)].



18. a4!! c4 19. ♜a3 ♙xg4 20. ♖xg4

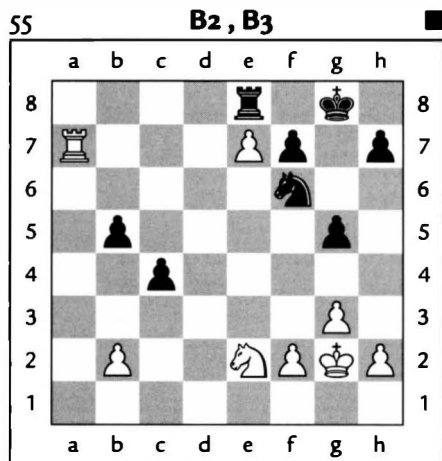


20. ... ♖d7 21. axb5 axb5

A2

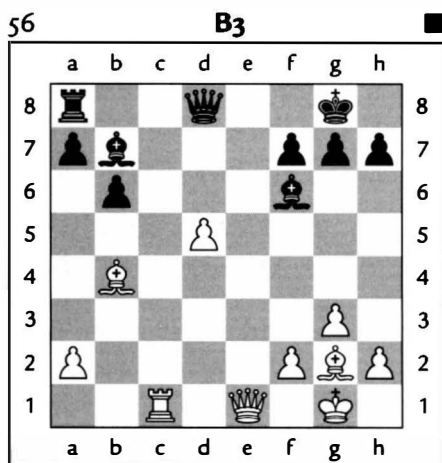
22. ♜e7 22. ♜b4 ♜b6 23. ♜xa8 ♜xa8 24. ♖e2 ♖c5 ♖d3. 22. ... ♜d8 22. ... ♜ae8 23. ♜b4 ♜b6 24. ♜a5 (Nimzowitsch). 23. d6 ♙xg2 24. ♙xg2 ♖f6 ≤ 24. ... ♜xa1 25. ♜xa1 ♜e8 26. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 27. ♖d5! ♖c5 28. ♖e7+ ♖f8 29. ♖c6 ♜c8 30. ♜a7± ♖c7. 25. ♜fd1 ♜xa1 26. ♜xa1 ♜xe7 ≤ 26. ... ♜b6 27. ♜c7!; ≤ 26. ... ♜e8 27. ♜c7! ♜xc7 28. dxc7 ♜c8 29. ♜d1!. 27. dxe7 ♜e8 28. ♜a7 g5

B3
[$\Delta 28. \dots b4!?$] 29. Qe2



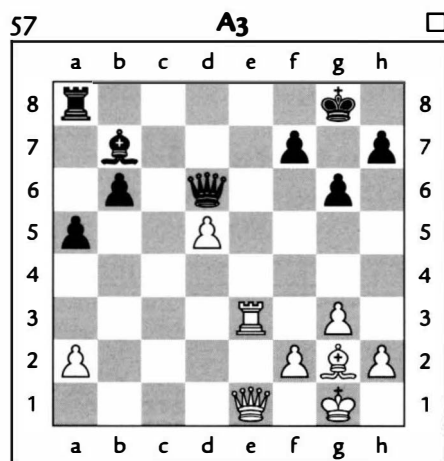
29. ... Qd5? [$\Delta 29. \dots b4 \pm$] 30. Qd4 [$\Delta 30. \text{Qc3} \pm$] 30. ... Qxe7? [$\Delta 30. \dots b4$] 31. Qxb5 Qc6 32. Qd6! Qxa7 [32. ... Bb8 33. Rxf7 Bxb2 34. Qxc4 Bc2 35. $\text{Qd6} \pm$] 33. Qxe8 Qb5 34. Qf6+ Qg7 35. $\text{Qd5} \pm$.

Artur Yusupov – Vladimir Tukmakov
Frunze 1979

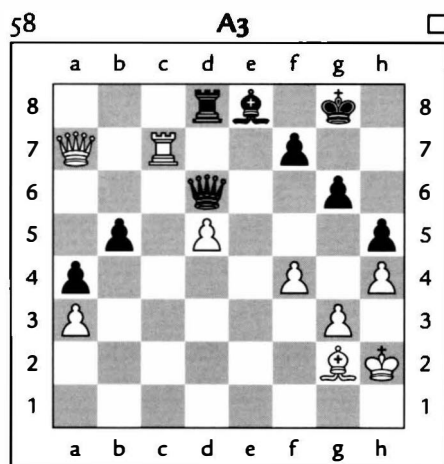


19. ... $a5$ [19. ... Bc8 20. Rxc8 Wxc8 21. Qh3! Qd8 22. $d6 \pm$ (Makarychev); 19. ... Wd7] 20.

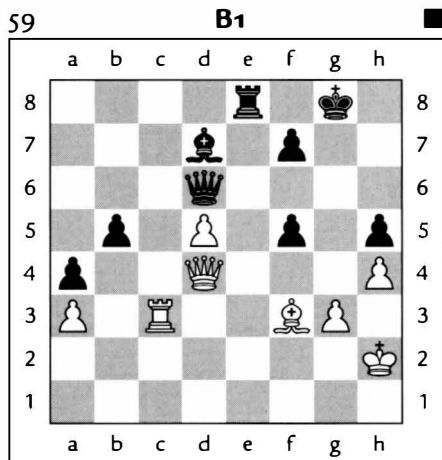
Qc3 [20. Qa3?! $b5! \neq$ (Makarychev)] 20. ... Qxc3 21. Rxc3 Wd6 22. Bc3! $g6$ [22. ... Qf8? 23. Wb1! Δ Wh7 ; Bb3 (Makarychev)]



23. $h4!$ $h5$ 24. Wb1 [ΔBb3] 24. ... Qa6 25. Qh2 Bd8 26. $f4$ Qc8 27. Bb3 Qf5 28. Wb2 Bb8 29. Wd4 $b5$ 30. Bc3 Qd7 [30. ... Wb6 31. Qe5 (Makarychev)] 31. Wa7 $a4$ 32. Bc7 Bd8 33. $a3$ Qe8



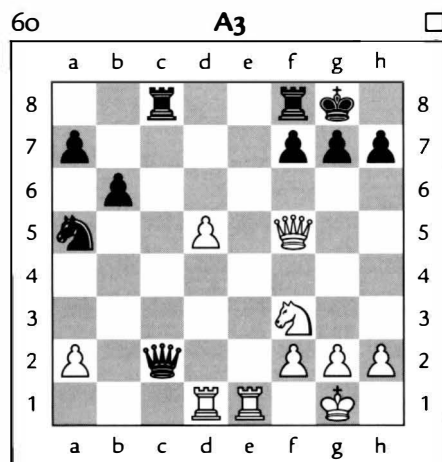
34. $f5!$ $gxf5$ [34. ... Bd7 35. Rxd7 Qxd7 (35. ... Wxd7 36. $\text{Qe3} \pm$) 36. $f6! \pm$ $g5?$ 37. Qe4! Δ 38. Wa8 Wf8 39. Qh7] 35. Bc3! Qd7? [35. ... $f4$ 36. $\text{Wd4} \pm$; 35. ... Wf6] 36. Wd4 Bc8 37. Qf3



37. ... ♖e5? [37. ... ♜c8!] 38. ♜×e5 ♜×e5

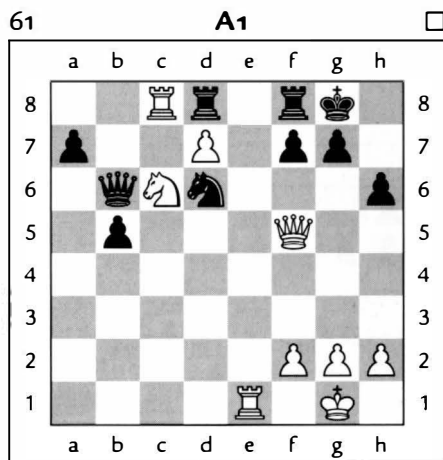
A1
39. ♜c7 ♜e8 40. d6 ♜e3 41. ♜d5! ♜g7 [41. ... ♜d3 42. d7 +-] 42. d7 ♜×d7 43. ♜×d7 ♜d3 44. ♜c6! +-.

Boris Spassky – Tigran Petrosian
Moscow (wch5) 1969



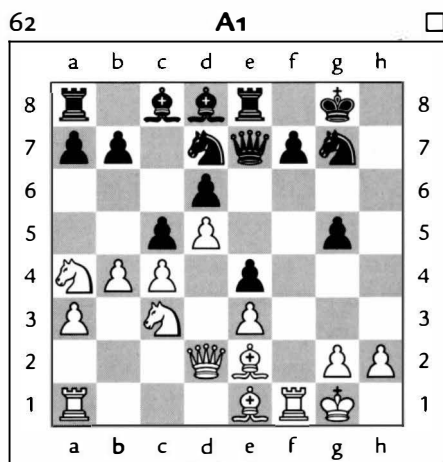
20. ♜f4! [20. ♜×c2 ♜×c2 21. ♜e7! ±] 20. ... ♜×a2 21. d6! ♜cd8 22. d7 ♜c4 23. ♜f5 h6 [23. ... ♜c6 24. ♜e5 ♜e6 25. ♜c2]

A2
24. ♜c1 ♜a6 25. ♜c7 b5 26. ♜d4 [26. ♜e8! Δ ♜e5 +-] 26. ... ♜b6 [26. ... ♜d6 27. ♜×b5 ♜d2 28. ♜f1 ♜b3!] 27. ♜c8! +- ♜b7 [27. ... b4 28. ♜e8 ♜×d4 29. ♜×f8+ ♜×f8 30. ♜×f8+ ♜×f8 31. ♜c5+!! +-; 27. ... g6 28. ♜×d8 ♜×d8 29. ♜×b5 +-; 27. ... ♜×d4 28. ♜×d8 ♜×d8 29. ♜e8+ +-] 28. ♜c6 ♜d6

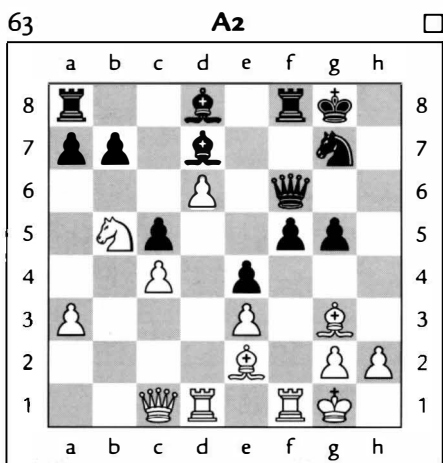


29. ♜×d8!! ♜×f5 30. ♜c6 1-o.

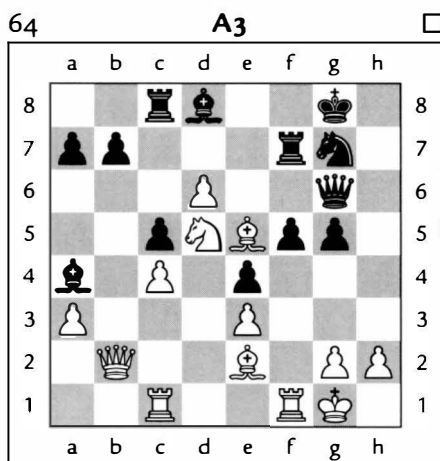
Boris Spassky – Paul Keres
Riga (cqf3) 1965



24. $b \times c5$ $\text{Q} \times c5$ 25. $\text{Q} \times c5$ $d \times c5$ 26. $d6!$ $\text{W}e6$
 27. $\text{B}d1$ $\text{Q}d7$ 28. $\text{Q}g3$ $f5$ [28. ... $\text{Q}f5$ 29. $\text{Q}g4!$
 $\text{W}g6$ 30. $\text{B}f2 \pm$ (30. $\text{Q}d5$ $\text{Q} \times g3$ 31. $\text{Q} \times d7$ $\text{Q} \times f1$
 32. $\text{B} \times f1$ $\text{B}f8$ 33. $\text{Q}e7+$ $\text{Q} \times e7$ 34. $d \times e7 \pm$)
 Δ 30. ... $\text{Q}e6$ 31. $\text{Q} \times f5$ $\text{Q} \times f5$ 32. $\text{W}d5+-$] 29.
 $\text{Q}b5$ [29. $\text{Q}d5$ $\text{Q}c6$ Δ $\text{Q}d5$] 29. ... $\text{B}f8$ [$\leq$ 29.
 ... $\text{Q} \times b5$ 30. $c \times b5$ Δ $\text{W}c2$, $\text{Q}c4$; 29. ... $a6$
 30. $\text{Q}c7$ $\text{Q} \times c7$ 31. $d \times c7$ $\text{Q}a4$ (31. ... $\text{Q}c6$
 32. $\text{W}a5+-$) 32. $\text{B}b1$ $\text{Q}c6 \pm$ (32. ... $\text{W}c6$ 33.
 $\text{W}d5+-$)] 30. $\text{W}c1$ [30. $\text{Q}c7$ $\text{Q} \times c7$ 31. $d \times c7$
 $\text{Q}c6 \times c7$] 30. ... $\text{W}f6$

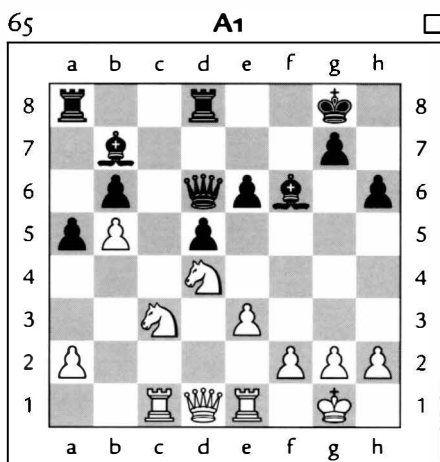


31. $\text{Q}c7$ $\text{B}c8$ [31. ... $\text{Q} \times c7!$? 32. $d \times c7$ $\text{Q}c6$ 33.
 $\text{B}d6$ $\text{W}f7$ (33. ... $\text{W}e7$ 34. $\text{B}f1 \uparrow$; 34. $\text{B}g6!$?)
 34. $\text{B}h6 \rightarrow$] 32. $\text{Q}d5$ $\text{W}e6$ 33. $\text{W}b2$ $\text{Q}a4$ [33.
 ... $\text{Q}c6!$? Δ 34. $\text{Q}e5$ (34. $\text{B}d2!$? $\uparrow$) $\text{Q}e8$ 35.
 $\text{Q}h5$ (35. $g4!$? $\uparrow$) 35. ... $\text{Q} \times d6$ 36. $\text{Q}h8$ $\text{W}h6!$ ∞
 (36. ... $\text{W}d7?$ 37. $\text{Q}b6!$ $a \times b6$ 38. $\text{B} \times d6$)] 34.
 $\text{B}c1$ [34. $\text{B}d2!$? Δ $\text{Q}a5$ 35. $\text{Q}e7+$] 34. ... $\text{B}f7$
 35. $\text{Q}e5$ $\text{W}g6$ [35. ... $\text{Q}e8?$ 36. $\text{Q}h5$; Δ 35.
 ... $\text{Q}c6 \pm$ 36. $g4!$? $f \times g4$ 37. $\text{B} \times f7$ $\text{Q} \times f7$ 38.
 $\text{B}f1+ \rightarrow$]



36. $g4!$ $\text{Q}c6$ 37. $g \times f5$ $\text{Q} \times f5$ 38. $\text{Q}g4$ $\text{Q}d7$ [38.
 ... $\text{Q} \times d5$ 39. $c \times d5$ Δ $d7$; $\text{W}f2+-$ (Euwe)] 39.
 $\text{W} \times b7!$ $\text{Q}e6$ [Δ 39. ... $\text{Q} \times d6$ 40. $\text{B} \times f7!$ $\text{Q} \times b7$
 41. $\text{B} \times d7+-$ (Euwe); 39. ... $\text{Q} \times e3$ 40. $\text{W} \times d7!$
 (40. $\text{Q} \times d7+-$) 40. ... $\text{B} \times d7$ 41. $\text{Q} \times d7$ $\text{B}a8$
 42. $\text{Q}f6+-$ (Polugaevsky)] 40. $\text{W}b1$ $\text{Q} \times d6$
 41. $\text{Q} \times e6$ $\text{W} \times e6$ 42. $\text{Q} \times d6$ $\text{W} \times d6$ 43. $\text{W} \times e4$
 $\text{B}b8$ 44. $\text{B} \times f7$ $\text{Q} \times f7$ 45. $\text{W}h7+$ $\text{Q}e8$ 46. $\text{B}f1$
 $\text{W}e6$ 47. $h3!$ $\text{B}c8$ 48. $\text{W}g7$ $\text{Q}e7$ 49. $\text{B}f5$ $\text{Q}d6$
 50. $\text{B}f6$ [50. $\text{B}f6$ $\text{W}e5$ 51. $\text{B}f8+-$] 1-o.

Viktor Korchnoi – Boris Spassky
Belgrade (cf7) 1977

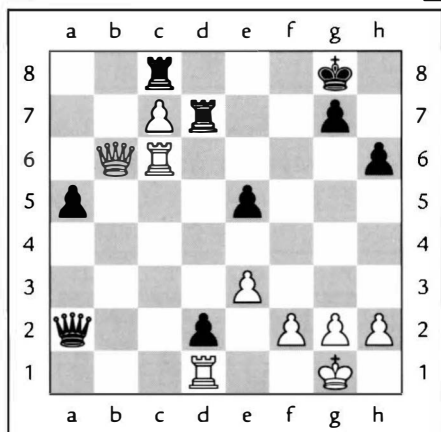


20. Qc6! Rxc6 21. bxc6 Rxc3 [21. ... Wxc6
22. Qe4 Wd7 23. Qxf6+ gxf6 24. Wd4+ ; Δ 21.
... Wb4 A) 22. Qa4 Ra6 23. Wd3 (23. $\text{e4!?$)
b5 24. c7 Rc8 25. Qc5 Rc6 26. Qd7 Rc3 ; B)
22. Qe2 Rac8 23. Qd4+ (23. Qf4 Rd6) Δ 23.
... Rd6 24. a3!] 22. Rxc3 Rac8 23. Wc2

B3

23. ... e5 24. c7 Rd7 25. Rc1 d4 26. Rc6 Wd5
27. Wb1 d3 28. Wxb6 d2 29. Rd1 Wxa2

66

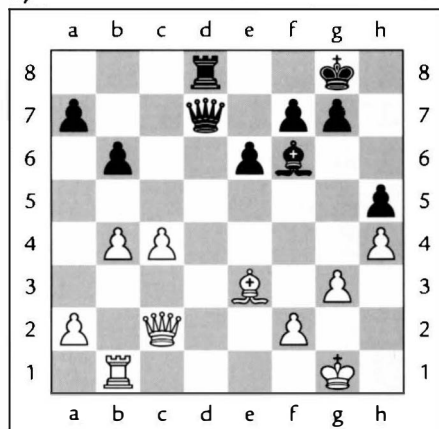


30. h3!! [30. Wb7 Wa4 31. Wxc8+ Qh7 32.
 Wh8+ Qxh8 33. c8W+ Qh7 34. Rxd2 (34.
 Rc2 Wa1!-+) 34. ... Wd1+ 35. Rxd1 $\text{Rxd1\#}$]
30. ... Wa4 31. Rxd2 Rxd2 32. Wb7 Rdd8
[32. ... Rxc7 33. Rxc7 Wa1+ 34. Qh2 e4 35.
 Rc8+ Qh7 36. Wxe4+ g6 37. Rc7+ +-] 33.
 cxd8W+ Rxd8 34. Rc7 Wa1+ 35. Qh2 e4
36. Wxe4 Wf6 37. f4+- Wf8 38. Ra7 Wc5
39. Wb7 Wc3 40. We7 Rf8 41. e4 Wd4
42. f5 h5 43. Rxa5 Wd2 44. We5 Wg5 45.
 Ra6 Rf7 46. Rg6 Wd8 47. f6 h4 48. fxg7
1-0

Yuri Razuvaev – Artur Yusupov
Minsk 1979

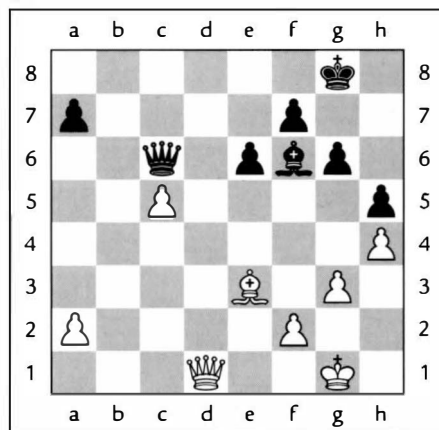
67

B1



24. ... Wc6 25. c5 bxc5 26. bxc5 [26. b5
 Wf3 27. Wxc5 Rxh4! 28. gxh4 Wg4+ 29. Qf1
 Rd1+ 30. Rxd1 Wxd1+ 31. Qg2 Wg4+= ; 26.
 Wxc5 We4=] 26. ... g6 27. Rd1 Rxd1+ 28.
 Wxd1

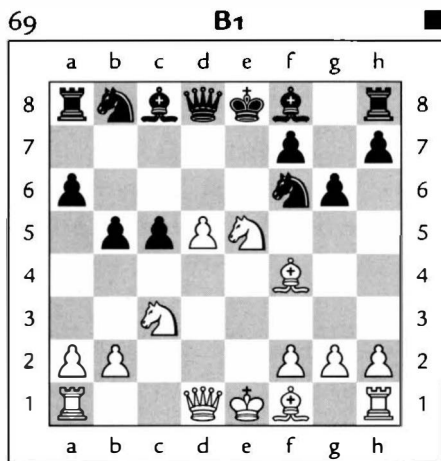
68



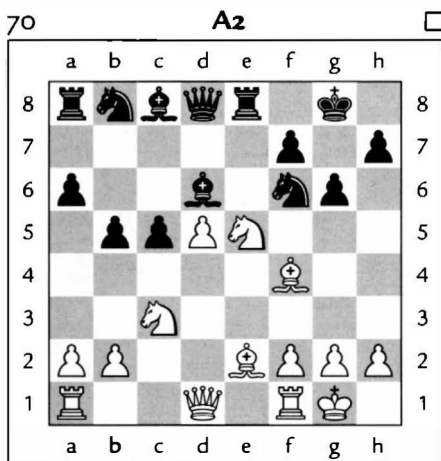
28. ... Qf8 29. Wb3 Re5 30. Wa3a6 31. Wb4
 Rc7! = 32. a4 Qe8 33. Wd4 e5 34. Wc4 Qe7
35. Rg5+ Qf8 36. Qf1 Rd6 37. Rh6+ Qe8
38. Re3 Rc7 39. Qe2 Qe7 40. Rg5+ Qe8
41. g4 hxg4 42. Wxg4 Ra5 43. Wc4 $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Artur Yusupov – Gyula Sax

Linares 1983



10. ... ♔d6! [10. ... ♔g7 11. ♕e2 b4 12. ♖a4 ♖x d5 13. ♔g3±] 11. ♕e2 o-o [11. ... ♜c7?! 12. ♔g3! ♔x e5? 13. d6±] 12. o-o ♖e8



13. $\mathfrak{d}c6$ $\mathfrak{d} \times c6$ 14. $\mathfrak{d} \times d6$ $\mathfrak{W} \times d6$ [14. ... $\mathfrak{d}d4$? 15. $\mathfrak{d} \times c5$ $\mathfrak{d} \times e2 +$ 16. $\mathfrak{d} \times e2$ $\mathfrak{W} \times d5$ 17. $\mathfrak{W} \times d5$ $\mathfrak{d} \times d5$ 18. $\mathfrak{d}c3$ $\mathfrak{d} \times c3$ 19. $b \times c3 \pm$ 15. $d \times c6$ $\mathfrak{W} \times d1$ 16. $\mathfrak{d} \times d1$ [16. $\mathfrak{W} \times d1$? $b4 - +$] 16. ... $\mathfrak{d}e6$ 17. $\mathfrak{d}f3$

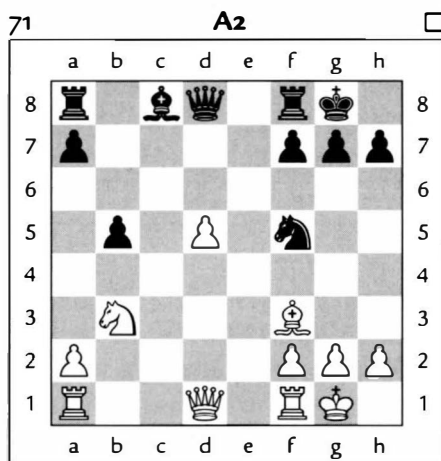
B2

17. ... $\Xi a c 8$ 18. $h 3 ! \pm [18. \Xi f c 1 c 4 ! \infty]$ 18. ...
 $\clubsuit f 8$ 19. $\Xi f c 1 \clubsuit e 7 [19. \dots c 4 20. b 4 ! \Delta a 4]$
20. $a 4 ! [20. \heartsuit e 2 \clubsuit d 6 21. \heartsuit f 4 g 5 ! \infty]$ 20. ...
 $b 4 21. \heartsuit e 2 \heartsuit d 5 [21. \dots \clubsuit d 6 22. \Xi d 1+ \heartsuit d 5$
23. $\heartsuit f 4 \Xi e 5 24. \heartsuit \times d 5 \heartsuit \times d 5 25. \Xi d 2 \clubsuit \times c 6$
26. $\Xi \times d 5 \Xi \times d 5 27. \Xi d 1 \Xi c d 8 28. b 3 =]$ 22.
 $\heartsuit \times d 5 \heartsuit \times d 5 23. \Xi \times c 5 \clubsuit d 6 24. \Xi c 2 \Xi \times c 6$
25. $\Xi d 2 \clubsuit c 7 ! 26. \Xi a d 1 [26. \heartsuit d 4 \Xi c 4 =]$ 26.
... $\heartsuit f 6 27. \heartsuit d 4 \Xi c 4 28. \heartsuit b 3 \Xi e 7 29. \heartsuit a 5$
 $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}.$

* * *

Artur Yusupov – Zoltán Ribli

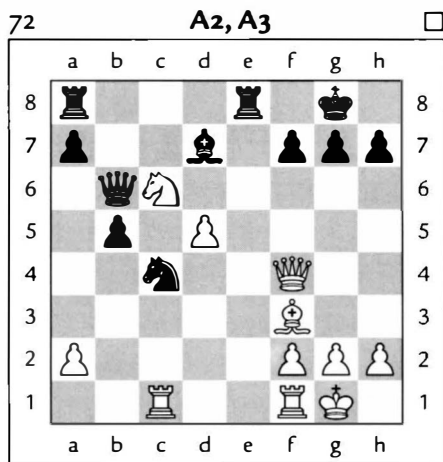
Montpellier (ct) 1985



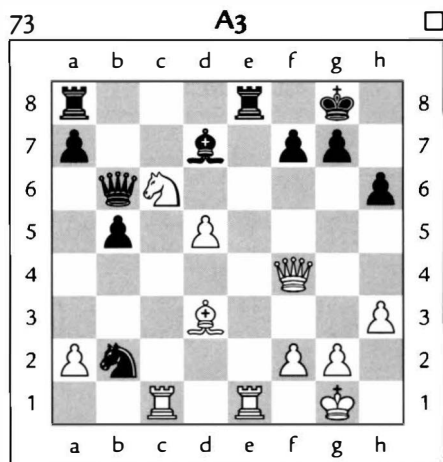
18. ♖c1!? [18. ♔d3 ♔d6!? =]

B1

18. ... **Qd6** [18. ... **Bb8?**; 18. ... **Wd6** 19. **Bc6**] 19. **Wd4!**? $\pm$ [Δ **Wf4**; 19. **Qd4** **Qd7** 20. **Qc6** **Wf6** =] 19. ... **Wb6?**! [19. ... **Wf6** $\pm$] 20. **Wf4!** [20. **Bc6** **Wxd4** 21. **Qxd4** **Bd8** 22. **Bc7** **Bd7** =] 20. ... **Qd7** 21. **Qd4** **Bfe8** [$\cap$ 21. ... **Bae8**] 22. **Qc6** **Qc4**

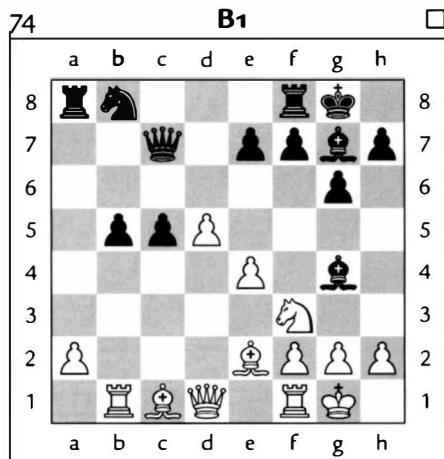


23. $\text{Bfe1} \pm [\times f7]$ 23. ... Qb2 24. Se4! Qc4
 25. h3 h6 26. Sd3 [ΔQe7] 26. ... Qb2?! [26.
 ... Sxc6 27. dxc6 Bxe1+ 28. Bxe1 Wxc6?!
 29. Se4 We8 30. Sh7+ +-]

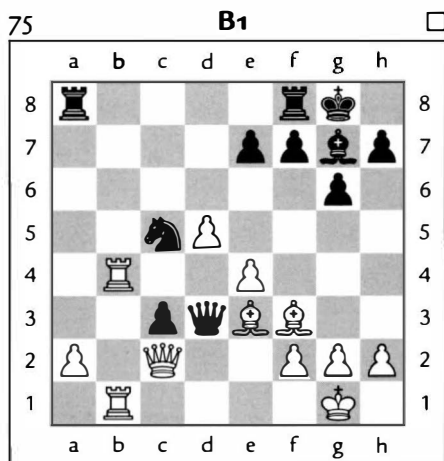


27. Sb1! Sxc6 28. dxc6+- Bxe1+ 29. Bxe1
 Wxc6 30. Se4 [30. Wb4! Qc4 (30. ... Wf6 31.
 We4+-) 31. Se4+-] 30. ... Wc3 [30. ... Wc4
 31. Wd2 Be8 32. Sh7+ Ch7 33. Bxe8+-
 31. Bc1 Qd3 32. Wxf7+! [32. Bxc3? Qxf4
 33. Bf3 Qe2+ 34. Chf1 Be8 35. Be3 Qd4 36.
 Sh7+ Chf8 $\mp$] 1-0

Artur Yusupov – Bachar Kouatly
 Toluca (izt) 1982



14. $\text{Wc2} \pm \text{c4}$ [14. ... b4 15. Bxb4 Bxa2 16.
 Wxa2 cxb4 17. $\text{Sd2} \pm$] 15. Bxb5 c3 16. Se3
 Sxf3 17. Sxf3 Wc4 18. Bb3 Qa6?! [18. ...
 Ba4 19. Bfb1 Qd7 20. a3 $\Delta \text{Bb4} \pm$] 19. Bfb1
 Qc5 20. Bb4 Wd3



21. $\text{Sd1!} \pm \text{Bfc8}$ [21. ... Wxc2 22. Sxc2 Bxa2
 23. Sxc5 Bxc2 24. Sxe7+-] 22. Sxc5 Wxc2
 23. Sxc2 Bxc5 24. Bb8+ Bc8 [24. ... Bxb8
 25. Bxb8+ Sf8 26. a4 Bc4 27. a5 Bd4 28. a6
 Bd2 29. a7 Bxc2 30. Bxf8+- (30. g3+-)]
 25. Bxc8+ Bxc8

B3

26. a4 ♖e5 27. ♜f1 f5? 28. e×f5 g×f5 29. ♜×f5 +– ♜c5 30. ♜c2 ♜g7 31. ♜d1 ♜f4 32. g3 ♜d2 33. ♜a1 ♜a5 34. ♜e2 h6 35. f4 ♜f7 36. ♜b1 ♜e8 37. ♜b5 ♜a7 38. ♜b6 ♜a5 39. ♜b3 h5 40. ♜h6 1–0.

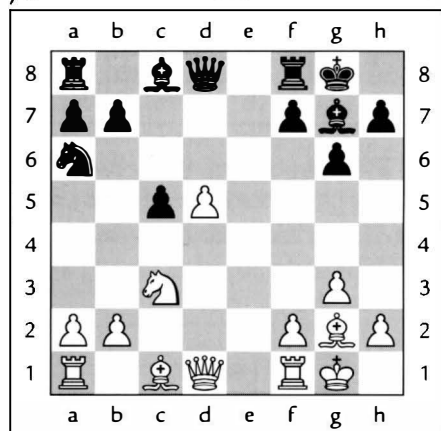
* * *

Artur Yusupov – Igor Stohl

Batumi 1999

76

B2



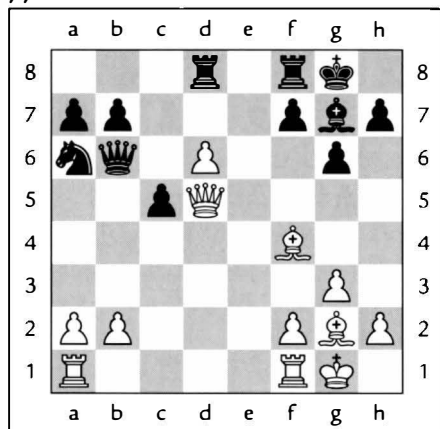
13. ... ♜b6! 14. d6 ♜e6 [14. ... ♜d8 15. ♜d5 ♜×d6 16. ♜g5 (16. ♜e1 ♜e6 17. ♜g5 ♜) 16. ... f6 17. ♜f4 ↑]

A2

15. ♜d5 ♜×d5 [15. ... ♜×d6?? 16. ♜f6+] 16. ♜×d5 ♜ad8 17. ♜f4 [17. ♜×b7 ♜×b7 18. ♜×b7 ♜×d6=]

77

B2



17. ... ♜c7! 18. ♜×b7 ♜×b7 19. ♜×b7 ♜e6 20. ♜ad1 ♜×f4 21. g×f4 ♜d4! = 22. b4 ♜×d6 23. b×c5 [23. b×c5 ♜×c5 24. ♜×d6 ♜×d6 25. ♜c1 ♜×f4 26. ♜c8 =] ½–½.

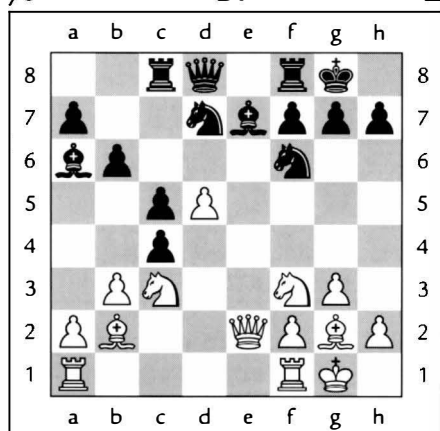
* * *

Artur Yusupov – Sergey Dolmatov

Leningrad 1977

78

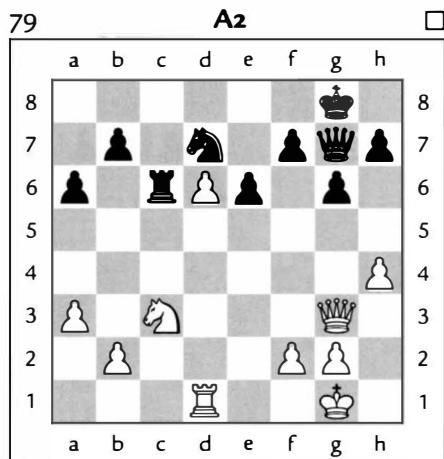
B1



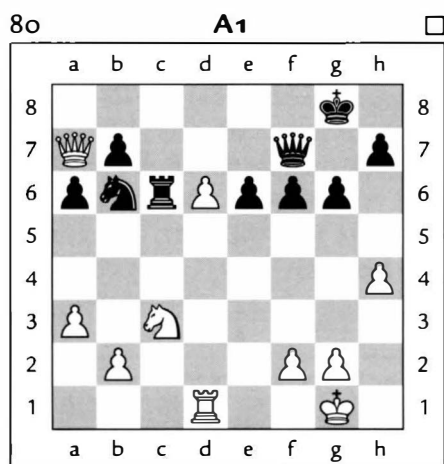
14. ... ♜e8! 15. ♜d2 [15. ♜e4!? c3 16. ♜×a6 c×b2 17. ♜ab1 ♜; 15. b×c4 ♜d6 16. ♜b5 ♜] 15. ... ♜d6 16. ♜×c4 ♜f6 ♜ 17. ♜fe1 ♜e8 18. ♜e4 ♜×c4 19. b×c4 ♜×e4 20. ♜×e4 ♜×e4 21. ♜×e4 ♜×b2 22. ♜ad1 ♜d4 +.

* * *

Vladimir Kramnik – Artur Yusupov
Dortmund 1997



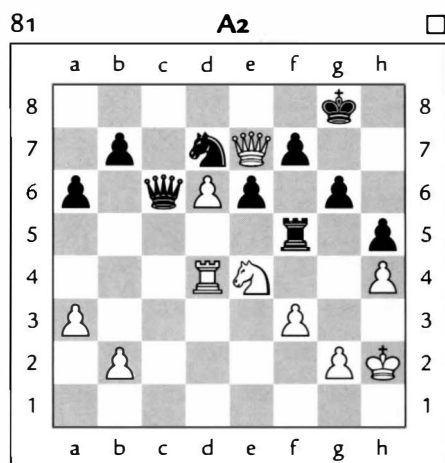
33. ♖g5! ♜f8 [33. ... f6 34. ♜e3! ♜f7 35. ♜a7+- (Δ♜b6?)



36. ♜xb6! ♜xb6 37. d7+-] 34. ♜e7+- ♜c8
34. ... ♜xe7 35. dxe7 ♜f6 36. ♜e4+-]

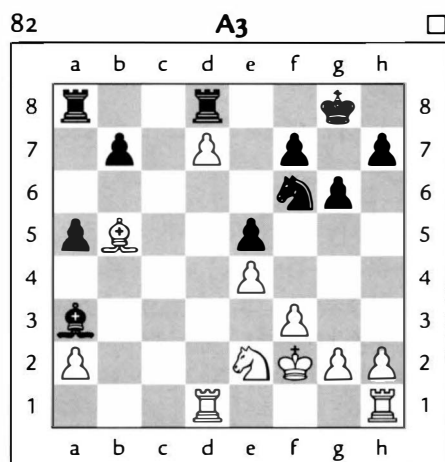
A3

35. ♜d4 [Δ♜e4, ♜d7!; ⊃35. h5!+-; ≤35. ♜e4 35. ... ♜c1≠] 35. ... ♜c5 36. ♜e4 ♜f5 [36. ... ♜c1+ 37. ♜h2 e5 38. ♜b4 ♜g7 39. ♜g5+-] 37. ♜h2 h5! [⊃37. ... ♜c6±] 38. f3 ♜c6



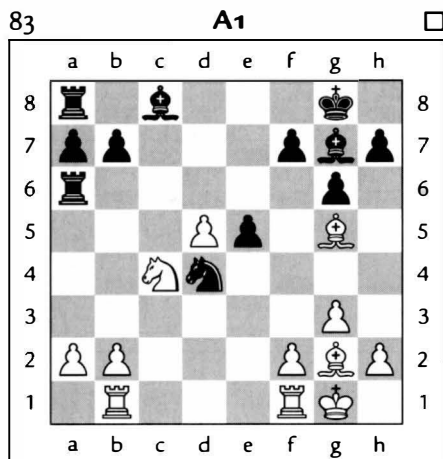
39. ♜d3! [Δ♜c3] 39. ... ♜g7 40. ♜c3 ♜b5
41. ♜c8+- [Δ♜d8-h8#] 41. ... ♜xb2 [41. ... ♜e5+ 42. ♜h1 ♜f4 43. ♜d8+-] 42. ♜xd7 [42. ♜d8 ♜h6 43. ♜c3! ♜f6 44. ♜f8+-] 42. ... ♜xf3 43. ♜d8 ♜e5+ 44. g3 1-0.

Vladimir Kramnik – John Nunn
Manila (ol) 1992



20. g4! h6 21. h4 a4 22. ♜d3 ♜b2! 23. g5 h×g5 24. h×g5 ♜h7 25. f4! ♜a5? [⊃25. ... e×f4 26. ♜d5! ♜f8 27. ♜×f4 ♜g7] 26. ♜d5 f6 27. ♜×h7! ♜×h7 28. g×f6 e×f4 29. e5 ♜h6 30. ♜×f4 ♜×e5 31. ♜×e5 ♜×d7 32. ♜×d7 ♜×e5 33. f7 1-0.

Vladimir Kramnik – Judit Polgár
Madrid 1993



18. d6! $\text{B}\times\text{a2}$ **19. Bxa1 Bxa1** **20. Bxa1 e6**
 [20. ... a6 21. Qb6 Bb8 22. $\text{Q}\times\text{c8}$ $\text{B}\times\text{c8}$ 23.
 $\text{d7}+-$] **21. Qa5 Bc8** **22. Qxb7 Bc2** **23. Bxa7**
h6 **24. e3 Bxb2** **25. h3 $\pm$ Bb6** **26. Ch2 g5**

A1

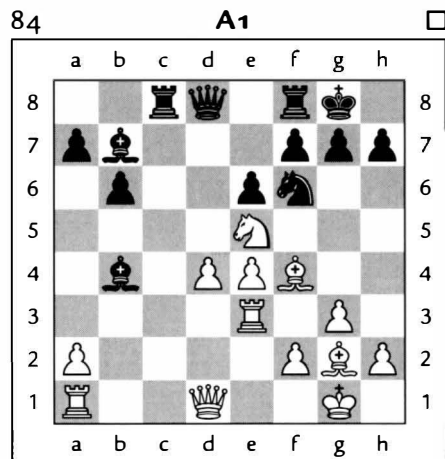
27. Ba8+ Ch7 **28. Be8 Cg6** **29. e4+** [29.
 $\text{B}\times\text{e6}+$ $\text{f}\times\text{e6}$ (29. ... $\text{Q}\times\text{e6}??$ 30. $\text{e}\times\text{b6}+-$)
 30. d7 $\text{e}\times\text{f6}$ 31. d8 B $\text{e}\times\text{d8}$ 32. $\text{Q}\times\text{d8} \pm$] **29.**
... Cf6 **30. g4 Ba6** **31. e3** [31. $\text{e}\times\text{d4!}$ $\text{e}\times\text{d4}$]

A1

[32. $\text{e}\times\text{f5}$ $\text{e}\times\text{f5}$ 33. $\text{g}\times\text{f5}$ $\text{C}\times\text{f5}$ 34. d7 $\text{e}\times\text{f6}$ 35.
 d8 B $\text{e}\times\text{d8} \pm$ 36. $\text{B}\times\text{d8} \pm$] **31. ... Bc6** **32. e4**
 Bc8 [32. ... Ba6 33. $\text{e}\times\text{d4!}$] **33. Bxc8 exc8**
34. Qc5 e6 **35. e2 Qb3** [35. ... $\text{e}\times\text{f8}$ 36. d7
 $\text{C}\times\text{e7}$ (36. ... $\text{e}\times\text{e7}$ 37. $\text{e}\times\text{a5}$) 37. $\text{e}\times\text{b4!}$ $\text{e}\times\text{d7}$ 38.
 $\text{Q}\times\text{d7}+$ $\text{C}\times\text{d7}$ 39. $\text{e}\times\text{f8}+-$] **36. Qxb3 exb3**
37. d7 Ce7 **38. e6 e6** [38. ... $\text{e}\times\text{e6}$ 39.
 $\text{e}\times\text{b4}+$ $\text{C}\times\text{d8}$ 40. $\text{e}\times\text{a5}+-$] **39. e5 Cd6** **40.**
 $\text{e}\times\text{b5}$ $\text{e}\times\text{c2}$ [40. ... $\text{C}\times\text{c5}$ 41. $\text{e}\times\text{e2}$] **41. d8 B +**
 $\text{e}\times\text{d8}$ **42. exd8 f5** **43. gxf5 exf5** **44. e6**
 $\text{C}\times\text{e6}$ **45. e7 h5** **46. e4+** [46. ... $\text{C}\times\text{d6}$ 47.
 $\text{e}\times\text{f7}$ h4 48. $\text{e}\times\text{f6}+-$] **1-o.**

* * *

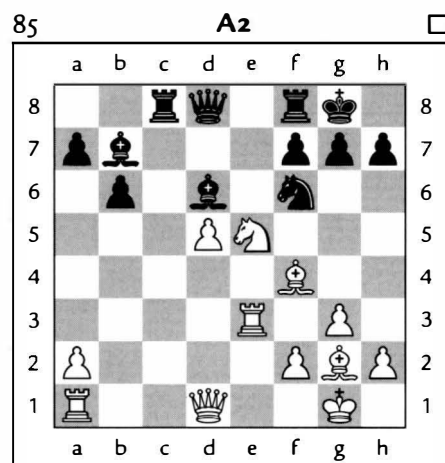
Vladimir Kramnik – Viswanathan Anand
Las Palmas 1996



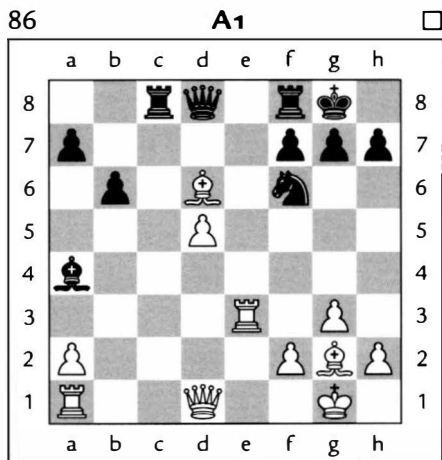
16. d5! $\text{e}\times\text{d5}$ [16. ... $\text{B}\times\text{e7}$ 17. d6 $\text{B}\times\text{d6}$ (17.
 ... $\text{e}\times\text{d6}$ 18. Qg6 $\text{h}\times\text{g6}$ 19. $\text{e}\times\text{d6} \pm$) 18. Qd3
 $\text{B}\times\text{e7}$ 19. $\text{Q}\times\text{b4}$ $\text{B}\times\text{b4}$ 20. $\text{e}\times\text{d6} \pm$ (Kramnik);
 16. ... $\text{e}\times\text{c5}?! 17. \text{Bd3}$ $\text{e}\times\text{a6}$ 18. Bd2 $\text{e}\times\text{b4}$ 19.
 $\text{Q}\times\text{c6}$ $\text{B}\times\text{c6}$ 20. $\text{d}\times\text{c6} \pm$ (Kramnik)] **17. exd5**

B1

17. ... e6 [17. ... $\text{e}\times\text{d5?}$ 18. $\text{Bd3} \pm \Delta\text{Bc5}$ 19.
 $\text{e}\times\text{e3}$ Bb5 20. a4 Ba5 21. $\text{Qc4}+-$; 17. ... $\text{Q}\times\text{d5}$
 18. Bd3 $\text{Q}\times\text{f4}$ 19. $\text{g}\times\text{f4!} \pm$; 17. ... $\text{e}\times\text{c5}$ 18. Bd3
 $\text{e}\times\text{a6}$ 19. $\text{Bd2} \pm$]



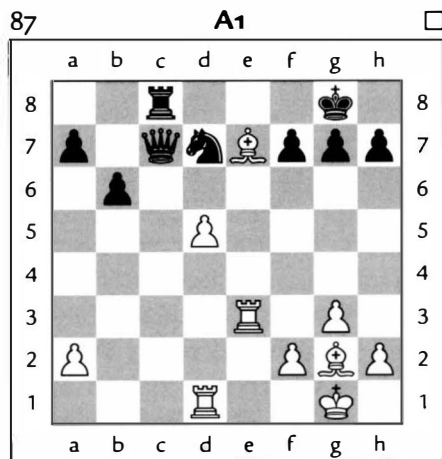
18. ♖c6! ♙×c6 [18. ... ♖d7 19. ♙×d6 ♖×d6
20. ♗e7+ +-] 19. ♙×d6 [19. d×c6 ♙×f4 20.
g×f4 ♖×d1+ 21. ♖×d1 ♖c7 22. ♙f3 ♖fc8 23.
♙d6 ♗f8 (Kramnik)] 19. ... ♙a4!? [19. ...
♖×d6 20. d×c6 ♖×d1+ 21. ♖×d1 ♖c7 22. f4±
(Psakhis) Δ ♙g2-f3, g3-g4-g5]



20. ♖xf8!? 20. ♜xa4!? ♜xd6 21. ♜xa7
 ♜xd5 22. ♜xd5 (22. ♜d1?? ♜xe3 23. ♜xd6
 ♜c1+; 22. ♜d3 ♜e5=) 22. ... ♜xd5 23. ♜xb6 ±
 (Kramnik)] 20. ... ♜xd1 21. ♜e7 ♜c7 22.
 ♜xd1

B1

22. ... ♖d7 [22. ... ♔c2 23. ♜ed3 ♔×a2 24. ♙×f6 g×f6 25. d6 a5 26. d7 ♜d8 27. ♜e1±]



23. ♠h3! h6 [⊔23. ... ♠c2?! 24. ♠de1 f5 25.
d6 ∞ (Ftáčnik)] 24. ♠f5! [24. d6 ♠c6] 24. ...
b5?! [⊔24. ... ♠b7 25. ♠b4 (25. ♠a3 ♠d8?!
26. ♠e7 ♠a6 ≠) 25. ... ♠d8 26. ♠e7 a5 27.
♠d6

B3

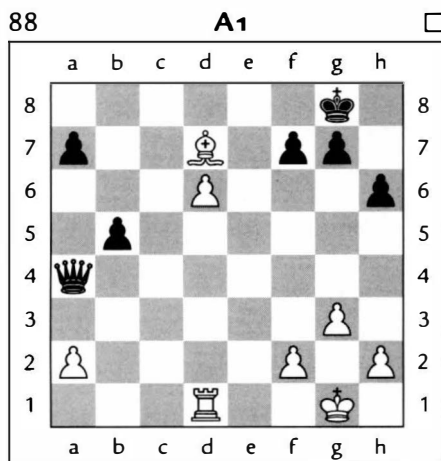
27. ... b5 (Kramnik) | 25. ♖b4 ± ♜d8

A2

26. ♖e7 ♜c4 [26. ... g6 27. ♙e6!? f×e6 28. d×e6 ♜c4 29. e×d7 ♜×b4 30. ♖e8+ ♜f8 31. ♜×f8+ ♜×f8 32. ♜d6+- (Kramnik)]

A1

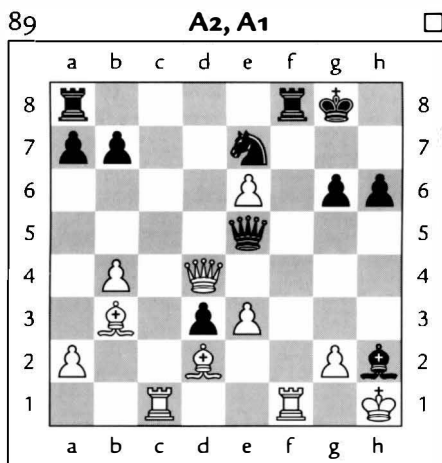
27. ♖×d7! [27. ♖e4 ♜c7□] 27. ... ♖×d7 28. ♜×d7 ♜×b4 29. d6 ♜a4



30. ♔d3 [↗30. ♖e1! A) 30. ... ♜×a2 31. ♙f5 g6 32. d7+; B) 30. ... ♜d4 31. ♙f5 g6 32. d7 ♙g7 33. ♙g4! (33. ♖e8 ♜d1+ 34. ♙g2 ♜d5+ 35. f3 ♜×a2+ 36. ♙h3+–) 33. ... f5 34. ♖d1+–; C) 30. ... ♜b4 31. ♖e8+ ♙h7 32. ♙f5+ g6 33. d7+–; D) 30. ... ♙h7 31. ♙f5+ g6 32. d7 ♜d4 33. ♙g4+–] **30. ... ♜e4** [30. ... ♜c4 31. ♙f5 ♜c1+ 32. ♙g2 ♜c6+ 33. ♙h3 ♜c5 34. g4+– (Kramnik); 30. ... ♜×a2 31. ♙f5 ♜a5 32. d7 ♜d8 33. ♖c3+–] **31. ♙×b5 ♜e1+ 32. ♙g2 ♜e4+ 33. ♙g1** [33. ♙f1!] **33. ... ♜e1+ 34. ♙g2 ♜e4+ 35. ♙f1! ♜h1+ 36. ♙e2 ♜e4+**

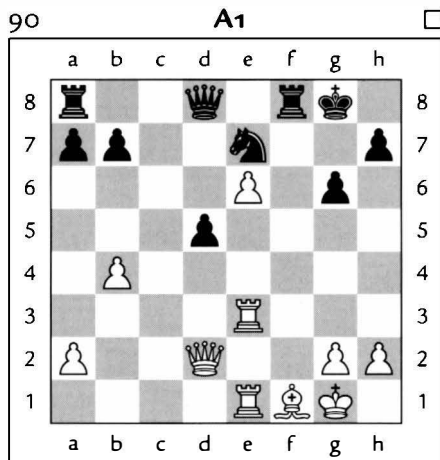
[36. ... ♖xh2 37. d7 ♖h5+ 38. f3 ♖e5+ (38. ... ♖h2+ (Stohl) 39. ♔d1 ♖g1+ 40. ♔c2 ♖f2+ 41. ♔b3+-) 39. ♔f1 ♖a1+ 40. ♔g2 ♖b2+ 41. ♔h3 (Kramnik)] 37. ♔f1 ♖h1+ 38. ♔e2 ♖e4+ 39. ♔d1! ♖g4+ [39. ... ♖b4 40. d7 ♖b1+ 41. ♔e2 ♖xa2+ 42. ♔f3+-; 39. ... ♖h1+ 40. ♔c2 ♖a1 (40. ... ♖xh2 41. d7 ♖xf2+ 42. ♔b3+-) 41. d7 ♖xa2+ 42. ♔d1 ♖b1+ 43. ♔e2+-] 40. f3 ♖h3 41. d7 [41. d7 ♖f1+ 42. ♔c2 ♖e2+ 43. ♔d2+-] 1-o.

Vladimir Kramnik – Judit Polgár
Linares 1997

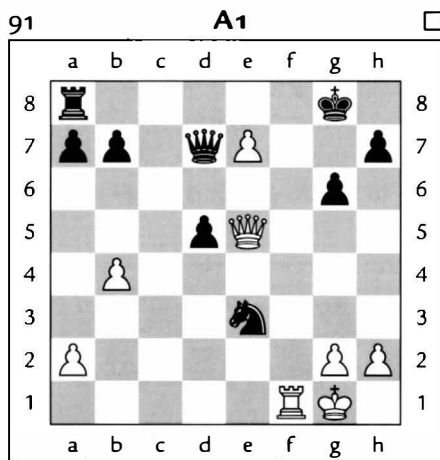


28. ♖f7! ♖xf7 [28. ... ♔f5 29. ♖xf5! ♖xf5 (29. ... gxf5 30. ♖d7+-) 30. e7+ ♔h7 31. ♖d7+-; 28. ... ♔a8 29. ♖cf1+- (29. ♔c3!?)] 29. exf7+ ♔h7 30. ♖xe5! ♔xe5 31. ♖c5 ♔d6 [31. ... ♔g7 32. ♖c7+-] 32. ♖c4 [Δ♔d4-d7] 32. ... ♔c6 [32. ... ♔f5 33. g4 ♔g3+ 34. ♔g2 ♔e2 35. ♖e4 ♖f8 36. ♔c4+-] 33. b5 ♔e5 34. ♔d4+- ♔f8 35. ♖e4 ♔g7 36. ♔b4 d2 37. ♖xe5 [37. ♔xd2 ♖f8 38. ♔b4 ♖xf7 39. ♔xf7 ♔xf7 40. ♖e7+-] 37. ... ♔d8 38. ♖e8 [38. ♖e8 d1♖+ 39. ♔xd1 ♖xd1+ 40. ♔h2] 1-o.

Vladimir Kramnik – Alexei Shirov
Tilburg 1997

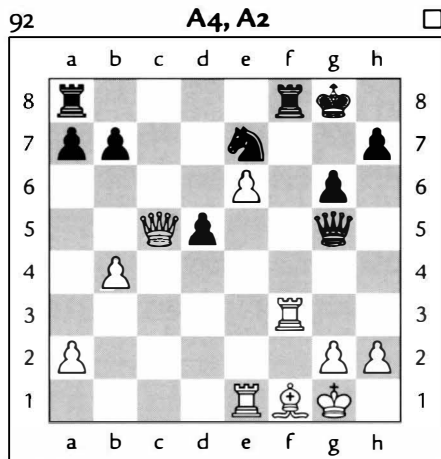


22. ♖d4!! [22. ♖h3? ♖b6+ Δ23. ♔h1 ♖xe6! 24. ♖he3 ♖f7] 22. ... ♖d6 [22. ... ♔f5? 23. ♖e5 ♔xe3? (23. ... ♖e7 24. ♔d3±; 23. ... ♖b6 24. e7! ♖f8 25. ♖xd5+ ♔g7 26. ♖e5+-) 24. e7 ♖f1+ 25. ♖xf1 ♖d7

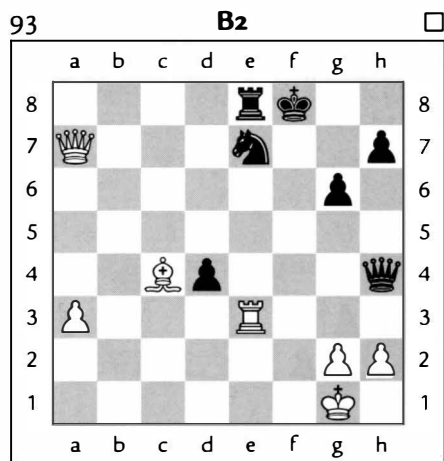


26. ♖f8+! ♖xf8 27. ♖h8+!! ♔f7 28. exf8♖+ ♔e6 29. ♖ff6#; 22. ... ♖b6 23. ♖c5! ♖xc5 24. bxc5± (Kramnik)] 23. ♖c5 ♖f4? [23. ... ♖xc5 24. bxc5 ♖f8 (24. ... b6!? 25. cxb6 axb6 26. a3±) 25. ♖b3 ♖c7 (25. ... b6 26. cxb6 axb6 27. ♖xb6 ♖xa2 28. ♖b7 ♔f8 29.

♖e3±; Huzman) 26. ♖eb1 b6 (26. ... ♖b8 27. ♖a6) 27. c×b6 a×b6 28. a3± (Winants) Δ♖b5-d7, a4 (×Δb6)] **24. ♖f3** [24. ♖×e7?? ♖f2+ 25. ♖h1 ♖×f1+ 26. ♖×f1 ♖×f1#] **24. ... ♖g5** [24. ... ♖d2 (Huzman) 25. ♖e2 ♖g5 26. ♖ef2± Δ♖f7]

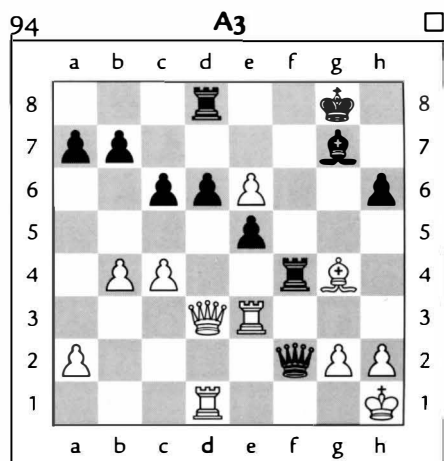


25. ♖f7! [25. ♖×f8+ ♖×f8 26. ♖×a7 ♖d2! 27. ♖e3 ♖×b4=] **25. ... ♖×f7** **26. e×f7+ ♖×f7** **27. ♖c7±** [×♖f7, ×Δa7] **27. ... ♖h4** [27. ... b6 28. g3! ± (Huzman)] **28. ♖e3!** [×♖g8] **28. ... ♖×b4?** [△28. ... ♖f8 29. g3 ♖g5 (29. ... ♖f6 30. ♖e2! ♖g8 31. ♖×e7 ♖f2+ 32. ♖h1 ♖e1+ 33. ♖g2 ♖f2+ 34. ♖h3+-; 29. ... ♖×b4 30. a3!+-; Yusupov) 30. ♖e2! → (Kramnik); 28. ... b6 29. ♖e5! A) 29. ... h5 30. ♖e6+ ♖f8 31. g3 (31. ♖f3+ ♖e8 32. ♖b5+-); B) 29. ... ♖d8 30. ♖h3+- ♖×b4 31. ♖×h7+ ♖e8 32. ♖b5+!+-] **29. a3 ♖h4** **30. ♖×b7 ♖e8** [30. ... ♖f8 31. ♖×a7 ♖g8 32. ♖×e7 d4 33. ♖c4+ ♖h8 34. g3+- (Kramnik); 30. ... ♖d8 31. ♖×a7 d4 32. ♖h3! ♖e4 33. ♖×h7+- (Ftáčník). **31. ♖×a7± d4** [31. ... ♖f8 32. g3 (32. ♖h3 ♖e1) 32. ... ♖f6 33. ♖e2± (Huzman); 31. ... h6 32. ♖d3± (Ftáčník)] **32. ♖c4+** [32. ♖f3+ ♖g7 33. ♖d7 ♖f8 34. g3 ♖e4± (Kramnik)] **32. ... ♖f8** [32. ... ♖g7 33. g3 ♖g5 (33. ... ♖f6 34. ♖e6 ♖g5 35. ♖×d4+±) 34. ♖×d4+±]



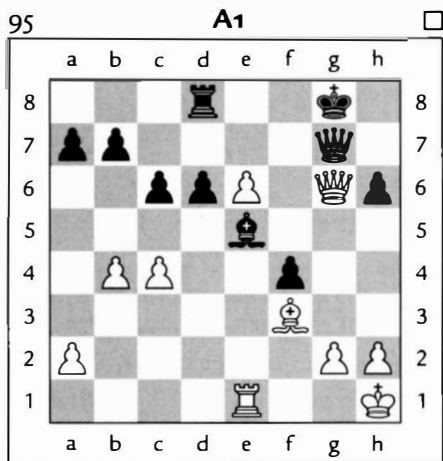
33. g3! [×Δd4; 33. ♖f3+ ♖g7 34. ♖f7+ ♖h6] **33. ... ♖g4** [33. ... ♖f6 34. ♖e6 ♖g7 (34. ... ♖f3 35. ♖×d4+-) 35. ♖b6!?+- (Kramnik)] **34. ♖e2 ♖c8** **35. ♖×d4+- ♖c1+** **36. ♖g2** [36. ... ♖c6+ 37. ♖f3 ♖c2+ 38. ♖e2+- (Kramnik)] **1-0.**

Vladimir Kramnik – Friso Nijboer
Wijk aan Zee 1998



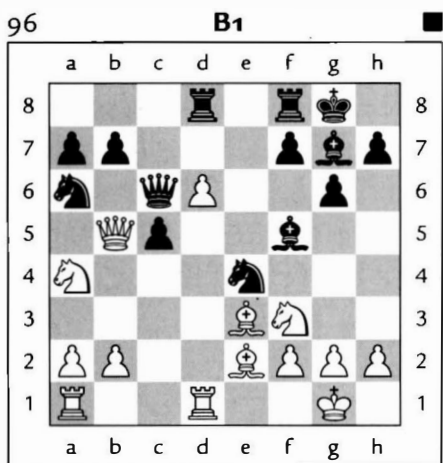
24. ♖f3! ♖h4 [24. ... ♖×f3 25. ♖×f3 ♖h4 26. b5!+- (Huzman)] **25. ♖×f4 e×f4** **26. ♖f3+- ♖e7** [26. ... a6 27. a4 ♖g5 28. b5!± ×c6] **27. ♖e1 ♖e5** [27. ... ♖f8 28. b5!±] **28. ♖g6+**

Wg7? [28. ... ♙g7 29. ♙e4 d5 30. cxd5 cxd5 31. ♙h7+ ♜f8 32. $\text{♙g6!?$ (32. $\text{♙f3!} \pm \Delta \text{♙h5}$) $\text{♜c8!} \neq$ (32. ... f3 33. $\text{♜e3! f} \times \text{g2+}$ 34. ♜g1 ♙d4 35. ♙xh6++-)]

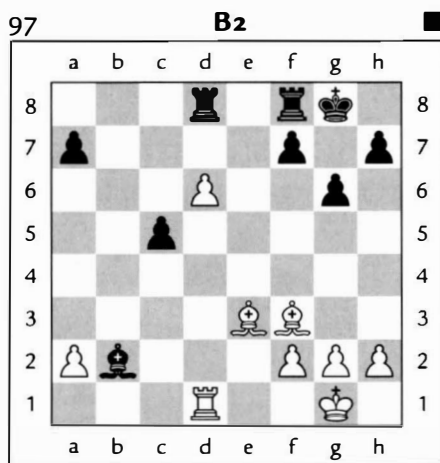


29. e7!+- 1-0.

Viswanathan Anand – Garry Kasparov
Frankfurt (rapid) 1999



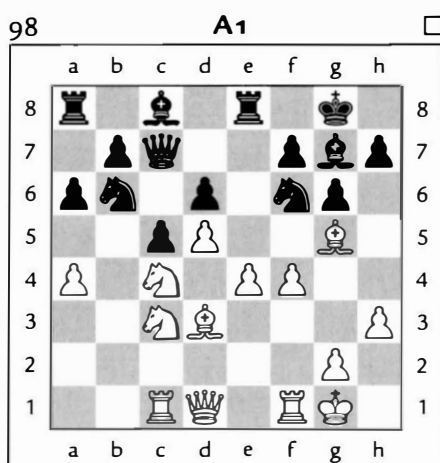
16. ... $\text{♙d7!} \mp$ 17. ♙xc6 ♙xc6 18. ♙xa6 [18. ♙c3 ♙xc3 19. bxc3 ♙xc3 20. ♙xa6 ♙xd1+-] 18. ... ♙xa4 19. ♙xb7 ♙xd1 20. ♙xe4 ♙xf3 21. ♙xf3 ♙xb2 22. ♜d1



22. ... ♙d4! 23. ♙xd4 cxd4 24. ♜xd4 ♜d7 25. h4 [25. ♙c6 ♜c8!+- ; 25. ♙g4 f5 26. ♙f3 ♜f6+-] 25. ... ♜fd8 26. ♜a4

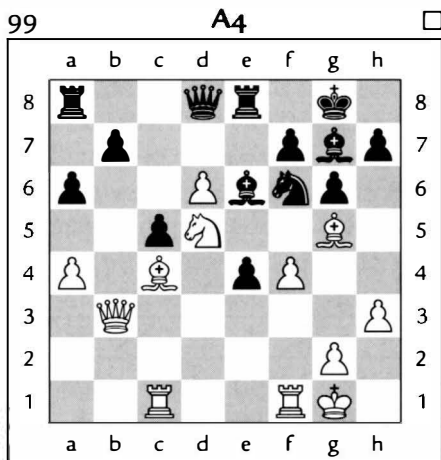
B2
26. ... ♜b8!+- [$\Delta \text{♜b6-d6}$] 0-1.

Alexander Beliavsky – Aleksa Striković
Čačak 1996

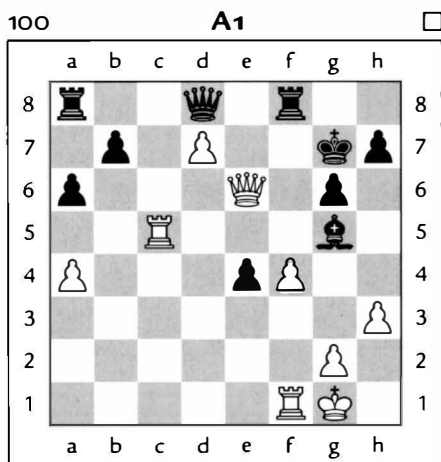


17. e5! ♜xc4 [17. ... ♙fxd5 18. ♜xd5 (18. $\text{♜xd6} \pm$) 18. ... ♜xd5 19. ♙e4 ♜b4 20. $\text{♜xd6} \pm$] 18. ♙xc4 dxe5 19. d6! ♜d8 20. ♜d5 e4 21. ♙b3! [21. ♜c7 (Beliavsky) 21. ...

♙d7 22. ♖×a8 ♜×a8 ♞; 21. d7 (Beliavsky) 21. ... ♙×d7 22. ♖×f6+ ♙×f6 23. ♙×f6 ♜×f6 24. ♜×d7 ♞e7 25. ♜d5 ♜d4+ ♞] 21. ... ♙e6



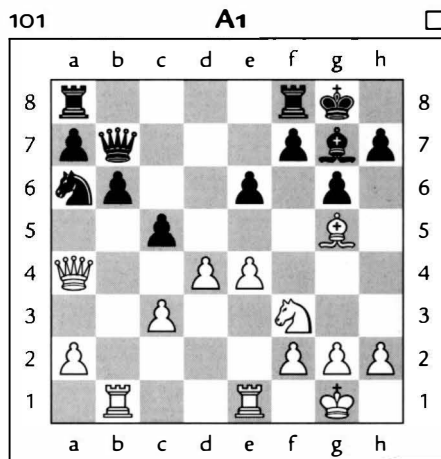
22. d7! ♙×d7 [22. ... ♞f8 23. ♖×f6+ ♙×f6 24. ♙×e6 ♜×e6 25. ♜×e6+ ♜g7 26. ♞×c5 ♙×g5



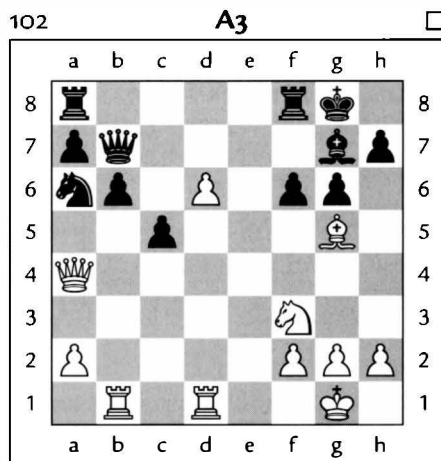
27. ♜×g5! ♞×f1+ 28. ♜×f1 ♜f8+ 29. ♜f6+ ♜×f6+ 30. ♜×f6+ ♜×f6 31. ♞c8+- (Beliavsky)] 23. ♞c8d1! ♙e6 [23. ... b5 24. a×b5 a×b5 25. ♖×f6+ ♙×f6 26. ♙×f7+ ♜g7 27. ♙×e8 ♜×e8 28. ♙×f6+ ♜×f6 29. ♜c3+ ♜f7 30. ♜×c5+-] 24. f5 [24. ♖×f6+! ♞×f6 25. ♜×b7 ♞b6 26. ♙×f7+! ♜f8 27. ♜×d7 ♙d4+

28. ♞×d4+- (Beliavsky)] 24. ... ♜×f5 25. ♞×f5 e3 26. ♖×f6+ ♞×f6 [26. ... ♙×f6 27. ♙×e6 ♙×e6 28. ♞×d8+ ♞×d8 29. ♙×f6 ♙×b3 30. ♙×d8+-] 27. ♞fd5!+- b5 28. ♞×d7 ♜e8 29. a×b5 a×b5 30. ♜×b5 e2 31. ♙×e2 1-o.

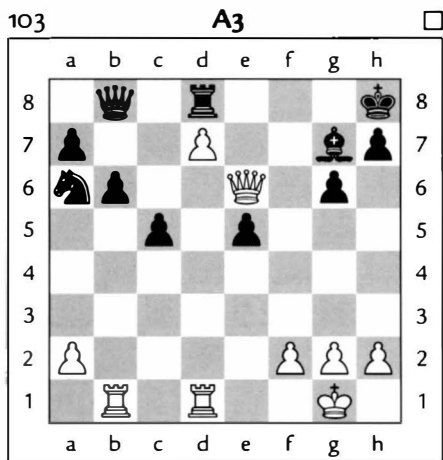
Garry Kasparov – Josef Příbyl
Skara 1980



16. d5! [16. ♞ed1 ♜f5! ↑] 16. ... ♙×c3 17. ♞ed1 e×d5 18. e×d5 ♙g7 [18. ... ♖c7 19. ♙e7 ♞fe8 20. ♜d7±; 18. ... ♖b8 19. ♜c4 (19. ♜h4 →) 19. ... ♙g7 20. ♜×c5±] 19. d6 f6

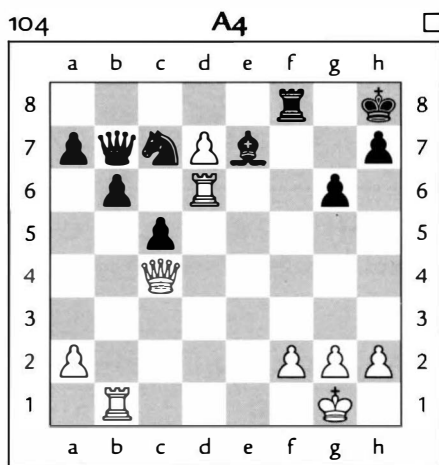


20. d7! [20. ♔f4 20. ... f×g5 [20. ... ♖b4 21. ♗b3+ ♕h8 22. ♜e5 f×e5 23. d8♙ ♖a×d8 24. ♖×d8 ♖×d8 25. ♔×d8 ±; 20. ... ♖ad8 21. ♗c4+ ♕h8 22. ♜e5! f×e5 23. ♔×d8 ♖×d8 24. ♗e6! ♗b8 (24. ... ♜c7 25. ♗e7 ♗b8 26. ♖b3 e4 27. ♖d6 ♔f8 28. ♗f6+ ♔g7 29. ♗f7; 24. ... ♗a8!? (Yusupov) 25. ♖b3 ♖b4 26. ♖h3 ♗c6 27. ♖d6 ±]



25. ♖b3! c4 26. ♖h3 ♜c5 27. ♗×g6 h6 28. ♖g3+-; 20. ... ♕h8 21. ♗c4 (21. ♔f4) 21. ... f×g5 - 20. ... f×g5] 21. ♗c4+ ♕h8 22. ♜×g5 ♔f6 □ [≤22. ... ♔d4 23. ♖×d4 c×d4 24. ♗×d4+ ♕g8 25. ♜e6 +-] 23. ♜e6 ♜c7 [23. ... ♖b4 24. ♗f4 ♗b8!? (Yusupov) (24. ... ♜d5 25. ♗d6; 24. ... ♖f7 (Yusupov) 25. ♜g5 ±; 24. ... ♜c6 25. ♜×f8 ♖×f8 26. d8♙ ♜×d8 27. ♖×d8 +-] 25. d8♙ (25. ♗f3 ♔d4 26. ♜×f8 ♗×f8 27. ♗×f8+ ♖×f8 28. ♖×d4

c×d4 29. ♖×b4 ♖d8 30. ♖×d4 ♕g7 ± ♔f6-e6) 25. ... ♗×f4 26. ♗×f8+ (26. ♗×a8 ♗×f2+ 27. ♕×f2 ♖×a8 28. ... ♖×f8 27. ♜×f4 ♔d4 28. ♜e6 ♔×f2+ 29. ♕f1 ♖e8 30. ♕×f2 ♖×e6 31. ♖d8+ ♕g7 32. ♖d7+ ±] 24. ♜×f8 ♖×f8 25. ♖d6 [25. ♗×c5 ♗×g2+ 26. ♕×g2 b×c5 27. ♖b7 ♜e6 28. ♖d6 ♜f4+ 29. ♕f1 ♔d8 30. ♖×a7 ±] 25. ... ♔e7 [25. ... ♗b8 26. ♖bd1 ♗d8 27. ♖c6 ± ♔g7 28. h4 ♕; 25. ... ♔d8 26. h4 ♗a6 27. ♗c3+ ♕g8 28. ♗c2 ± ♔×h4 29. ♖×g6+ +-]



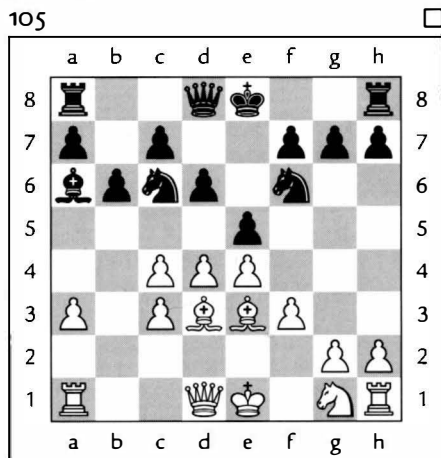
26. d8♙!! ♔×d8 [26. ... ♖×d8 27. ♖×d8+ ♔×d8 28. ♗f7 ♗d5 29. ♗×d5 ♜×d5 30. ♖d1+-] 27. ♗c3+ ♕g8 28. ♖d7 ♔f6 29. ♗c4+ ♕h8 30. ♗f4 ♗a6? [30. ... ♔g7 31. ♗×c7 ♗×c7 32. ♖×c7 ♔d4 33. ♖f1 ±] 31. ♗h6 1-o.

6 Double Attack

An attack on two or more pieces with one single move is called a *double attack*. A double attack is an important and effective tactical instrument. Often a double attack leads immediately to material gain, as the opponent finds it impossible to defend against all threats simultaneously. Moreover, it's very easy to overlook a double attack. Here are two examples from the games of world champions.

Fritz Sämisch – José Capablanca Karlsbad 1929

1. d4 ♘f6 2. c4 e6 3. ♖c3 ♗b4 4. a3 ♗xc3+ 5. bxc3 d6 6. f3 e5 7. e4 ♖c6 8. ♗e3 b6 9. ♗d3 ♗a6??



Capablanca overlooked that after

10. ♗a4,

attacking two minor pieces, the usual 10. ... ♖a5 is impossible because of the pin. He played

10. ... ♗b7

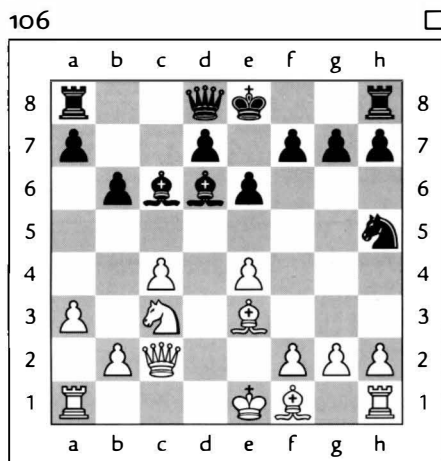
and after

11. d5

he lost a piece and, unsurprisingly, later on the game.

Larry Christiansen – Anatoly Karpov Wijk aan Zee 1993

1. d4 ♘f6 2. c4 e6 3. ♖f3 b6 4. a3 ♗a6 5. ♗c2 ♗b7 6. ♖c3 c5 7. e4 cxd4 8. ♖xd4 ♖c6 9. ♖xc6 ♗xc6 10. ♗f4 ♖h5 11. ♗e3 ♗d6??



With his last move Karpov developed his bishop to a square where it was unprotected. After

12. ♗d1!,

attacking the knight on h5 and the bishop on d6, he had to resign immediately. The queen's double attack took place from long range.

The double attack is particularly effective when the king is one of the attacked pieces. In the opening, the open position of the king can sometimes be exploited. The catas-

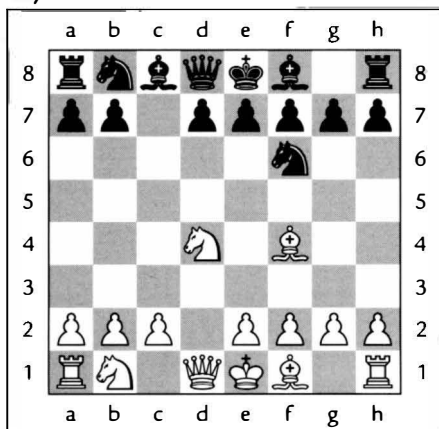
trophy in the next game demonstrates how easily an enemy minor piece can be lured to its doom.

Oscar García Vera – Roberto Grau

Rosario 1929

1. d4 ♘f6 2. ♘f3 c5 3. ♗f4 c×d4 4. ♘×d4??

107



Black's queen can give a check along the diagonal from a5. There followed

4. ... e5!

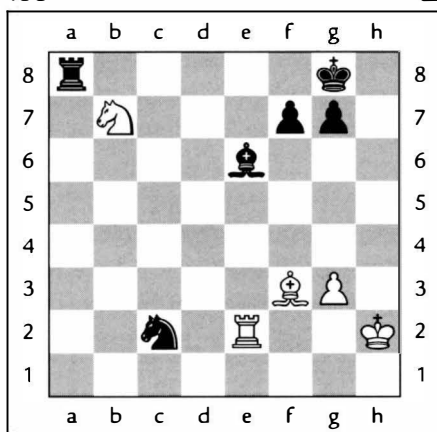
(a double attack or fork) and White loses a piece, as after 5. ♗×e5 he cannot escape the next double attack 5. ... ♔a5!+.

With its great power, the queen is, naturally, the piece most likely to execute a double attack, but the others can do so too.

Richard Réti – Alexander Alekhine

Baden-Baden 1925

108



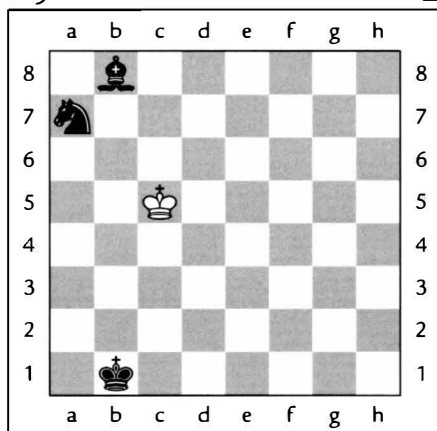
First – a knight fork:

42. ... ♘d4

and White resigned, because of 43. ♗f2 ♘×f3+ 44. ♗×f3 and there follows another double attack, this time by a bishop: 44. ... ♗d5.

Levenfish (exercise position)

109



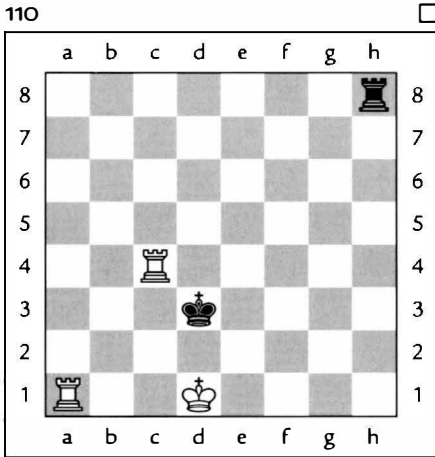
Even a king can attack more than one enemy piece at the same time.

1. ♔b6!

(threatening 2. ♖b7)

1. ... ♜c8+ 2. ♖b7 with a draw.

Ferdesi 1501



White must contend with two threats: mate on the back-rank and 1. ... ♜×c4. But with a combination, he can even win!

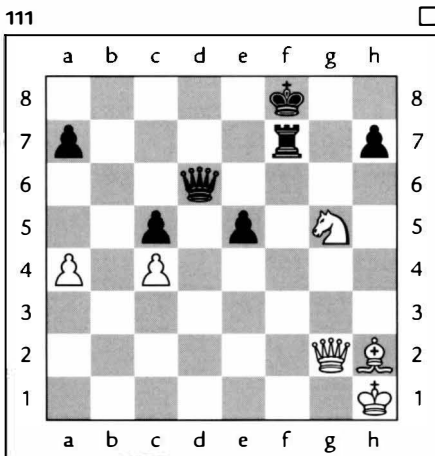
1. ♖h4! ♜×h4 2. ♖a3+ ♜e4 3. ♖a4+

and White wins the rook on h4.

This is one of the most famous combinations that features double attacks.

Tigran Petrosian – Vladimir Simagin

Moscow (m5) 1956



44. ♖a8+!

But not 44. ♜×f7? because of 44. ... ♜d1+ 45. ♖g1 ♜h5+ 46. ♜h2 ♜f3+ = with perpetual check.

44. ... ♜g7 45. ♖×e5+!

A bishop's double attack against both queen and king.

45. ... ♜×e5 46. ♜h8+! ♜×h8 47. ♜×f7+

And finally a knight fork.

1–0.

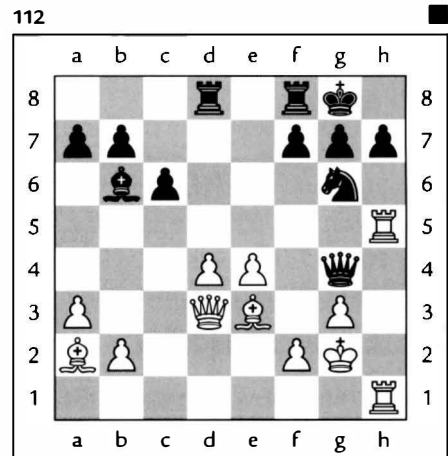
* * *

In the next game, we see how well the old masters used this tactical weapon.

Adolf Anderssen – Howard Staunton

London 1851

1. e4 e5 2. ♞f3 ♞c6 3. d4 e×d4 4. ♖c4 ♖c5 5. o–o d6 6. c3 ♞f6 7. c×d4 ♖b6 8. ♞c3 ♖g4 9. ♖e3 o–o 10. a3 ♜e7 11. ♜d3 ♖×f3 12. g×f3 ♜d7 13. ♜g2 ♞h5 14. ♞e2 ♞e7 15. ♞g3 ♞×g3 16. h×g3 d5 17. ♖a2 ♖ad8 18. ♖ad1 c6 19. ♖h1 ♞g6 20. ♖h5 d×e4 21. f×e4 ♜g4 22. ♖dh1

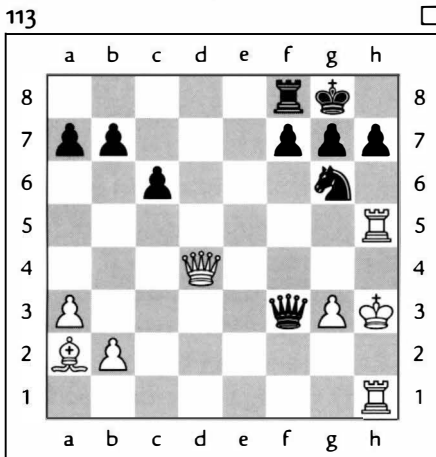


22. ... ♖×d4!

A powerful blow. White cannot take the rook because of the knight fork. For example: 23. ♙×d4? ♜f4+ 24. ♜f1 ♜×d3 25. ♖×h7 ♜d1+ 26. ♜g2 ♜e1+ 27. ♜f1 (or 27. ♖×e1 ♜×d4) ♜f3+ 28. ♜g2 ♜×h1+ 29. ♖×h1 ♜×d4 and Black wins.

23. ♜c3 ♖×e4

This move is even better than 23. ... ♜×e4+ 24. f3 ♜d3 25. ♙×d4 ♜e2+ 26. ♜h3 (26. ♜g1 ♖d8→) ♙×d4 27. ♜×d4 ♜×f3. (see analysis diagram 113)



(Double attack against both White's rooks.) 28. ♜d1! ♜f4+ 29. ♜h4 ♜g6+ and a repetition of moves.

24. ♖×h7

If 24. f3, then 24. ... ♜×h5! (24. ... ♜f4+ 25. ♙×f4 ♖e2+ 26. ♜f1 ♖f2+ 27. ♜e1 ♖×f3) 25. ♖×h5 ♖×e3 26. ♜c2 (or 26. ♜c4 ♜e5 27. ♜c2 g6) 26. ... ♖fe8 and Black has more than enough compensation for the queen.

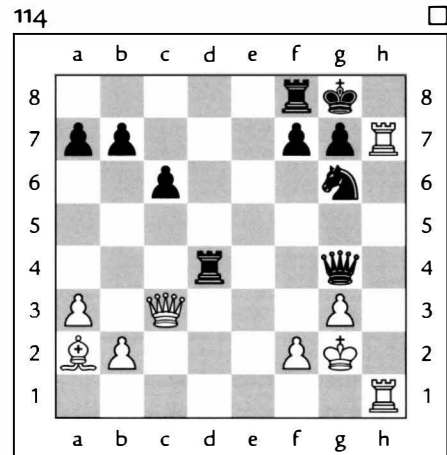
24. ... ♙d4 25. ♙×d4 ♖×d4?

But this hit is now a mistake. Staunton overlooks his opponent's double attack. The correct move was suggested by Leven-

fish: 25. ... ♜f4+! with the following lines:

A) 26. ♜g1 ♜d1+ (26. ... ♜e2+? 27. ♜f1 ♜×c3 28. ♖h8#) 27. ♜h2 ♜×d4 28. ♜×d4 ♖×d4 29. ♖h4 ♜e2+;

B) 26. ♜h2 ♜×h7 27. g×f4 ♖×f4 (Δ ♖d4, ♖f3) 28. ♙b1+ ♜g8 and in both cases Black has a huge advantage.

**26. ♖h4! ♜×h4+ 27. ♖×h4+–**

After this double attack on queen and rook, Black loses material and can no longer save the game.

27. ... ♜×h4 28. g×h4 ♖×h4 29. ♜g3

29. ♜e3+– would have been even better.

29. ... ♖h5 30. f4

(30. ♜e3!?)

30. ... ♖b5 31. b4 ♖d8 32. ♙c4 ♖d2+ 33. ♜g1 ♖d1+ 34. ♜f2 ♖f5

34. ... ♖h5 would have been more tenacious, but then follows 35. ♜e3 with the double threat of ♜×a7 and ♜e8+.

115

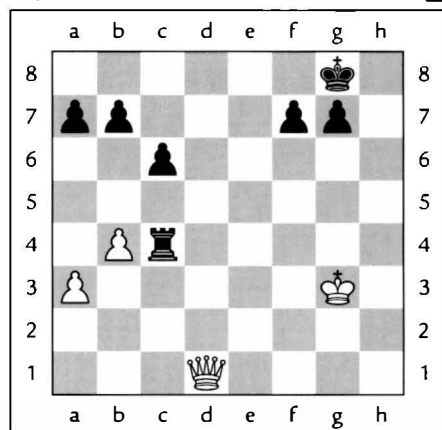


35. ♖g4!

This fresh double attack against both rooks decides the game. Staunton resigned. Bearing in mind our theme, it's fitting to look at one of the possible conclusions:

35. ... ♜f6 (If 35. ... ♜d2+, then 36. ♕e3+- wins) 36. ♜×d1 ♜×f4+ (also a double attack) 37. ♕g3 ♜×c4

116



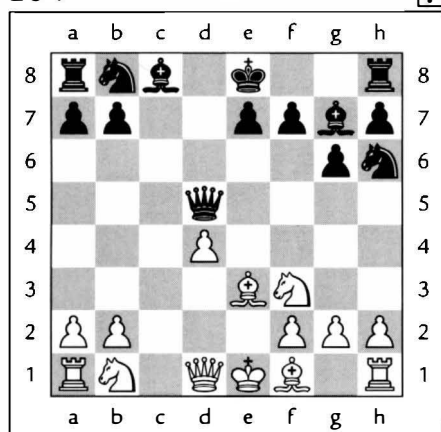
And here White wins with a typical double attack manoeuvre by the queen: 38. ♜d8+! ♕h7 39. ♜d3+ +-.



Exercises (solutions p. 109–112)

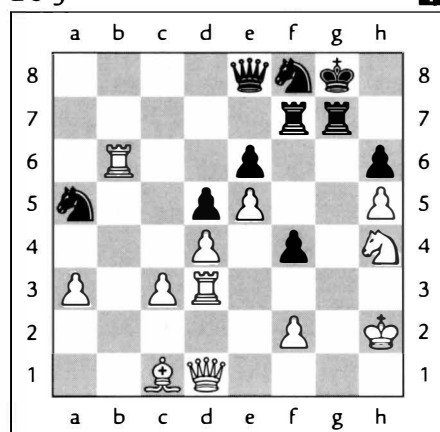
E6-1

*



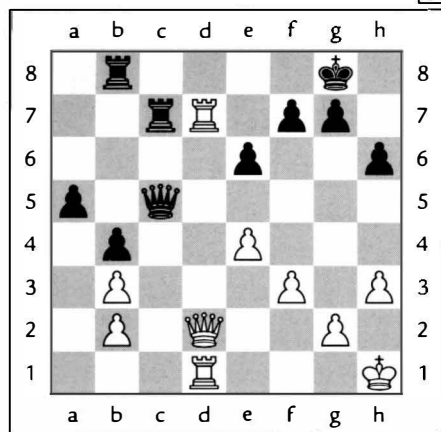
E6-3

*



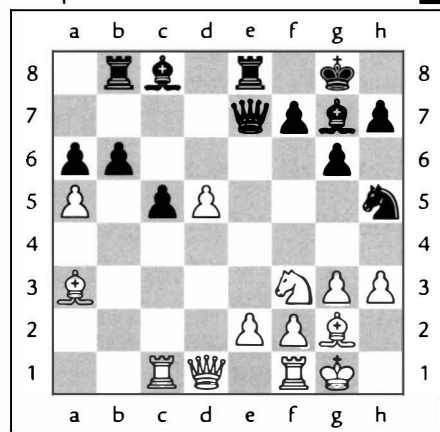
E6-2

*

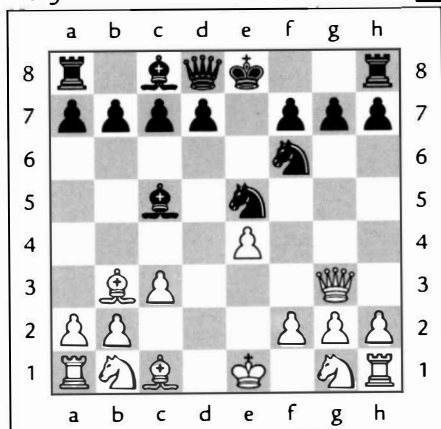


E6-4

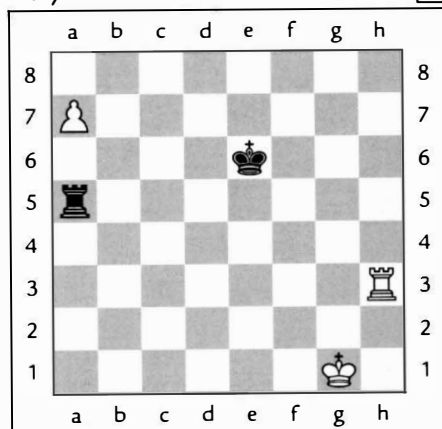
*



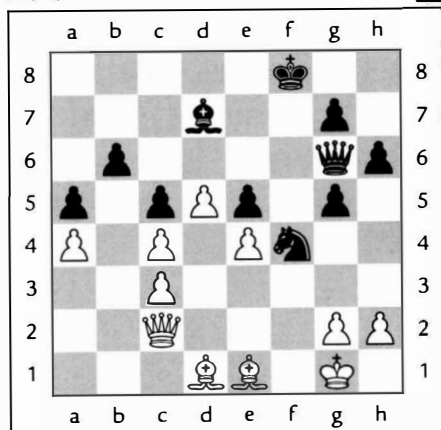
E6-5 *



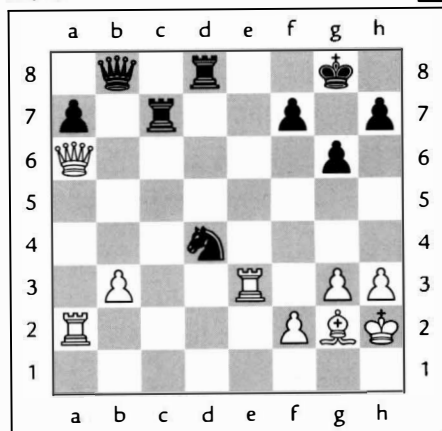
E6-7 **

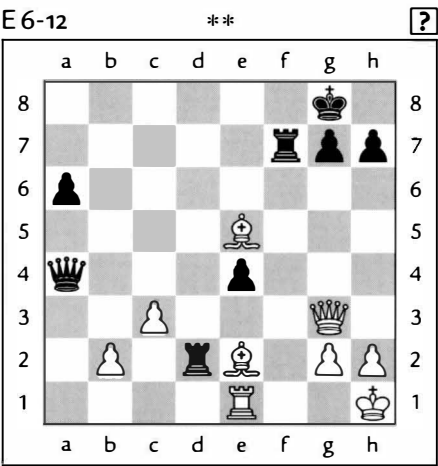
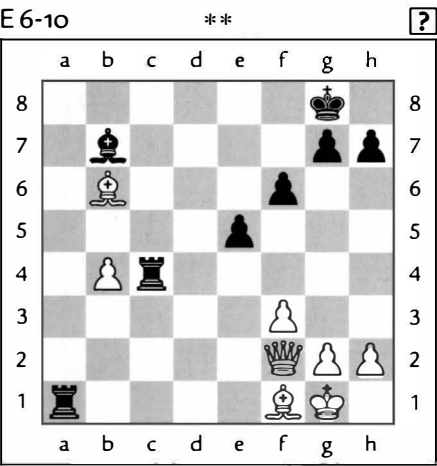
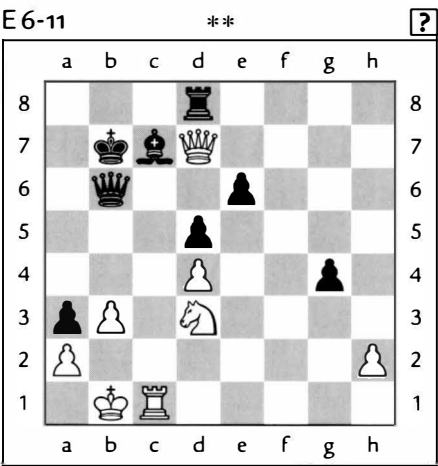
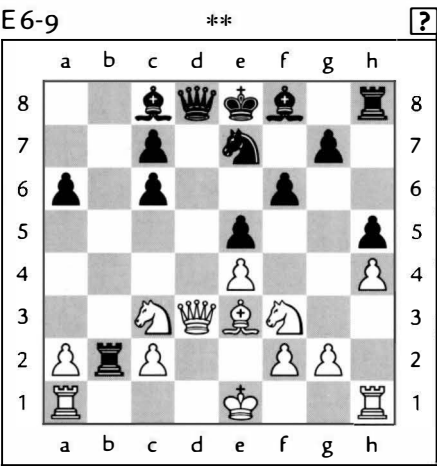


E6-6 **



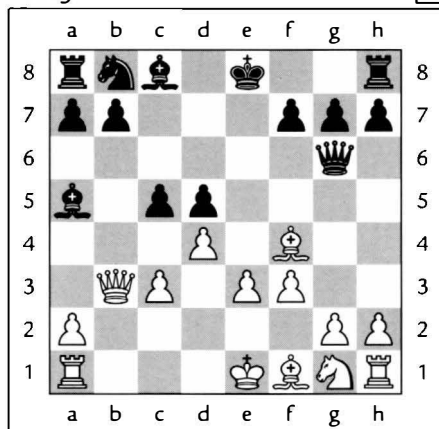
E6-8 **





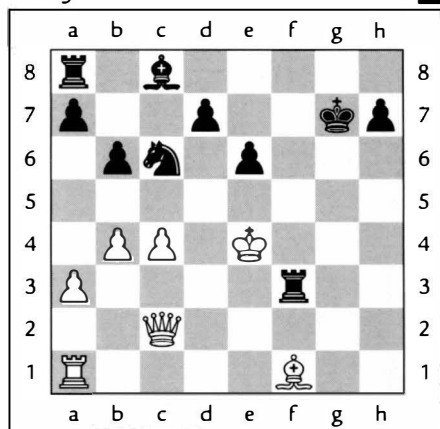
E 6-13

**



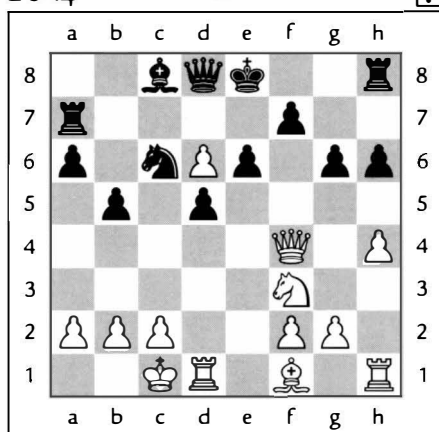
E 6-15

**



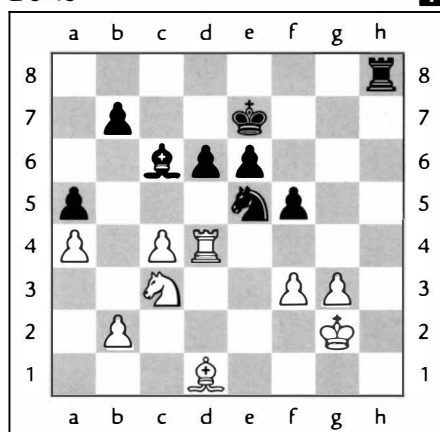
E 6-14

**



E 6-16

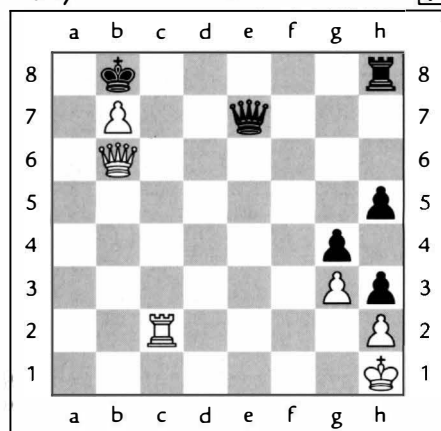
**



E 6-17

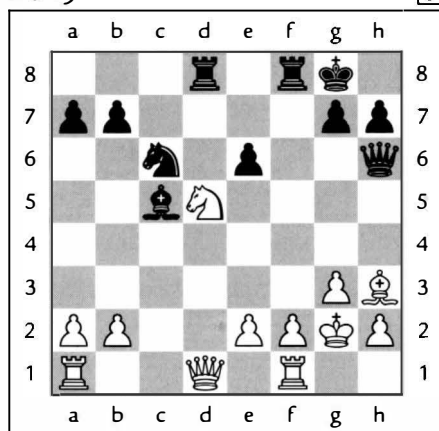
**

?



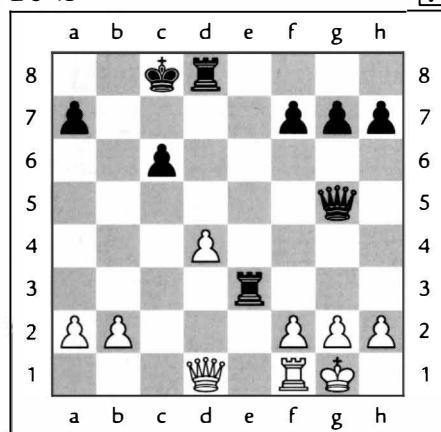
E 6-19

?



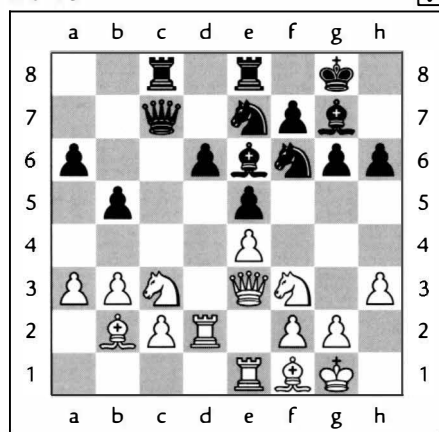
E 6-18

?



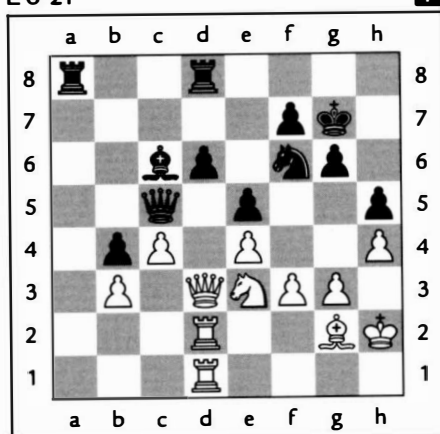
E 6-20

?



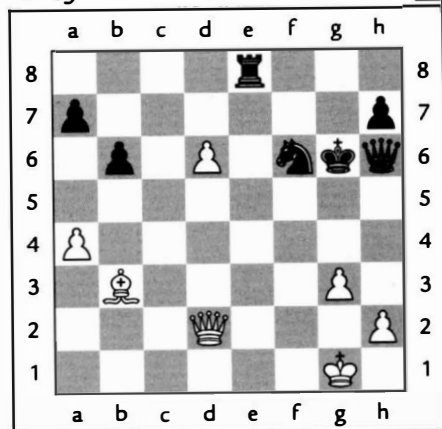
E 6-21

?



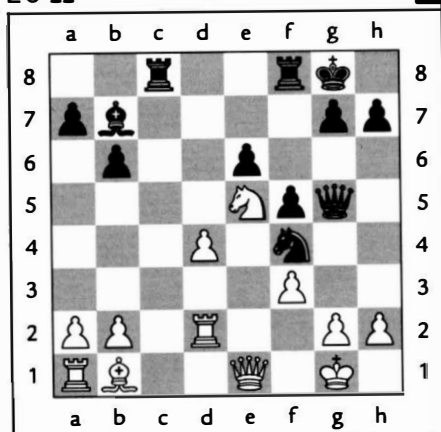
E 6-23

?



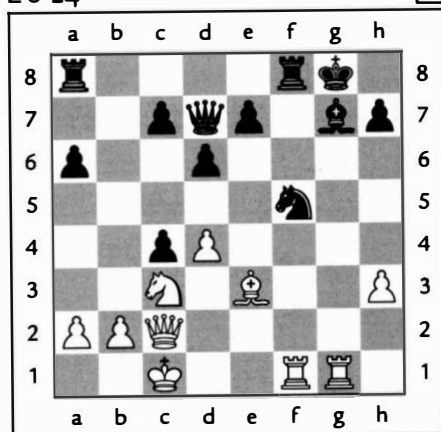
E 6-22

?



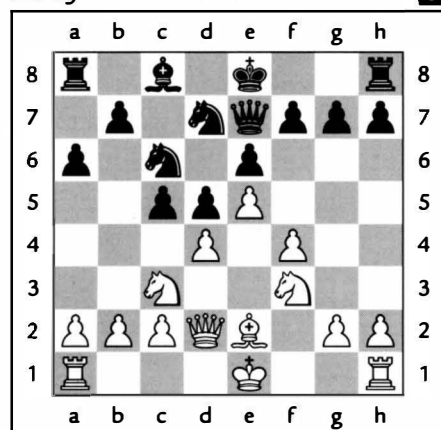
E 6-24

?



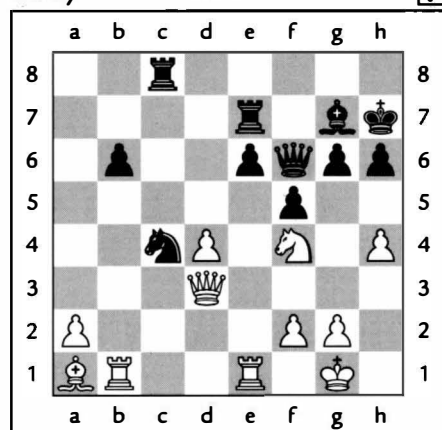
E6-25

?



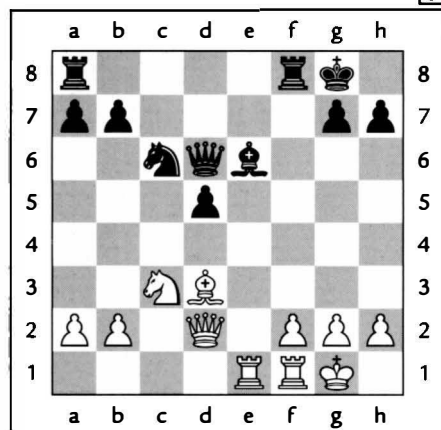
E6-27

?



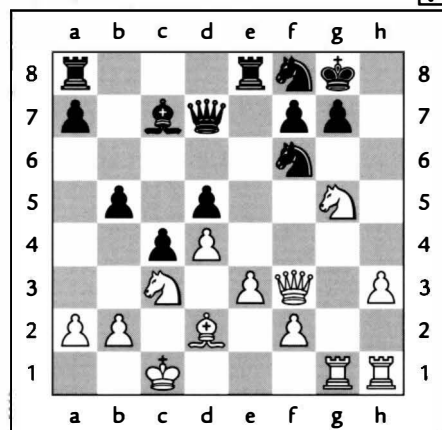
E6-26

?



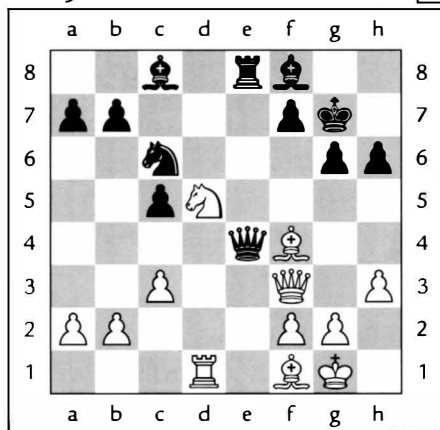
E6-28

?



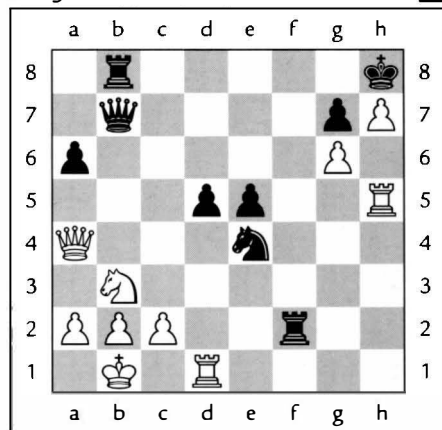
E6-29

?



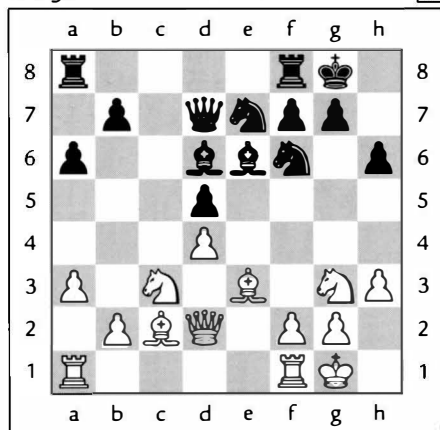
E6-31

?



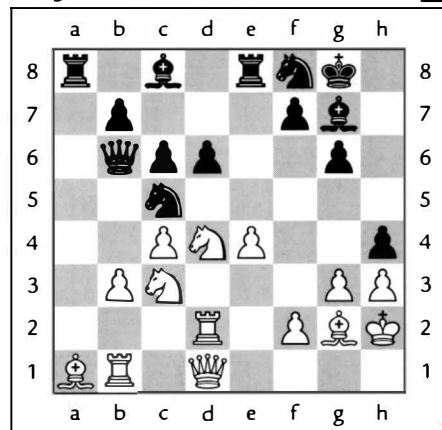
E6-30

?



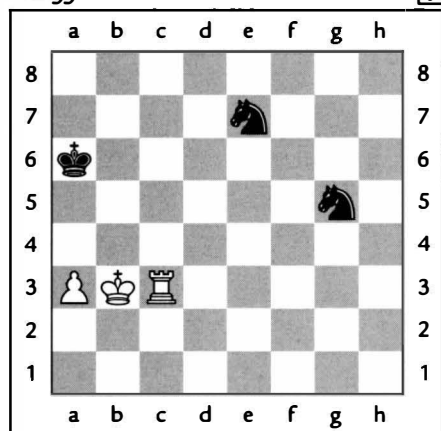
E6-32

?



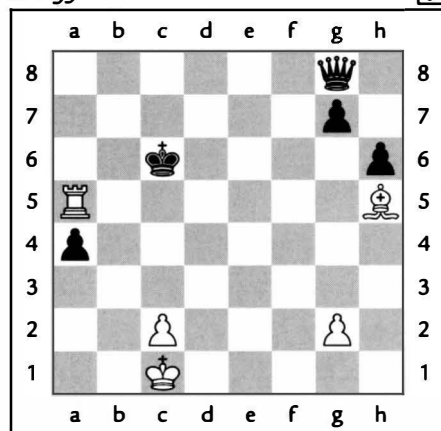
E6-33

?



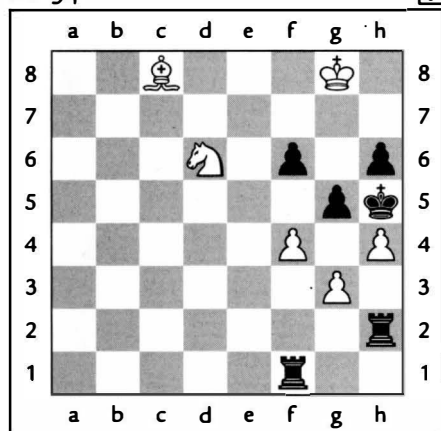
E6-35

?



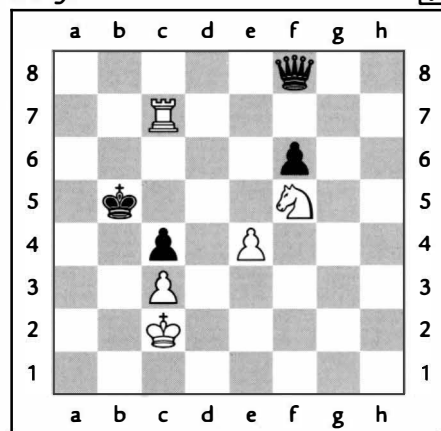
E6-34

?



E6-36

?



Solutions

□ E6-1

Vasiukov – Razuvaev, *Polanica-Zdrój* 1972

(1. e4 g6 2. d4 ♗g7 3. c3 d5 4. exd5 ♜xd5 5. ♖f3 c5 6. ♜e3 cxd4 7. cxd4 ♖h6??)

8. ♜c1 +- [8. ... ♜e6 9. d5 +-; 8. ... ♜a5+ 9. ♜d2 +-] 1-0.

□ E6-2

Antunes – Loek, *Linares* (zt) 1995

33. ♜f4! +- 1-0.

□ E6-3

Ehlvest – Nogueiras, *Rotterdam* 1989

37. ... ♜d8! -+ 38. ♜b2 ♜xh4+ 39. ♜h3 ♜g5 40. ♜f1 ♖c4 41. ♜a2 ♜f5 0-1.

□ E6-4

Csom – Kindermann, *Dortmund* 1983

20. ... ♖xg3! 21. f×g3 ♜e3+ 22. ♖h2 ♜xa3 23. axb6 ♜xb6 ♢ 0-1.

□ E6-5

NN – Swiderski, *Leipzig* 1903

1. ... ♜xf2+! 2. ♖xf2 [2. ♜xf2 ♖d3+ -+] 2. ... ♖xe4+ -+ 0-1.

□ E6-6

Spassky – Fischer, *Reykjavik* (wch5) 1972

27. ... ♜xa4! -+ [28. ♜xa4 ♜xe4 29. ♖f2 ♖d3+ -+] 0-1.

□ E6-7

Grigory Levenfish

1. ♜h6+! ♖f7 [1. ... ♖d5 2. ♜h5+ +-] 2. ♜h8! ♜xa7 3. ♜h7+ -+ 1-0.

□ E6-8

Beliaevsky – Yusupov, *Úbeda* 1997

39. ... ♖c2! ♢ [40. ♜e4 ♖b4 -+] 0-1.

□ E6-9

Feuer – O'Kelly de Galway, *Lüttich* 1934

1. ♜xd8+ ♖xd8 2. 0-0-0+! +- 1-0.

□ E6-10

Pähtz – Fernandez, *Albena* 1989

1. ♜a2!! +- [1. ... ♜xa2 2. ♜xc4 +-; 1. ... ♜ac1 2. ♜xc4 +-] 1-0.

□ E6-11

Bogoljubow – Alekhine, *The Hague* 1929

1. ♜xc7+! ♜xc7 2. ♖c5+ ♖b6 3. ♜xc7+ ♖xc7 4. ♖xe6+ +- 1-0.

□ E6-12

Beliaevsky – Chandler, *Wien* 1986

1. ♜xg7! ♜xg7 [1. ... ♜xe2 2. ♜h6+ ♖h8 3. ♜b8+ +-] 2. ♜b8+ ♖f7 3. ♜f4+ +- 1-0.

□ E6-13

Botvinnik – Sorokin, *Leningrad* 1933

12. ♜xb8 +- [12. ... ♜xb8 13. ♜a4+ +-] 1-0.

□ E6-14

Hellers – Bareev, *Gausdal* 1986

17. ♖d4! +- ♖d7 [17. ... ♜d7 18. ♖xc6 ♜xc6 19. ♜d4! +-; 17. ... ♖b8 18. ♖xb5 axb5 19. ♜d4 +-; 17. ... e5 18. ♜e3! ♖xe4 19. ♜xe5+ ♖d7 20. ♜xd4 +-] 18. ♜xb5! axb5 19. ♜xf7+ [19. ... ♖xd6 20. ♖xb5+ +-] 1-0.

□ E6-15

Stepanov – Romanovsky, *Leningrad* 1926

1. ... d5+! -+ [2. ♖xf3 ♖d4+ -+; 2. cxd5 exd5+ 3. ♖xd5 ♜e6+! 4. ♖d6 (4. ♖e4 ♜f5+ -+; 4. ♖xe6 ♖d4+ -+; 4. ♖xc6 ♜c8+ -+) 4. ... ♜d8+ 5. ♖c7 (5. ♖xe6 ♜f6#; 5. ♖xc6 ♜c8+ -+) 5. ... ♜f7+ 6. ♖xc6 ♜c8+ -+] 0-1.

□ E6-16

Zhuravlev – Kapengut, *SSSR* 1968

1. ... ♔xf3+! 2. ♕xf3 ♖h2+! 3. ♜xh2 ♜xf3+
4. ♜g2 ♜xd4 -+ 0-1.

□ E6-17

Lasker – NN, (*sim*) 1920

1. ♖c8+! ♖xc8 2. ♜a7+! ♜xa7 3. bxc8 ♜+! +-
1-0.

□ E6-18

Rubinstein – Lasker, St. Petersburg 1909

18. ♜c1!

[≠18. fxe3 ♜xe3+ 19. ♜h1 ♖xd4]

18. ... ♖xd4

[18. ... ♖e5 19. ♜xc6+ (≠19. f4 ♖c5) 19. ... ♜b8
20. dxe5 (20. f4?! ♖e6 21. ♜xe6 ♜xg2+ 22.
♜xg2 fxe6 ±) 20. ... ♜xe5 21. ♖c1 ±]

19. fxe3 ♖d7

[19. ... ♖d6 20. ♖xf7 +-]

20. ♜xc6+ ♜d8 21. ♖f4!!

[Δ22. ♖a8+ ♜e7 (22. ... ♜c7 23. ♖c4+) 23.
♖e4+ ♜d6 24. ♖d4+ (24. ♜b8+) 24. ... ♜e7
25. ♖xd7+ +-]

21. ... f5

[21. ... ♖a5 22. ♖a8+ ♜e7 23. ♖e4+ ♜f6 24.
♜c6+ ♜g5 25. h4+ +- (Lasker); 21. ... ♖d1+
22. ♜f2 ♖d2+ 23. ♜e1 ♜xg2 24. ♖d4+ ♜e7 25.
♜d6+ +- (Tarrasch)]

22. ♜c5 ♜e7

[22. ... ♖d1+ 23. ♜f2 ♖d2+ 24. ♜e1 ♜xg2 25.
♖a5+ +-]

23. ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 24. ♖xf5+- 1-0

□ E6-19

Rubinstein – Capablanca, San Sebastián 1911

17. ♜c1!! exd5 [17. ... ♖xd5 18. ♜xh6 gxh6
19. ♕xe6+ +-; 17. ... ♜xc1 18. ♕xe6+ +-] 18.
♜xc5 ♖d2 19. ♜b5 ♜d4 20. ♖d3 ♜xd3 21.
exd3 ± 1-0.

□ E6-20

Smyslov – Speelman, Hastings 1981/82

22. ♕xb5! axb5 23. ♜xb5 ♜b8 24. ♜xd6+-
1-0.

□ E6-21

Uhlmann – Spiridonov, Polanica-Zdrój 1981

33. ... ♕xe4! 34. fxe4 ♜xe3! 35. ♜xe3 ♜g4+
36. ♜h3 ♜xe3 -+ 0-1.

□ E6-22

Hörberg – Averbakh, Stockholm 1954

21. ... ♖c1! 22. ♜xc1 [22. ♖d1 ♜xg2#] 22. ...
♜e2+ 23. ♖xe2 ♜xc1+ 24. ♜f2 ♕a6 -+ 25.
♕d3 ♜xa1 26. ♕xa6 ♖d1 0-1.

□ E6-23

Domes – Fedorov, Moscow 1984

1. ♕f7+! ♜g7 [1. ... ♜xf7 2. ♜xh6 ♖d8 3. g4!
♖xd6 (3. ... ♜xg4 4. ♜xh7+ ♜e6 5. ♜e7+ +-)
4. g5 ♜e8 (4. ... ♖d1+ 5. ♜g2 +-) 5. ♜xh7+
♜g7 6. ♜e4+ - (Zhuravlev)] 2. ♜xh6+ ♜xh6
3. ♕xe8 ♜xe8 4. d7!+- 1-0.

□ E6-24

Hübner – Nikolaidis, Corfu 1999

21. ♜g2! [Δ♖f5; x♕g7, ♖a8] 21. ... e6 22. ♖xf5
exf5 [22. ... ♖xf5? 23. ♜xa8+] 23. ♕h6 f4 24.
♕xg7 f3 25. ♜g3+- 1-0.

□ E6-25

Stromberg – Vedder, Hallsberg 1993

10. ... cxd4 11. ♜xd4 ♜dxe5 12. ♜f5 [12. fxe5
♜h4+ -+] 12. ... exf5 13. ♜xd5 ♜f3+ [13. ...
♜d6! 14. fxe5 ♜xe5 ±] 14. gxf3 ♜h4+ 15. ♜f1
0-0 ♯ 0-1.

□ E6-26

Vooremaa – Yuksti, SSSR 1977

1. ♕xh7+! ♜xh7 2. ♜e4 ♜b4 [2. ... ♜d7 3.
♜g5+ +-] 3. ♜xb4 ♜xb4 4. ♜g5+ ♜g8 5.
♜xe6 ±

□ E6-27

Gurevich – Razuvaev, Moscow 1987

30. h5! g5 31. ♜d5!+- [31. ... exd5 32. ♖xe7
♜xe7 33. ♜xf5+ +-] 1-0.

□ E6-28

Tolush – Mititelu, Warsaw 1961

20. ♖xf6!! gxf6 21. ♜ge4+ [21. ... ♜g6 22. ♜xf6+ +-; 21. ... ♜h8 22. ♜xf6 +-] 1-o.

□ E6-29

Karpov – Topalov, Dos Hermanos 1994

30. ♜f6!! ♜xf6 [30. ... ♖xf3 31. ♜xe8+ +-] 31. ♙e5+! ♜xe5 32. ♖xe4+ ♜xe4 33. ♙e1+ ♜f5 34. ♙xe8 ♙e6 35. ♙xf8 ♙xa2 36. ♙c8! +- [Δ♙c7] 1-o.

□ E6-30

Yusupov – Holzhäuer, Altenkirchen 1999

16. ♙xh6! gxf6 17. ♖xh6 ♜g6 [17. ... ♙xg3! 18. fxg3 ♜e4 19. ♙xe4 dxe4 20. ♖g5+ ♜h7 21. d5 ♜xd5 (21. ... ♙f5 22. ♙f4 +-) 22. ♙ad1 f5 23. ♜xd5 ♙xd5 24. ♙f4 +-] 18. f4!

[Δf5]

18. ... ♖c7

[18. ... ♙ac8 19. f5 ♙xg3 20. fxe6 ♖xe6 21. ♙xg6 +-; 18. ... ♙ae8 19. f5 ♙xg3 20. fxg6 fxg6 21. ♖xg6+ ♖g7 22. ♙xf6 +-]

19. ♜ge2 +- [19. f5? ♙f4]

19. ... ♙fe8 20. f5 ♙f8 21. ♖g5 ♜h7 22. ♙d2 ♜h4 23. fxe6 fxe6 24. ♙f4 ♖e7 25. ♙af1 ♙g7

[25. ... ♙h6 26. ♙g4+ +-]

26. ♙f7 ♙d8

[26. ... ♖xf7 27. ♙xh7+ ♜f8 28. ♙xf7+ +-]

27. ♙f4 ♜g5 28. ♙xg7+! ♜xg7 29. ♖e5+ ♜g8 30. ♙f6 ♜h7

[30. ... ♜f7 31. ♖g3+ ♜f8 32. ♖xh4 +-]

31. ♙xh7+

[31. ♙xh7+ ♜xh7 32. ♖h5+ ♜g7 33. ♖f7+ ♜h8 34. ♙h6#]

1-o.

□ E6-31

Xie Jun – Galliamova, Kazan/Shenyang (wch14) 1999

30. ... ♖c7?

[30. ... ♜d2+ 31. ♜a1 ♜c4 ∞;

Δ30. ... ♖c8!!

A) 31. c4 dxc4 (31. ... ♖g4 32. ♙hh1 ♖e2 33. ♖a3 dxc4 -+) 32. ♙c1 ♖e6 33. ♖xc4 ♜d2+ 34. ♜xd2 ♖xg6+ +-;

B) 31. ♙c1 ♖g4 32. ♙xe5 ♜c3+ +-]

31. ♙c1 ♙g2 32. ♖xa6 ± 1-o.

□ E6-32

Pachman – Bronstein, Moscow 1946

20. ... ♙xa1!

[≤20. ... ♙xd4 21. ♜a4! (21. ♙xd4 ♙xa1 - 20. ... ♙xa1) 21. ... ♜xa4 22. ♙xd4! (22. bxa4 hxg3+ 23. fxg3 ♙g1+ 24. ♖xg1 ♖xg1+ 25. ♜xg1 ♙xa4 ♢) 22. ... hxg3+ 23. fxg3 ♖b4 (23. ... ♜c5 24. b4 ♢) 24. bxa4 ♖xc4 ♢]

21. ♙xa1 ♙xd4 22. ♙xd4 ♜xb3 23. ♙xd6 [23. ♙b1 ♖xd4 -+]

23. ... ♖xf2!

[23. ... ♜xa1? 24. ♜d5! ♢]

24. ♙a2

[24. ♖xb3 hxg3+ 25. ♜h1 ♙xh3 26. ♙g1 ♙xg2+ 27. ♙xg2 ♖f1+ 28. ♙g1 ♖h3#; 24. ♙d3 ♜xa1 -+]

24. ... ♖xg3+ 25. ♜h1 ♖xc3 -+ 26. ♙a3 ♙xh3! 27. ♙xb3

[27. ♖xb3 ♖e1+ 28. ♜h2 ♙xg2 29. ♜xg2 ♖e2+ 30. ♜g1 ♙xe4 -+]

27. ... ♙xg2+ 28. ♜xg2 ♖xc4 29. ♙d4 ♖e6 30. ♙b7 ♙a8 31. ♖e2 h3+

[32. ♜g1 ♙a1+ 33. ♙d1 ♙xd1+ 34. ♖xd1 ♖xe4 -+;

32. ♜f3 ♖f6+ 33. ♜e3 h2 34. ♖xh2 ♙a3+ 35. ♙d3 ♖g5+ 36. ♜e2 ♙a2+ -+]

0-1.

□ E6-33

Henri Rinck, 1923

1. ♜b2!!

[1. ♙g3 ♜e6 2. ♙e3 ♜d4+ 3. ♜c4 ♜dc6 =; 1. ♙c7 ♜f5 2. ♙c5 ♜d4+ =; 1. ♜a4 ♜e6 2. ♙e3 ♜c5+ =; 1. ♜c2 ♜e6 2. ♙e3 ♜d4+ =; 1. ♜a2 ♜d5 2. ♙c5 ♜e4 3. ♙xd5 ♜c3+ =]

1. ... ♗b6

[1. ... ♖f7 2. ♜c7 +-; 1. ... ♛e6 2. ♜e3 +-; 1. ... ♛e4 2. ♜e3 +-; 1. ... ♛f5 2. ♜c5 +-; 1. ... ♛g8 2. ♜g3 +-]

2. ♜g3 ♛f7

[2. ... ♛h7 3. ♜g7 +-; 2. ... ♛e4 3. ♜e3 +-; 2. ... ♛e6 3. ♜e3 +-]

3. ♜g7 +- 1-0.

[1. ... ♜e6 2. ♜a6 +-; 1. ... ♜xa8 2. ♛f3 +-; 1. ... ♛d5 2. ♛f3 +-; 1. ... ♜c4 2. ♜c8 +-; 1. ... ♜h7 2. ♛g6!! ♜xg6 3. ♜a6 +-]

2. ♜xa4! ♜g8

[2. ... ♜xa4 3. ♛e8 +-]

3. ♜a8 ♜h7

[3. ... ♜xa8 2. ♛f3 +-;]

4. ♛g6!! ♜xg6 5. ♜a6 +- 1-0.**□ E6-34**

Genrikh Moiseevich Kasparian, 1935

1. ♛e8!

[Δ2. ♛g7 ♗g6 3. ♛f5#; 1. ♛f5 ♗g4 2. ♛e3+ ♗f3 3. ♛xf1 ♜f2 =]

1. ... ♗g6 2. h5+! ♜xh5

[2. ... ♗xh5 3. ♛g7+ ♗g6 4. ♛f5#]

3. f5+ ♜xf5 4. g4! ♜e5 5. ♛f5+ ♜xf5 6. ♛g7! +- 1-0.

□ E6-35

Henri Rinck, 1903

1. ♜a8!! ♜a2**□ E6-36**

Vladimir Bron, 1927

1. ♜c8! ♜a3

[1. ... ♜f7 2. ♛d6 +-]

2. ♛d4+ ♗b6

[2. ... ♗a6 3. ♜a8 +-]

3. ♜b8+ ♗c5

[3. ... ♗c7 4. ♛b5 +-; 3. ... ♗a7 4. ♛b5 +-]

4. ♜b5+ ♗d6 5. ♜d5+ ♗e7

[5. ... ♗c7 6. ♛b5 +-]

6. ♜a5! ♜d6

[6. ... ♜xa5 7. ♛c6 +-]

7. ♛f5+ +- 1-0.

Score table

Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1		13	2		25	4	
2	1		14	2		26	4	
3	1		15	2		27	4	
4	1		16	2		28	4	
5	1		17	2		29	5	
6	2		18	3		30	5	
7	2		19	3		31	5	
8	2		20	3		32	5	
9	2		21	3		33	5	
10	2		22	3		34	6	
11	2		23	3		35	6	
12	2		24	4		36	6	
							total	110

Points	Playing Strength
less than 4 points	beginner
4 – 9 points	ELO 800–1000
9 – 29 points	ELO 1000–1500
30 – 47 points	ELO 1500–1800
48 – 67 points	ELO 1800–2100
68 – 89 points	ELO 2100–2300
90 – 99 points	ELO 2300–2400
100–110 points	ELO above 2400

7 The Process of Elimination

Mark Dvoretsky wrote in his book 'Secrets of Chess Training': 'When selecting the correct move, the ability to avoid calculating unessential variations is as important as the ability to calculate deeply and accurately.' In other words, we have to try to think economically and rationally.

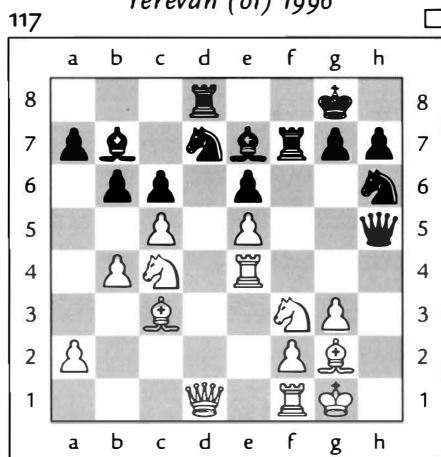
Sometimes it is quite difficult to work out which is the strongest move. It can often be easier to satisfy oneself that all other moves are bad. By using the process of elimination (that is, the elimination of all weak moves from further consideration) we can save time and energy, reaching the right decision more quickly and more easily.

The process of elimination is applied mainly when defending. The thought process runs like this: 'That move loses; that one too; so I'll play the other. I might save the game like this, but if not, I know the position was lost anyway'.

To understand how the process of elimination can be applied in a practical game, let's take a look at some examples:

Margeir Pétursson – Artur Yusupov

Yerevan (ol) 1996



White has a clear positional advantage and now tries to develop his initiative.

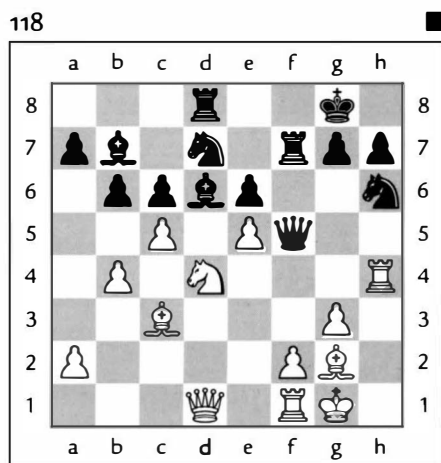
22. ♖d6 ♙×d6 23. ♖h4

An unpleasant intermezzo (23. e×d6 b×c5).

Because 23. ... ♜g6 24. e×d6 b×c5 25. b×c5 ♙a6 26. ♖e1 looked quite hopeless, I decided to risk the other queen move.

23. ... ♜f5 24. ♖d4

24. e×d6 b×c5.

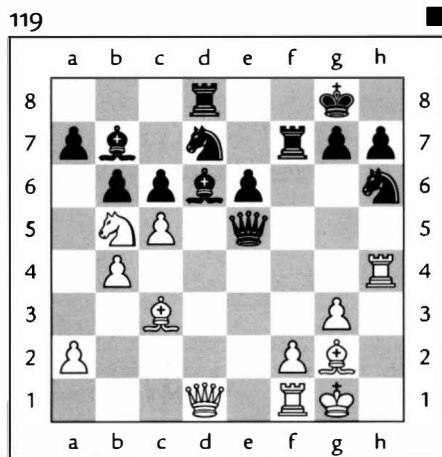


24. ... ♜×e5

Of course, I couldn't calculate all lines precisely (I didn't want to either), but to play this bold move I just had to convince myself that the alternative 24. ... ♜g6 looked just as dangerous after the powerful 25. e×d6! (25. c×d6 ♖×e5 26. ♜e2 c5) 25. ... b×c5 26. b×c5 ♖×c5 27. ♖×c6 ♙×c6 28. ♙×c6 ♖f5 29. ♖g4 ♜h6 30. ♙d2 ♜h5 31. ♙f3! ♜h3 32. ♖c4 or 32. ♖g5 ♖×d6 33. ♜h5 ♜×f1+ 34. ♖×f1 and White wins.

25. b5

25. $\Xi e_4!?$ Ψd_5 26. $\Theta \times e_6$ (26. $\Xi \times e_6$ Ψc_4)
 26. ... Ξe_8 27. $c \times d_6$ $\Psi \times d_1$ 28. $\Xi \times d_1$ c_5 29.
 Ξe_2 $\Theta \times g_2$ 30. $\Theta \times g_2$ $\Theta f_5 \pm$; 25. $\Theta \times c_6$ $\Psi \times c_3$
 26. $\Theta \times d_8$ $\Theta \times g_2$ 27. $\Theta \times f_7$ $\Theta \times f_7$ 28. $\Theta \times g_2$
 $b \times c_5$; 25. Ξe_1 Ψf_6 .



25. ... cxb5!

Black has to sacrifice the queen, otherwise the knight arrives at d6 with decisive threats.

26. ×e5 ×g2

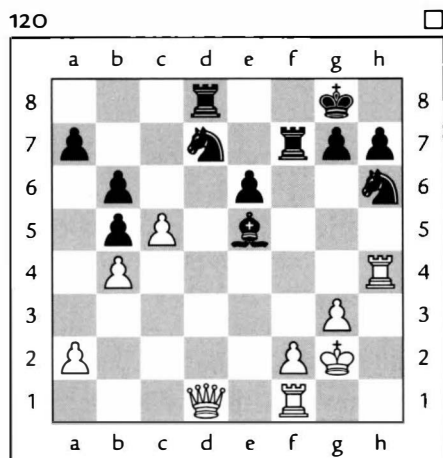
26. ... $\frac{1}{x} \times e^5$ 27. $\frac{1}{x} \times b^7 + -$.

27. $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6 \times \text{g}2$

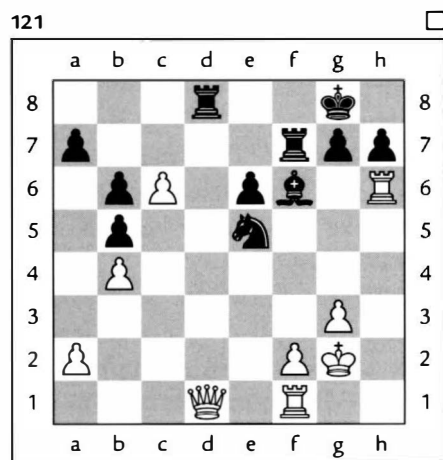
27. $\mathbb{A} \times d6 \mathbb{A} \times f1$ 28. $\mathbb{W} \times f1 \mathbb{Q} f5$ 29. $\mathbb{B} e4 b \times c5$
30. $b \times c5 \mathbb{Q} \times c5$ (30. ... $\mathbb{Q} \times d6$ 31. $c \times d6 \mathbb{Q} f8$
32. $\mathbb{B} d4 \mathbb{B} fd7 \pm$) 31. $\mathbb{A} \times c5 \mathbb{Q} \times g3$!?

27. ... × e5

My tenacity pays off. My opponent now makes a small mistake. The task would have been more difficult if he had played 28. $\text{B}\times\text{h6! g}\times\text{h6 29. c6}\pm$ instead.



28. c6 ♖f6! 29. ♔xh6 ♘e5!



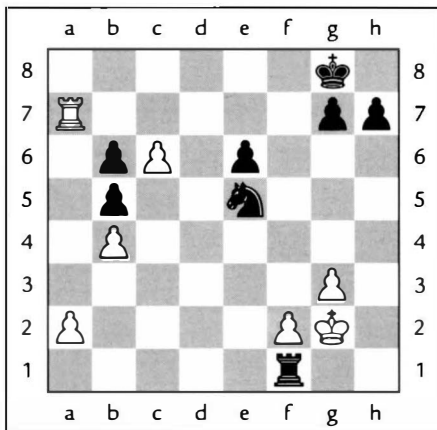
Black seizes his chance.

Instead 29. ... g×h6± would have led to the position mentioned above. Even though my opponent finds a nice combination, it is not good enough to win.

30. ♖xf6! ♖xd1 31. ♖xf7 ♖xf1 32. ♖xa7

32. c7? ♖c1-+; 32. ♕xf1? ♜xf7-+.

122



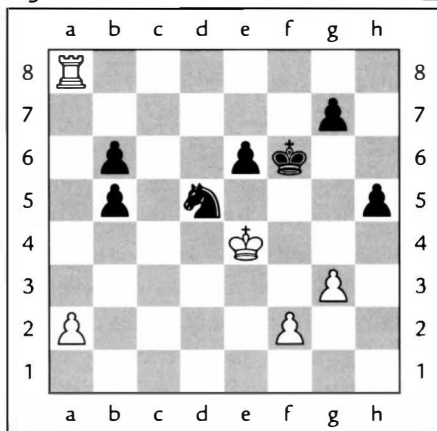
32. ... ♖xc6!

Black has to eliminate the potentially dangerous pawn on b4.

On the other hand, 32. ... ♖c1? is poor due to 33. c7+; likewise 32. ... ♖xf2+?! because of 33. ♖xf2 ♖xc6 34. ♖a8+ ♖f7 35. a3 ♖e5 36. ♖e3 ♖c4+ 37. ♖d4 with the threat of a4.

33. ♖a8+ ♖f7 34. ♖xf1 ♖xb4 35. ♖e2 h5
36. ♖e3 ♖f6 37. ♖e4 ♖d5 ±

123



The worst is over for Black. With careful play I drew the game without difficulty.

38. ♖d4 g6 39. ♖f8+ ♖e7 40. ♖f3 ♖d6
41. a3 b4 42. a×b4 ♖×b4 43. ♖f8

43. ♖f6 ♖c6+ 44. ♖e4 ♖e7.

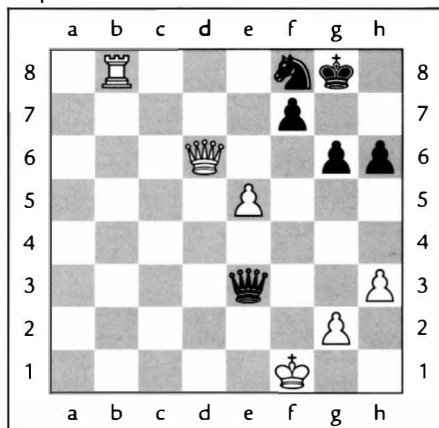
43. ... ♖e7! 44. ♖a8

44. ♖b8?? ♖c6+.

44. ... ♖f6 45. ♖e4 ♖d5 46. ♖f8+ ♖e7
47. ♖b8 ♖f6 48. ♖d4 ♖f5 49. f3 = ½-½

Smbat Lputian – Artur Yusupov
Baden-Baden 1996

124



Once again, I'm sorry to say that my play until this point had been less than convincing.

As the black knight is pinned, I can do nothing else but try for a perpetual check. I was short of time and it was only by using the process of elimination that I managed to save the game.

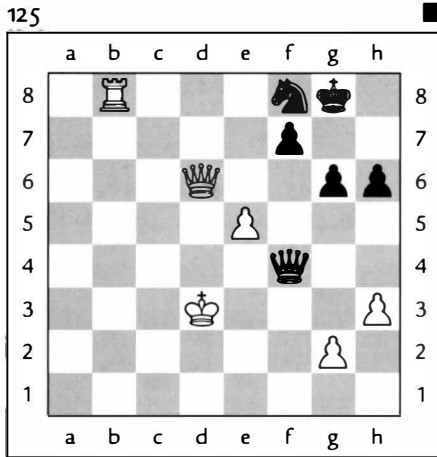
56. ... ♖f4+

The other check, 56. ... ♖c1+, loses to 57. ♖e2 ♖c2+ 58. ♖e3 ♖c3+ 59. ♖f2 ♖c2+ 60. ♖g3+.

57. ♖e2 ♖e4+ 58. ♖d1

58. ♖d2 ♖×g2+.

58. ... ♖a4+! 59. ♔d2 ♜f4+ 60. ♔d3

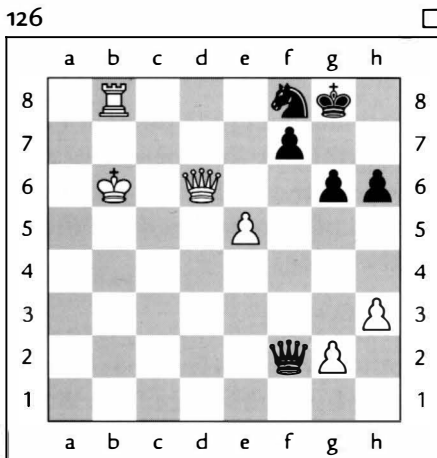


Again, I have two choices and just a few seconds remaining on the clock. However, I quickly realised that 60. ... ♜f1+ would lose to 61. ♔e3 ♜e1+ 62. ♔f3 ♜f1+ 63. ♔g3 ♜e1+ 64. ♔h2 +-. I chose the other check.

60. ... ♜g3+! 61. ♔c4

61. ♔e4 ♜xg2+.

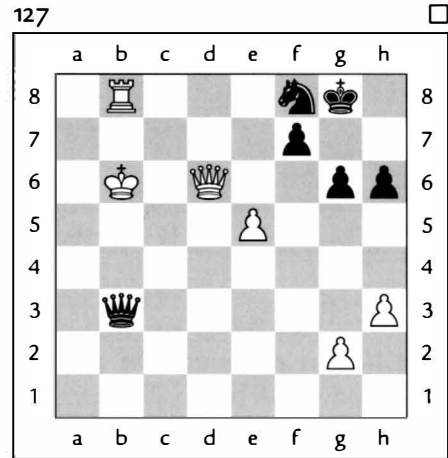
61. ... ♜f4+ 62. ♔b5 ♜f1+ 63. ♔b6 ♜f2+



Fortunately, my opponent could not find a win here. White's main problem is that

neither queen nor rook may leave their positions: if 64. ♜c5 ♜b2+ 65. ♔c7??, then ♜xb8!+ is possible.

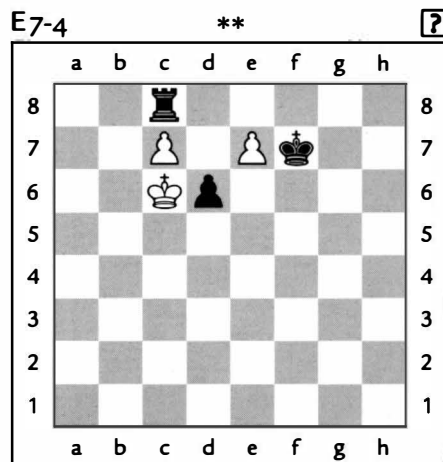
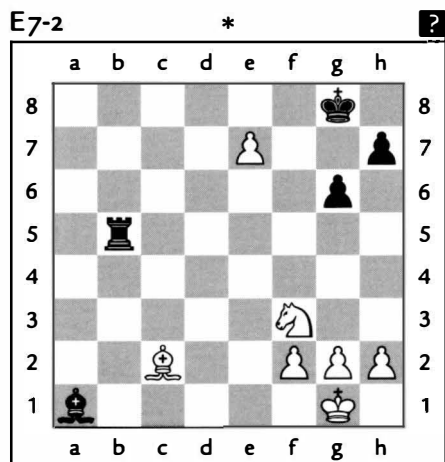
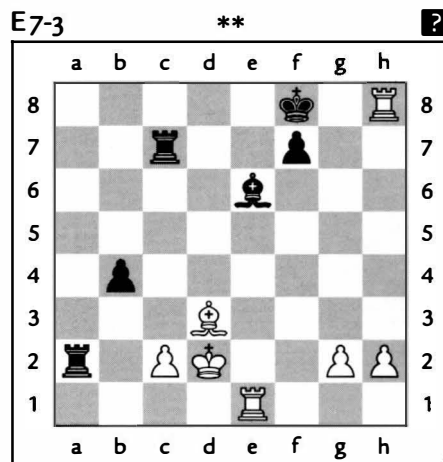
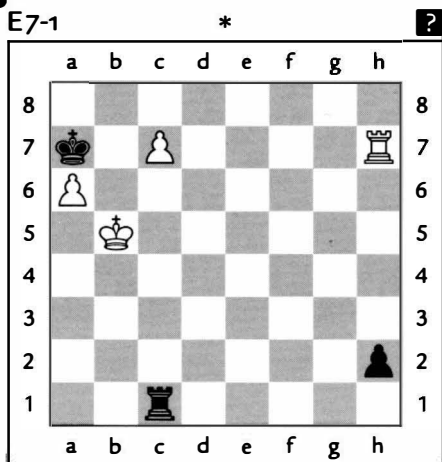
64. ♔c7 ♜a7+ 65. ♔c6 ♜a4+ 66. ♔b6 ♜b3+



The draw is unavoidable. If 67. ♔c7 ♜c3+ 68. ♔d8, then 68. ... ♜a5+ 69. ♔e7 ♜a7+ 70. ♔f6 ♜f2+.

67. ♔a5 67. ... ♜a2+ 68. ♔b4 ♜b2+ 69. ♔a4 ♜c2+ 70. ♔b5 ♜e2+ 71. ♔b6 ♜f2+= ½-½

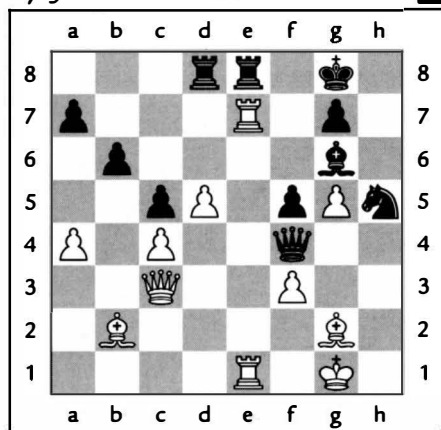
The process of elimination can be used not only in defence, but also in positions where one stands better – though in that case it should be used more carefully. You might overestimate your position and find yourself going down a losing line rather than being satisfied with a draw in another variation. To avoid such a disaster, one should also calculate the consequences of your chosen move (perhaps not as thoroughly as the others) ensuring that you at least have a 'bale-out' option.


Exercises (solutions p. 123–125)


E7-5

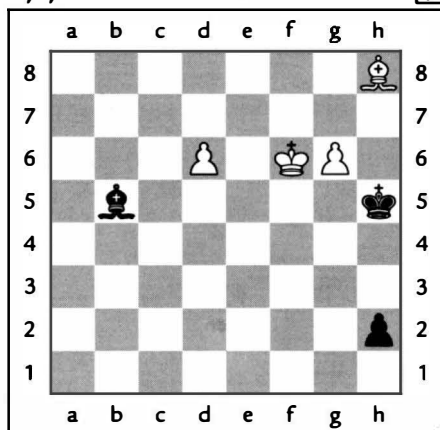
**

?



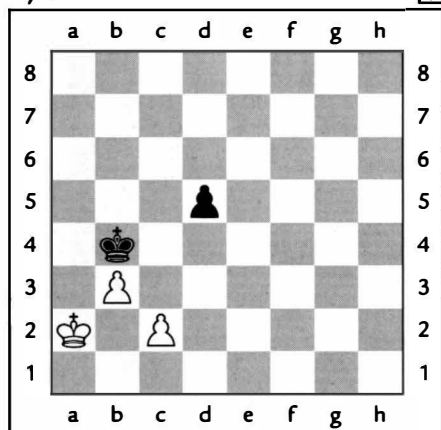
E7-7

?



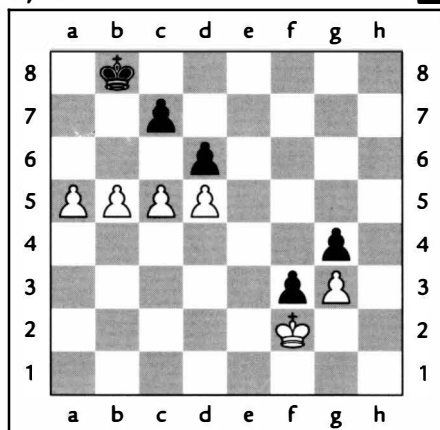
E7-6

?



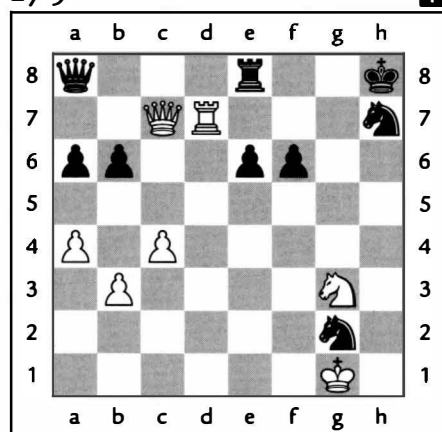
E7-8

?



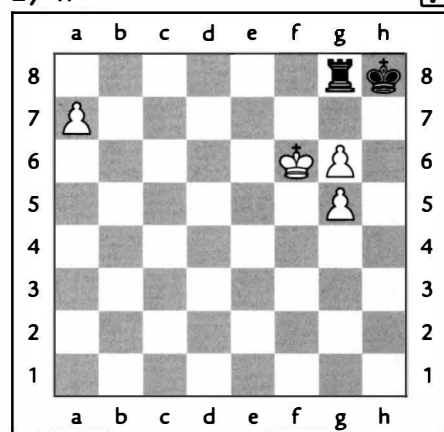
E7-9

?



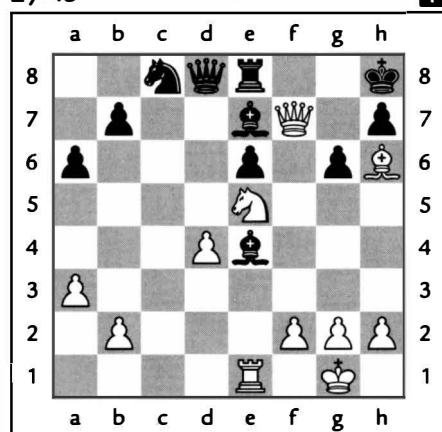
E7-11

?



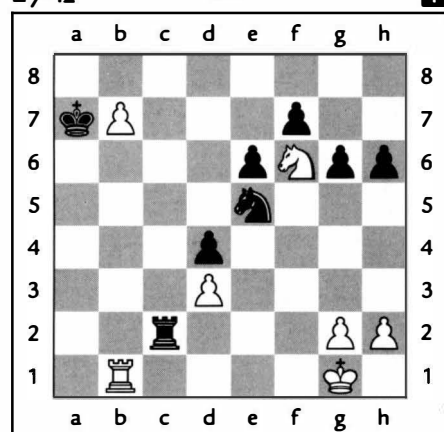
E7-10

?

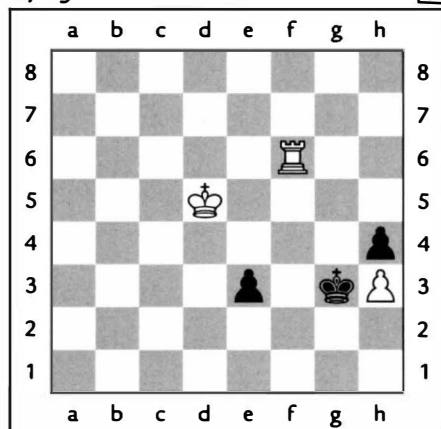


E7-12

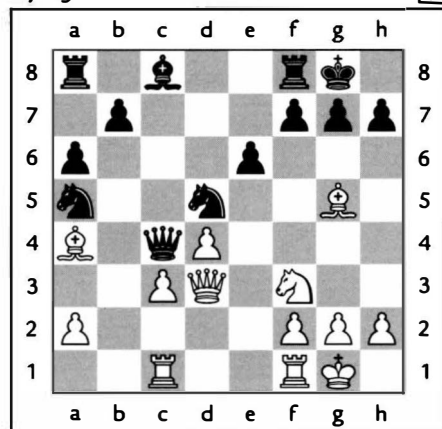
?



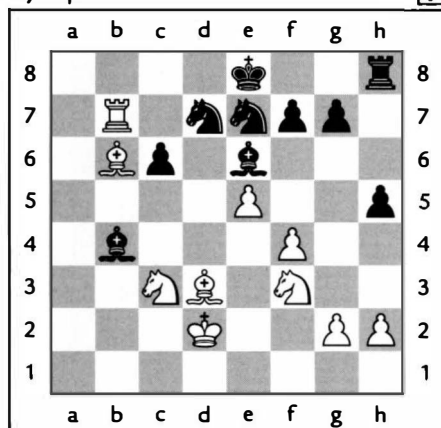
E7-13 *** [?]



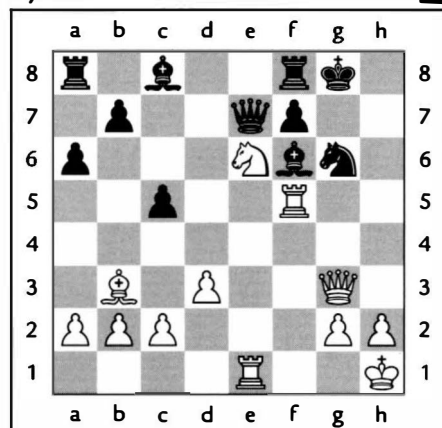
E7-15 **** [?]



E7-14 **** [?]



E7-16 ***** [?]



Solutions

□ E7-1

Fridstein, 1987

1. ... ♖a8!

[Δ♙c7; 1. ... ♙b1+? 2. ♖a4 ♙a1+ 3. ♖b3 h1♙ (3. ... ♙b1+ 4. ♖a2 ♙c1 5. c8♙+ +-) 4. ♙xh1 +-; 1. ... h1♙? 2. c8♙+ ♖b8 (2. ... ♖a8 3. ♙b6+ ♖b8 4. a7#) 3. a7+ ♖xc8 4. ♙xh1 +-]

2. ♖b6

[2. ♙h8+ ♖a7 3. c8♙ ♙xc8; 2. ♙xh2 ♙xc7 3. ♖b6 ♙c8 =]

2. ... ♙b1+ 3. ♖c5 ♙c1+ 4. ♖d6 ♙d1+ 5. ♖e7 ♙c1 6. ♖d8 ♙d1+ 7. ♙d7 ♙xd7+ [7. ... ♙c1 =]

8. ♖xd7 h1♙ 9. c8♙+ ♖a7 =.

□ E7-2

Ragozin – Boleslavsky, Moscow 1945

35. ... ♖f7?? [35. ... ♙b8 ♢ Δ36. ♙a4? ♙b1+ -+] 36. e8♙+ +- [36. e8♙+ ♖xe8 37. ♙a4 +-] 1-0.

□ E7-3

Timoshchenko – Kuzmin, SSSR 1980

1. ... ♖e7? [1. ... ♖g7! 2. ♙h7+ ♖f6 ± (2. ... ♖f8? 3. ♙xe6 +-)] 2. ♙b8 ♙a4 [2. ... ♙b2 3. ♙e4 b3 4. ♙xb3 +-] 3. ♙e4 ♙a1 4. ♙xb4 +- 1-0.

□ E7-4

Richard Réti, 1928

1. e8♙+! [1. ♖xd6? ♖e8 2. ♖c6 (2. ♖e6 ♙xc7) 2. ... ♖xe7 3. ♖b7 ♖d7 -+] 1. ... ♖xe8 [1. ... ♙xe8 2. ♖xd6 =] 2. ♖xd6 ♙a8 3. ♖c6 [Δ♖b7] 3. ... ♙c8 4. ♖d6 = ½-½.

□ E7-5

Anand – Karpov, Frankfurt (rapid) 1999

38. ... ♙xe7?

Karpov played this move very quickly, and it was the decisive mistake. He could have defended his position with ♖38. ... ♖f8 39. ♙xa7 (39. ♙xg7 ♙xe1+ 40. ♙xe1 ♙e8 41. ♙c3 ♙e3 ♢) 39. ...

♙xg5 40. ♙c1 = (≠ 40. ♙xe8+ ♙xe8 41. ♙xg7 ♙e2! -+).

39. ♙xe7 ♖f8 40. ♙xg7! ♙xg5 41. ♙xa7 ♙f7 42. ♙h8+

Anand carries out the attack powerfully.

42. ... ♙g8

[42. ... ♙g8 43. ♙h6+ ♙g7 44. ♙f6 +-]

43. f4! ♙g6

[43. ... ♙xf4 44. ♙g7+ +-]

44. ♙e5

Preparing an elegant finale.

44. ... ♙e8 45. ♙xh5!!

[45. ♙xh5!! ♙xh5 46. ♙g7#]

1-0.

□ E7-6

Nikolay Grigoriev, 1933

1. ♖a1!!

[1. ♖b2? d4 2. ♖a2 (2. ♖b1 d3! =; 2. ♖c1 ♖c3 3. ♖d1 d3 4. cxd3 ♖xd3 =) 2. ... ♖c3 3. ♖b1 (3. ♖a3? ♖xc2) 3. ... d3 4. cxd3 ♖xb3 =; 1. ♖b1? ♖c3 2. ♖c1 d4 3. ♖d1 (3. ♖b1 d3 4. cxd3 ♖xb3 =) 3. ... d3 =]

1. ... ♖c3

[1. ... d4 2. ♖b2 ♖c5 3. ♖c1 ♖b4 4. ♖d2 +-]

2. ♖b1 ♖b4

[2. ... d4 3. ♖c1 d3 4. cxd3 ♖xb3 (4. ... ♖xd3 5. ♖b2! +-) 5. ♖d2! +-; 2. ... ♖d4 3. ♖b2 +-]

3. ♖c1 ♖c3 4. ♖d1 d4 5. ♖c1 d3 6. cxd3 ♖xb3

[6. ... ♖xb3 7. ♖d2!]

7. ♖d2! +-.

□ E7-7

Vladimir Bron, 1979

1. g7 [1. d7? h1♙ 2. d8♙ ♙h4+ -+] 1. ... ♙c4 [1. ... h1♙ 2. g8♙ =] 2. g8♙! [2. d7 h1♙ 3. ♖e7 ♙e4+ -+] 2. ... ♙xg8 3. d7 h1♙ 4. d8♙ ♙h4+ 5. ♖g7 ♙xd8 stalemate [5. ... ♙g4+ 6. ♖f8 = (6. ♖f6? ♙g5#)] ½-½.

□ E7-8

Ravikumar – Nielsen, Esbjerg 1980

1. ... ♘a8?

[1. ... dxc5? 2. b6 c4 (2. ... cxb6 3. a6 +-) 3. a6 cxb6 4. d6 c3 5. d7 ♙c7 6. a7 c2 7. d8 ♙+ ♙xd8 8. a8 ♙+ + -;

1. ... c6?? 2. cxd6 cxb5 3. d7 ♙c7 4. a6 + -;

1. ... ♙a7? 2. b6+! cxb6 (2. ... ♙b7 3. bxc7 ♙xc7 4. cxd6+ + -) 3. cxd6 + -;

1. ... ♙c8? 2. a6! (2. b6? cxb6 =) 2. ... ♙b8 (2. ... dxc5 3. b6 + -) 3. b6 + -;

1. ... ♙b7! = (Δdc) 2. a6+ (2. cxd6 cxd6 =; 2. c6+ ♙b8 3. b6 cxb6 = 4. a6?? b5 + -; 2. b6 cxb6 =) 2. ... ♙a7! 3. b6+ ♙xa6! (3. ... cxb6? 4. cxd6 + -) 4. bxc7 ♙b7 5. cxd6 ♙c8 =]

2. b6 ♙b7 3. bxc7 ♙xc7 4. cxd6+ 1-0.

□ E7-9

Karpov – Csom, Bad Lauterberg 1977

49. ... ♖f8?

[49. ... ♖g5! 50. ♖h5 Δ♙h7 50. ... ♙e4 + - (50. ... ♙g8! 51. ♖xf6 ♖f4 52. ♙xf4 ♖h3+ 53. ♙f1 ♙h1+ 54. ♙e2 ♖xf4+ + -) 51. ♖xf6 ♙e3+ 52. ♙xg2 (52. ♙h1 ♙h3+ 53. ♙g1 ♖e3 + -) 52. ... ♙f3+ 53. ♙g1 ♙xf6 + -]

50. ♖f5! + -

[50. ♖f5! (Δ51. ♙h7! ♖h7 52. ♙g7#) 50. ... exf5 (50. ... ♖xd7 51. ♙h2+ ♙g8 52. ♙g3+ + -) 51. ♙h2+ ♙g8 52. ♙g3+ + -]

1-0

□ E7-10

Yusupov – Sorokin, Elista (ol) 1998

26. ... ♙f8??

[26. ... ♙g8?? 27. ♙f6+!! ♙xf6 28. ♖f7#;

26. ... ♙f6! 27. ♖d7 ♙xd4 28. ♙g5 ♖d6 29. ♙xd8 ♖xf7 30. ♙f6+ (30. ♙xe4 ♙xd8 31. ♙xd4 ♖e5 + -) 30. ... ♙xf6 31. ♖xf6 ♙c6 (31. ... ♙c8! 32. ♖xe4 ♙c2) 32. ♖xe8 ♙xe8 33. ♙xe6 ♙c6 ♖/=]

27. ♙xf8 ♙xf8 28. ♙xe4! ♖d6

[28. ... ♙xf7 29. ♖xf7+ + -]

29. ♖xg6+! hxg6 30. ♙h4+! ♙xh4 31.

♙xf8+ ♙h7 32. ♙xd6 + - ♙e4 33. ♙c7+ ♙h6 34. ♙c1+ g5 35. g3 ♙h5 36. ♙d1+ ♙g6 37. h3 ♙f6 38. ♙d2 b5 39. ♙h2 1-0.

□ E7-11

Yochanan Afek, 1981

1. g7+! [1. ♙f7? ♙g7+ 2. ♙f8 ♙xa7 + -; 1. a8 ♙? ♙xa8 2. ♙f7 ♙a7+ + -] 1. ... ♙h7 2. g6+ [2. ♙f7? ♙xg7+ + -; 2. a8 ♙? ♙xa8 3. ♙f7 ♙a7+ + -] 2. ... ♙h6 3. a8 ♙! [3. ♙f7? ♙xg7+ + -] 3. ... ♙xa8 4. ♙f7 ♙a7+ 5. ♙g8 □ ♙xg7+ [5. ... ♙xg6 6. ♙h8 = ♙xg7 stalemate] 6. ♙h8 ♙a7 [6. ... ♙xg6 stalemate] 7. g7 ♙xg7 stalemate ½-½.

□ E7-12

Planinc – Bagirov, Banja Luka 1976

42. ... ♙b8! [42. ... ♖c6 43. ♖d7 ♖b8 44. ♙a1+! ♙xb7 45. ♙b1+ ♙c7 46. ♖xb8 ♙a2 (Δ♙a8) 47. ♙f1 f5 48. ♙e1 =] 43. h3 [43. ♙b5 ♙c1+ 44. ♙f2 ♙c5! 45. ♙xc5 ♖xd3+ + -] 43. ... ♙c7 44. ♙b4 ♖c6 45. ♙c4 [45. ♙b6 ♙a7 + -] 45. ... ♙xb7 + - 46. ♙f2 ♙c8 47. g4 ♙a8 48. ♖e4 ♙c7 49. ♖c5 ♙a2+ 50. ♙g3 ♙a3 51. ♙f4 ♙c3 52. h4 ♙xc4 53. dxc4 ♙b6 54. ♖d3 f5 55. h5 g5+ 56. ♙f3 ♙c7 57. c5 ♖d7 58. ♙g3 ♙e7 59. ♙f3 ♙f6 0-1.

□ E7-13

Gabriel – Michaelsen, Bundesliga 1998/99

67. ♙e6? [67. ♙e4! e2 (67. ... ♙xh3 68. ♙f3 + -) 68. ♙f3+ ♙g2 69. ♙e3 ♙f2 70. ♙f4 + -; 67. ♙g6+? ♙xh3 68. ♙e4 e2 69. ♙g1 ♙h2 70. ♙e1 ♙g3 71. ♙e3 h3 =; 67. ♖d4? e2 68. ♙e6 ♙f2 69. ♖d3 e1 ♙ 70. ♙xe1 ♙xe1 71. ♙e3 ♖d1! 72. ♙f4 ♙e2 73. ♙g4 ♙e3 74. ♙xh4 ♙f4 =] 67. ... ♙xh3 68. ♙e4 ♙g2 69. ♙f4 h3 70. ♙xe3 h2 71. ♙e2+ ♙h3 ½-½.

□ E7-14

Yusupov – Movsesian, Bundesliga 1999/2000

24. ♙e4??

After this dreadful move, White loses the game.

[24. ♖d4 c5!]

This is the idea I overlooked.

[25. ♖b5 ♘d8! 26. ♖g5 (26. ♖x d7 ♖x d7 27. e6 fxe6 28. ♖xg7 ♖g8 ♢ Δ 29. ♖e5 ♖xc3+ 30. ♘xc3 ♖d5+ -+) 26. ... cxd4 27. ♖xe6+ ♘c8 28. ♖xd7 dxc3+ -+.

The correct move was 24. ♖f2!! ∞ ♖d5 25. f5 ♖xc3+ 26. ♘c2 ♖h6 27. fxe6 with the point 27. ... ♖xe6 (Δ 27. ... fxe6 28. ♖e4 ♖a5 29. ♖a7 ↑) 28. ♖f5 ♖e7? (28. ... ♖xe5 29. ♖xe6 fxe6 30. ♖g5 ±) 29. ♖c5 ♖xc5? 30. ♖b8#.

24. ... ♖d5! 25. ♖g5

[25. ♖d4 ♖xc3+ -+; 25. e6!? fxe6 26. ♖e5 ♖xe5 27. fxe5 ♖xe4 28. ♖b8+ ♘f7 29. ♖xh8 ♖d5 30. ♖d4 c5 -+]

25. ... ♖xc3+!

Didn't see that one either!

[25. ... c5? 26. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 27. ♖xf7! ♖xc3+ 28. ♘c2 ∞]

26. ♘xc3 c5 -+

[26. ... ♖xe4 27. ♖xe4 ♖d5+ 28. ♘d4 ♖5xb6 29. ♖d6+ ♘e7 30. ♖f5+ ♘f8 -+]

27. ♖xd7 ♘xd7 28. ♖xc5 ♖xe4 29. ♖xe7 [29. ♖xe4 ♖d5+ -+]

29. ... ♖xg2 30. ♖c5 ♖d5 31. f5 ♘c6 32. ♖d4 ♖a8 33. h4 ♖a3+ 34. ♘d2 ♖a2+ 35. ♘e1 ♖a4 0-1.

□ E7-15

Yusupov – Epishin, Bundesliga 1999/2000

16. ♖c2 = [16. ♖c2? ♖xc3 17. ♖b3 (17. ♖xc3 ♖xa4 ♢) 17. ... ♖xb3 18. axb3 ♖e2+ 19. ♘h1 ♖b5 Δ 20. ♖cd1 ♖xd4!! -+]

16. ... ♖xd3 17.

♖xd3 b5 = 18. ♖d2 h6 19. ♖e3 ♖d7 20. ♖b3 ♖b7 21. c4 ½-½.

□ E7-16

Anand – Gelfand, Wijk aan Zee 1996

21. ... fxe6??

[21. ... ♖xe6? 22. ♖xe6 fxe6 23. ♖xg6+ ♖g7 24. ♖xe6+ ♖f7 25. ♖xf7+ ♘f8 26. ♖xf6 +-; 21. ... ♖e8!

A) 22. ♖ef1 ♖h4! ♢;

B) 22. ♖f3 ♖h4 (22. ... ♖h4 23. ♖g4+ ♖g6 24. ♖f3) 23. ♖xf7 ♖xf7 24. ♖xf7+ ♘xf7 25. ♖c7+ ♖e6 26. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 27. ♖xe6+ ♘e7 28. ♖xa8 ♘xe6 29. ♖b6 ♢;

C) 22. ♖ff1 ♖xe6 (22. ... fxe6 23. ♖xg6+ ♖g7 24. ♖f6! ♖xf6 25. ♖xe8+ ♖f8 26. ♖xe6+ ♖xe6 27. ♖xe6+ ♖f7 28. ♖b6 ∞) 23. ♖xe6 fxe6 24. ♖xg6+ ♖g7 25. ♖f3 ♖f8 ♢;

D) 22. ♖e4! 22. ... ♖xe6 23. ♖xe6 fxe6 24. ♖xg6+ ♖g7 25. ♖f3 ♢]

22. ♖xe6!

[22. ♖xg6+? ♖g7 (22. ... ♖g7 ♢) 23. ♖xe6 ♖xg6 24. ♖exf6+ ♘h7! □ -+;

22. ♖xe6+? ♖xe6 23. ♖xe6 ♖g7! -+]

22. ... ♘g7

[22. ... ♖xe6 23. ♖xg6+ ♖g7 (23. ... ♖g7 24. ♖xe6+) 24. ♖xe6+ ♘h8 (24. ... ♖f7 25. ♖xf7+ ♘f8 26. ♖xf6 +-) 25. ♖h5+ +-]

23. ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 24. ♖xf8 ♖xf8 25. h4! +- [25. h4 ♘h7 26. h5 ♖e7 27. ♖f3 (27. ♖f4 ♖d7 28. ♖f6 ♖c6 29. ♖f7 +-) 27. ... ♖f5 28. ♖xb7 +-]

1-0.

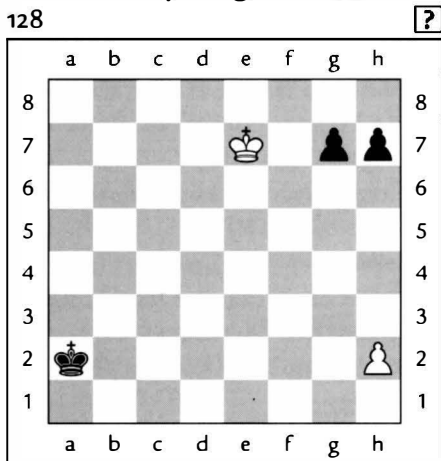
Practical exercises

Try to play the following four studies like real games. You always have White. For each of the first two positions you have half an hour's thinking time, and for each of the second two you have an hour.

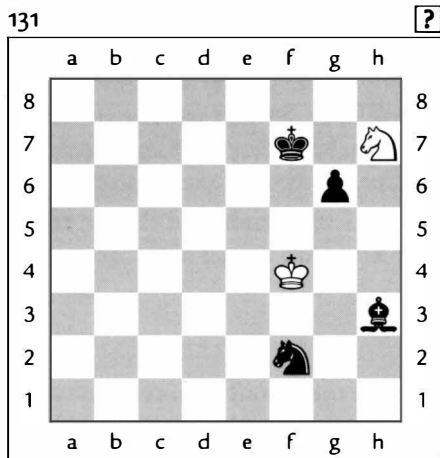
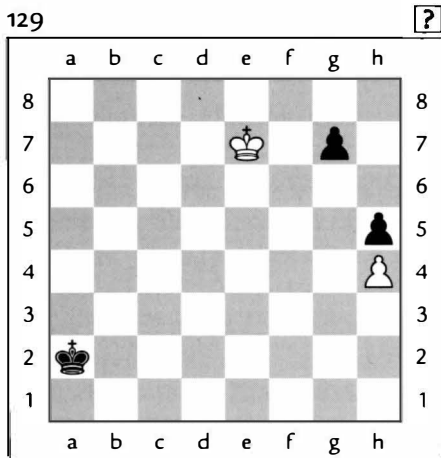
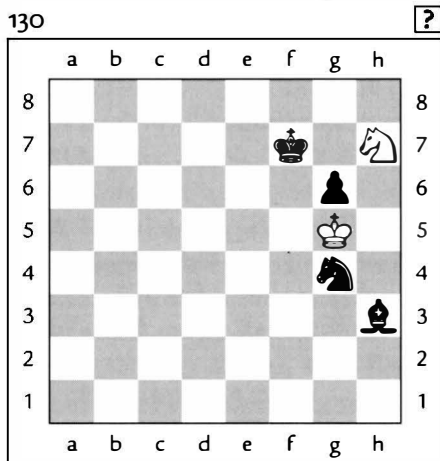
Cover the moves and the diagrams that follow with a sheet of paper. When you have reached a decision, you can look at the correct move, the comments, and the 'opponent's' next move.

Each study runs in a column. In the left-hand column you'll first find a study by Grigoriev, then Vlasenko; in the right-hand column a study by Gurvich, then Kozirev. Focus your attention on the candidate moves, and try to refute poor moves as quickly as possible.

Nikolay Grigoriev 1931

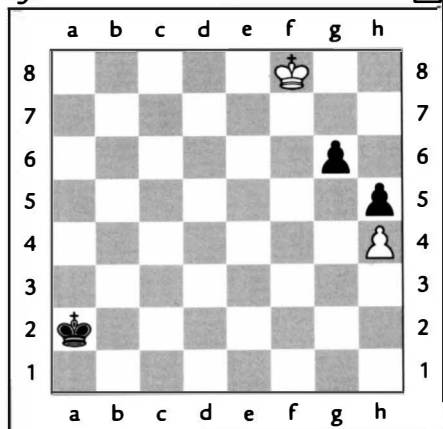


Abram Gurvich 1961



132

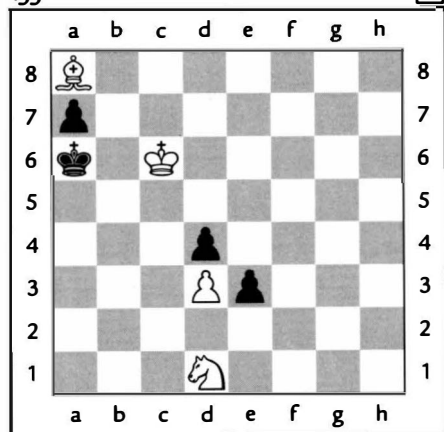
?



V. Vlasenko 1970

133

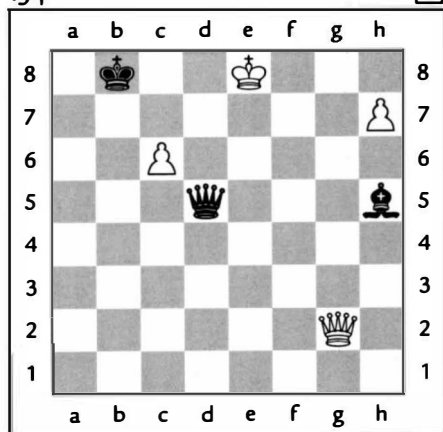
?



V. Kozirev 1978

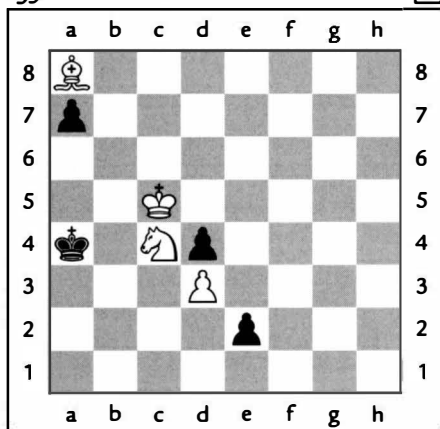
134

?



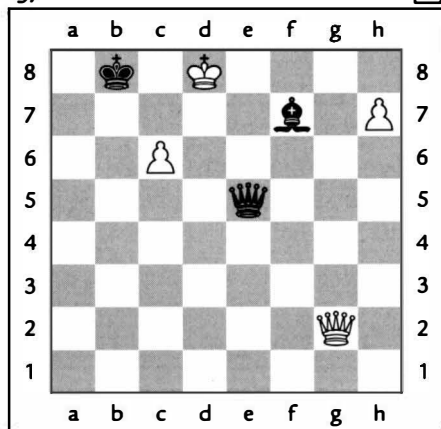
135

?



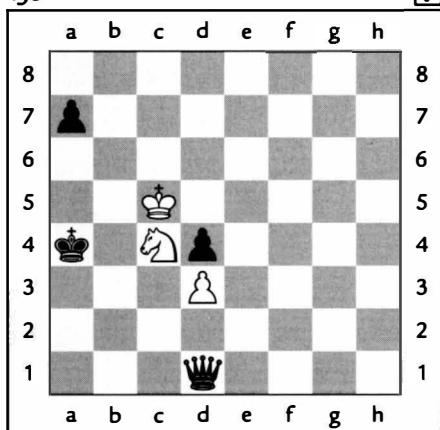
137

?



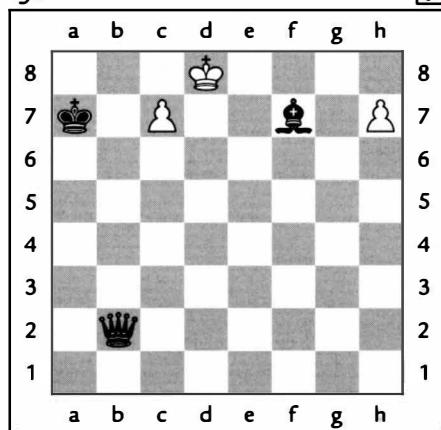
136

?



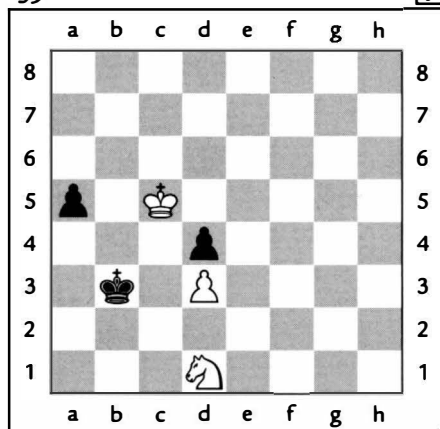
138

?



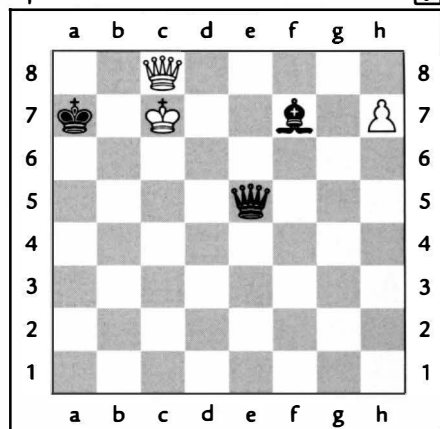
139

?



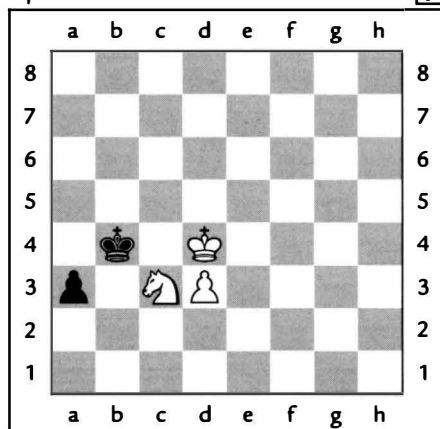
141

?



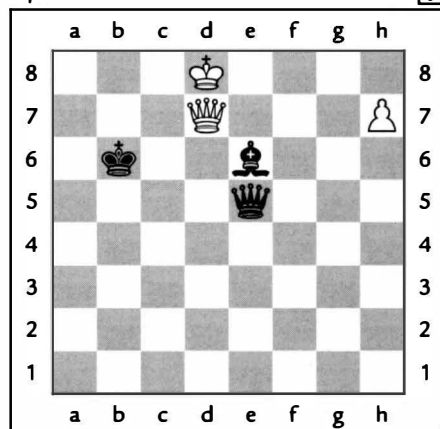
140

?



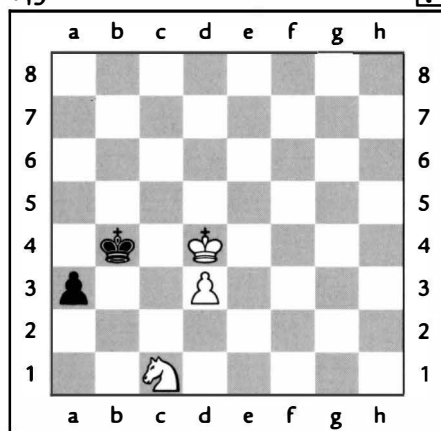
142

?



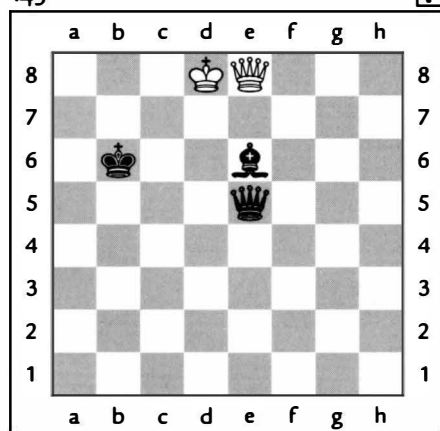
143

?

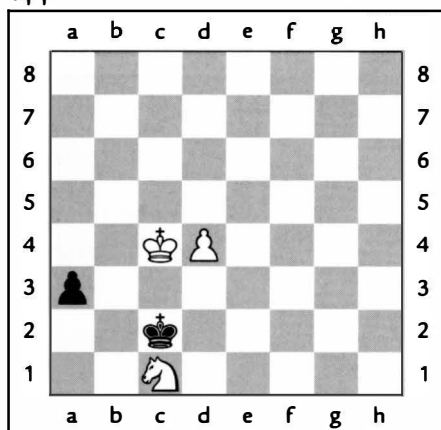


145

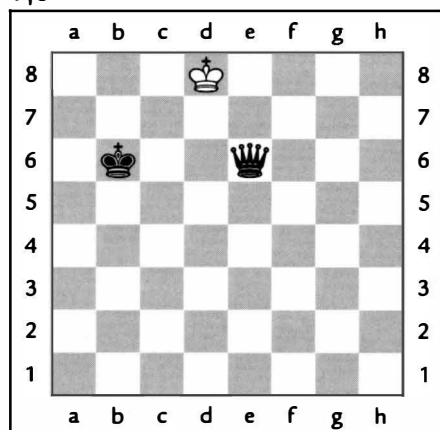
?



144



146



Grigoriev 1931: solution**Diagram 128 on page 126****1. h4! (2 points)**

1. cf7? g5 2. cf6 (2. cg7 cb3 3. cxh7 cc4 4. cg6 g4 5. cg5 cd5 6. $\text{cxg4 ce6} =$) 2. ... g4 3. cg5 cb3 4. cxg4 cc4 5. cg5 cd5 6. ch6 ce6 7. $\text{cxh7 cf7} =$.

1. ... h5

1. ... cb3 (1. ... h6 2. $\text{h5} + -$) 2. cf7 cc4 3. cxg7 cd5 4. cxh7 ce6 5. $\text{cg7} + -$.

Diagram 129 on page 126**2. cf8! (1 point)**

2. cf7? g5! 3. hxg5 h4 4. g6 h3 5. g7 h2 6. $\text{g8}\text{♙}$ $\text{hi}\text{♙} =$.

2. ... g6

2. ... g5 3. hxg5 h4 4. g6 h3 5. g7 h2 6. $\text{g8}\text{♙} + + -$.

Diagram 132 on page 127**3. ce7! + - (1 point)**

3. cg7 g5 4. $\text{hxg5 h4} =$.

3. ... cb3 4. cf6 cc4 5. cxg6 cd5 6. cxh5 ce6 7. $\text{cg6} + -$.

Gurvich 1961: solution**Diagram 130 on page 126****1. cf4! (2 points)**

$\Delta \text{dg5, cg3}$;

1. ch4? cf2 (1. ... cg7 2. dg5 cf2 3. $\text{cxh3} =$) 2. $\text{dg5} +$ (2. $\text{cg3 de4} +$ 3. $\text{cxh3 cg7} + -$) 2. ... cf6 3. $\text{dh7} +$ (3. cxh3 dxc3 4. $\text{cxh3 cf5} + -$) 3. ... $\text{cg7} + -$.

1. ... cf2

1. ... cg7 2. dg5 cf2 3. cg3 cf6 4. $\text{dh7} + =$.

Diagram 131 on page 126**2. cf3! (2 points)**

2. $\text{cg3 de4} +$ 3. $\text{cxh3 cg7} + -$; 2. $\text{dg5} +$ cf6 3. $\text{dh7} +$ $\text{cg7} + -$; 2. ce3 cg7 3. $\text{dg5 ddi} + -$.

2. ... cg7 3. dg5 ch6

3. ... cf6 4. $\text{dh7} + =$.

4. cf7 + =.

Vlasenko 1970: solution**Diagram 133 on page 127**1. Qb2 (2 points)1. Qb7+? Qa5 2. Qb2 e2 ; 1. Qc5? e2 .1. ... Qa5 1. ... e2? 2. Qc4 e1 3. $\text{Qb7\#}$.2. Qc5 e2 3. Qc4+ Qa4 3. ... Qa6 4. Qc6 .**Diagram 135 on page 128**4. Qf3! (2 points)4. Qc6+ Qb3 5. Qd2+ Qc3 6. Qf3 Qxd3= .4. ... e1 5. Qd1+ Qxd1 **Diagram 136 on page 128**6. Qb2+ Qb3 7. Qxd1 a5 7. ... Qc2 8. Qxd4 Qxd1 9. Qc3 +- .**Diagram 139 on page 129**8. Qd5!! (3 points)8. Qxd4? a4 9. Qc3 a3 10. Qe2 Qb2 11. Qc3 Qb3= .8. ... a4 8. ... Qc2 9. Qxd4 Qxd1 (9. ... a4 10. Qc3 +-) 10. Qc3 +- .9. Qxd4 a3 10. Qc3 Qb4 10. ... Qb2 11. Qc4 +- .**Diagram 140 on page 129**11. Qa2+ Qb3 12. Qc1+ Qb4 12. ... Qb2 13. Qc4 Qxc1 14. Qb3 +- .**Diagram 143 on page 130**13. Qd5! (1 point)13. ... Qc3 14. d4 Qc2 15. Qc4 +- .**Diagram 144 on page 130****Kozirev 1978: solution****Diagram 134 on page 127**1. Qe7 1. $\text{Qf8? Qf7\#}$.**Diagram 137 on page 128**1. ... Qe5+ 2. Qd7 (1 point)2. Qf8? Qf6+ 3. Qg8 Qf7+ 4. Qf8 Qe6+ 5. Qe8 Qf7+ 6. $\text{Qd8 Qf8\#}$; 2. $\text{Qd8? Qd6(e8/c7)\#}$.2. ... Qe8+ 3. Qd8 Qf7 $\Delta \text{Qe8(d6/c7)\#}$.**Diagram 138 on page 128**4. Qb2+! (2 points)4. $\text{Qd7? Qc7\#}$.4. ... Qxb2 5. c7+ Qa7 6. c8 Qf6+ 7. Qc7 7. Qd7? Qe6+ +- .7. ... Qe5+ **Diagram 141 on page 129**8. Qd8 (1 point)8. Qd7? Qe6+ +- ; 8. Qc6? Qe8+ +- .8. ... Qb6! $(\Delta \text{Qe8\#})$ **Diagram 142 on page 129**9. Qd7 (1 point)9. Qd7? Qe6+ .9. ... Qe6! **Diagram 145 on page 130**10. h8 Q! (2 points)10. Qd2? Qf6+ 11. Qe8 Qf7+ 12. $\text{Qd8 Qf8\#}$;10. Qxe6+? Qxe6 11. h8 Q Qd6+ 12. $\text{Qe8 (12. Qc8 Qc7\#)}$ 12. ... Qb8+ +- .10. ... Qxh8+ 11. Qe8 Qe5

Diagram 146 on page 130**12. ♖xe6+!** (2 points)

12. ♖e7? ♙d5+ 13. ♖d8 (13. ♖f8 ♜f6+ -+) 13. ... ♜c7#;

12. ♜g6? ♜d6+ 13. ♖e8 ♙d7+ 14. ♖f7 ♙e8+ -+;

12. ♜a4? ♜f6+ 13. ♖e8 ♜f7+ 14. ♖d8 ♜f8+ 15. ♜e8 ♜d6+ -+;

12. ♜f8? ♜c7+ 13. ♖e8 ♜d7#.

12. ... ♜xe6 stalemate

Score table

Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1	_____	12	3	_____	V1	2	_____
2	1	_____	13	3	_____		2	_____
3	2	_____	14	4	_____		3	_____
4	2	_____	15	4	_____		1	_____
5	2	_____	16	5	_____			
6	3	_____				Ko	1	_____
7	3	_____	Gr	2	_____		2	_____
8	3	_____		1	_____		1	_____
9	3	_____		1	_____		1	_____
10	3	_____	Gu	2	_____		2	_____
11	3	_____		2	_____		2	_____
							total	70

Points	Playing Strength
less than 4 points	beginner
4-9 points	ELO 800-1000
10-19 points	ELO 1000-1500
20-29 points	ELO 1500-1800
30-39 points	ELO 1800-2100
40-49 points	ELO 2100-2300
50-59 points	ELO above 2300
60-70 points	ELO above 2400

8 Zugzwang

Let me start with a definition: 'zugzwang, a German word, now anglicised, for a position in which whoever has the move would obtain a worse result than if it were the opponent's turn to play ...' (The Oxford Companion to Chess, Hooper & Whyld).

Zugzwang is a very important element of the endgame. By contrast, in the middlegame such situations are rare; and in the opening, where every tempo is vital to accelerate development, it would be hard to imagine a situation where zugzwang occurs. Having the move is an advantage! The concept of zugzwang is foreign to the opening and middlegame, but with heavy piece exchanges, the course of the game changes.

In his classic book 'Common Sense in Chess' Emanuel Lasker describes 'the three elements that give the endgame its character: the offensive power of the king, the passed pawn and zugzwang. Play in the endgame changes so much, that the player's mental attitude must also be different. A player cannot reckon with massive effects, he becomes more moderate and works with small values. His attacks are no longer great conceptions ... but are more concerned with the exertion of pressure on the enemy pieces, cramping them, and thereby robbing them more and more of their mobility, till finally zugzwang occurs and the defence breaks.'

* * *

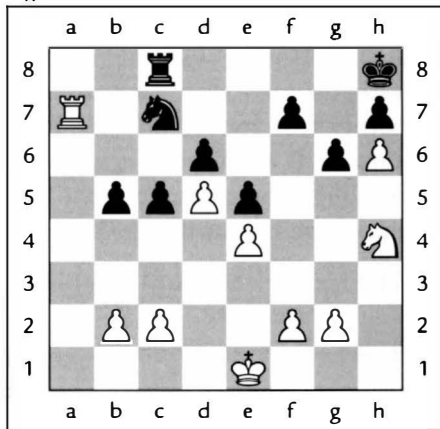
(Diagram 147)

White has a clear advantage: the rook on the seventh rank is so strong that it ties up two enemy pieces. Only Black's king can move. All White has to do is bring the knight into play.

Artur Yusupov – Egon Brestian
Schallaburg 1998

147

□



30. ♖f3 Threatening ♜g5.

30. ... f6 31. g4

White wanted to continue with g4-g5.

31. ... g5

Or 31. ... ♜g8 32. g5 ♜f7 33. ♜f1, followed by ♜g2-g3-g4, g×f6 and ♜g5.

32. ♜d2 ♜g8 33. ♜f1 ♜f7 34. ♜g3!!

This is more precise than 34. ♜e3 ♜e7 35. ♜f5+ ♜d7, and Black can unpin himself with ♜a8.

34. ... ♜e7 35. ♜h5 ♜f7

Now Black's king must also assist in defence by protecting the pawn on f6.

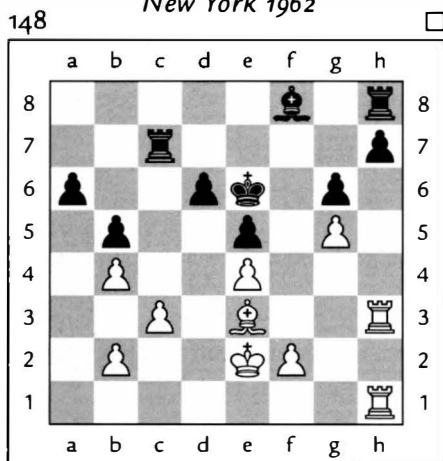
36. ♜g7

And Black resigned. If 36. ... ♜g6, then 37. ♜f5! +-. And after 36. ... ♜e7 there follows 37. ♜e6 and Black is in zugzwang. He can still move his pawns for a few moves, but then that's it.

Lasker beautifully described a typical zugzwang position: 'Both sides have each piece & each still mobile pawn in their best, most efficient, attacking & defensive position. The reserves have all been deployed, each piece has its purpose, and it carries out that purpose in its assigned place. But now a move must be made, and that privilege turns into the opposite. Moving will mean giving up the desired position for an inferior one. One would rather not move, but the laws of chess demand & command it without demur. The obligation to move is the reason that the position can no longer be held.'

Robert Fischer – Samuel Reshevsky

New York 1962



Fischer played the endgame so skillfully that his opponent has been left without a decent move: the rooks have to protect the h-pawn, king and bishop cannot move onto the seventh rank, and the rook on c7 has to be ready to protect the pawn on a6 (it has to stay on c7 so that it can protect the a-pawn from c6). There followed a simple waiting move.

30. ♖h4!

Now Black is in zugzwang and has to open the position himself.

30. ... d5

Or 30. ... ♖c4 31. f3 ♖c7 32. ♕f2! and Black has no other move left than 32. ... d5, with a similar position to the game.

31. ♖a1!

Fischer's technique is perfect. 31. e×d5+ ♕×d5 32. ♖d1+ was weaker because of ♕e6 33. ♖d8 ♖g7! With this intermezzo, Fischer avoids this possibility.

31. ... ♖c6

Or 31. ... d×e4 32. ♖×a6+ ♕d5 33. ♖b6 +- wins.

32. e×d5+ ♕×d5 33. ♖d1+ ♕e6 34. ♖d8 ♕f5

If 34. ... ♖c7, then 35. ♖a8 +- wins.

35. ♖a8 ♖e6 36. ♖h3!

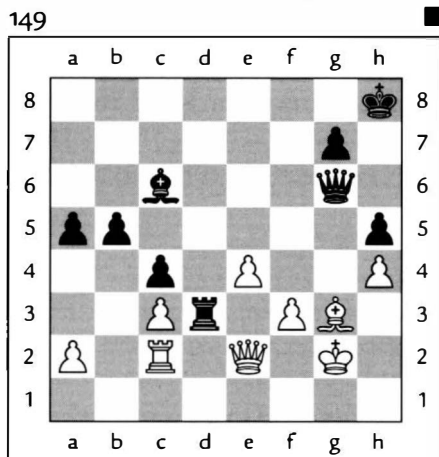
Threatening simply 37. ♖f3.

36. ... ♖g7 37. ♖×h8 ♕×h8 38. ♖×h7 ♖e8 39. ♖f7+ ♕g4 40. f3+

And White won the game.

Svetozar Gligorić – Vassily Smyslov

Amsterdam 1971



Black has the more active pieces and a better king position. Here, zugzwang also leads to a quick win.

41. ... ♖h7! ♘

Every move worsens White's desperate situation.

42. ♖c1

Or 42. ♖h2? ♖xf3 43. ♗xf3 ♕xe4-+; 42. ♗e1 ♗f6-+; 42. ♖d2 ♕xe4 43. ♖xd3 cxd3!-+; 42. ♗f2 ♖xf3-+; 42. ♖f2 ♗f6-+.

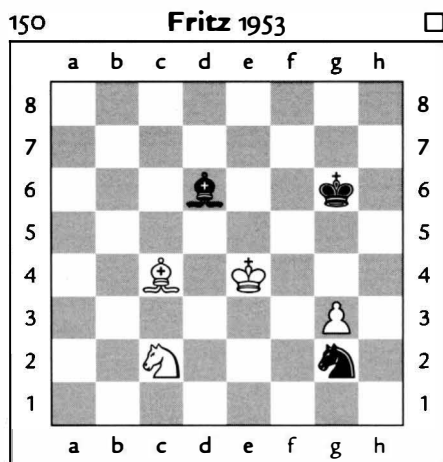
42. ... ♗f6 43. ♕e1

43. ♖d1 ♗xc3-+ would be no better.

43. ... ♗f4!

and White resigned because of 44. ♖c2 ♖xf3-+.

Zugzwang plays a central role in the endgame. There is hardly an endgame where the motif does not come into play. Opposition, triangulation and coordinate squares in pawn endgames are the most well-known examples. Positions with reciprocal zugzwang are particularly interesting. This idea is demonstrated in the next study.



The only chance for White to win lies in the poor position of Black's knight.

1. ♖f3 ♖h4+

Black wants to sacrifice the knight for the last pawn and thereby reach a draw.

2. g×h4 ♖h5

At first glance, White must lose the h-pawn. But he hasn't yet exhausted all his tactical resources.

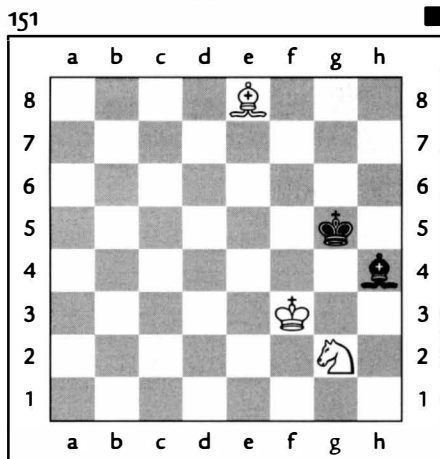
3. ♖e3! ♕e7

If 3. ... ♖xh4, then 4. ♖f5+.

Now the point of the study: White can no longer save the pawn, but ...

4. ♖g2! ♕xh4 5. ♖f7+ ♖g5 6. ♕e8

and Black is in zugzwang. The final position deserves a diagram.



The limited scope of Black's bishop is evident. The king has to protect the bishop, but it too has run out of squares.

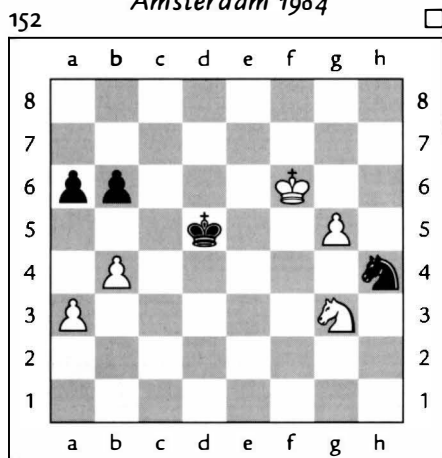
Interestingly enough, it is a reciprocal zugzwang. Black is in zugzwang because of the poor position of his pieces. White is in zugzwang because his pieces are placed *too perfectly*. The knight has to attack the enemy bishop and cover the e1 square, the king

takes away the f2 and g3 squares from the bishop and the g4 square from Black's king. The bishop has to control the h5 square, and it is placed perfectly on e8. If White were to move, 7. Bf7 would not work because Black's king attacks the bishop and the trap falls apart.

Recognising in good time that a zugzwang position is about to occur is a great skill.

Jan Timman – Hans Ree

Amsterdam 1984



1. a4!

1. $\text{Qf5?!$ Qg2 2. Qe3+? (2. g6 Qf4 3. g7 Qh5+) would have been incorrect due to 2. ... Qxe3 3. g6 Qd6 4. g7 Qd5+ .

1. ... b5 2. a5

and Black is in zugzwang.

The reason why d5 was the best square for Black's king will soon become evident.

2. ... Qc4 3. Qf5 Qg2 4. Qe5!

and Black can no longer halt the g-pawn.

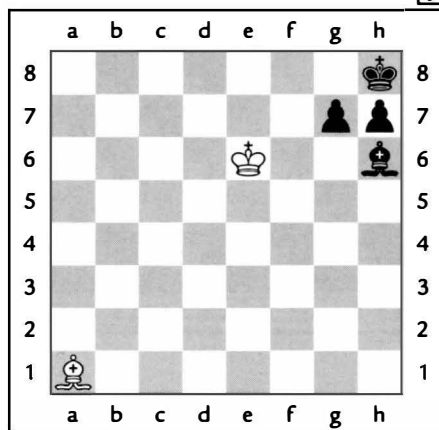
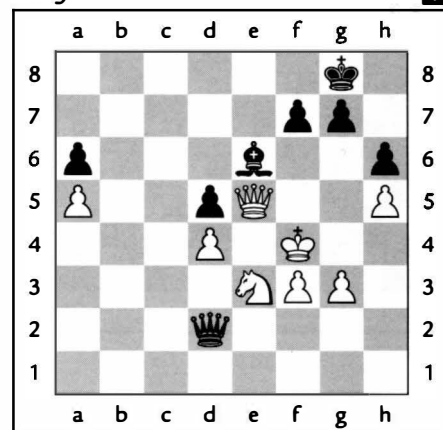
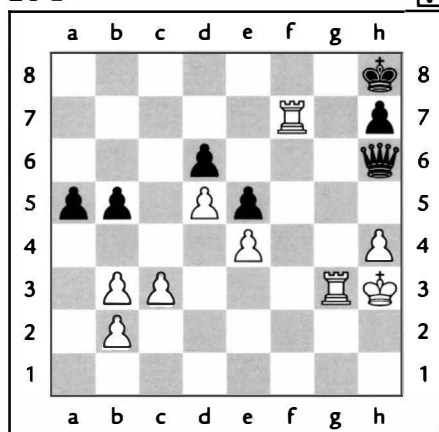
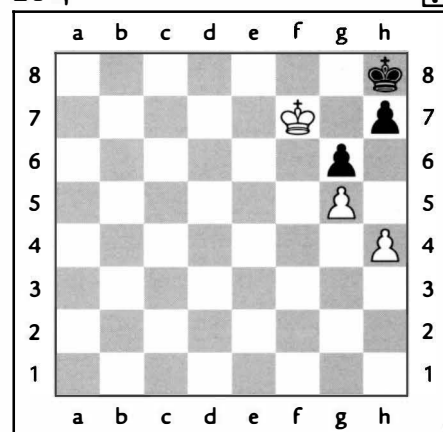
* * *

Here are some important criteria that can lead to zugzwang:

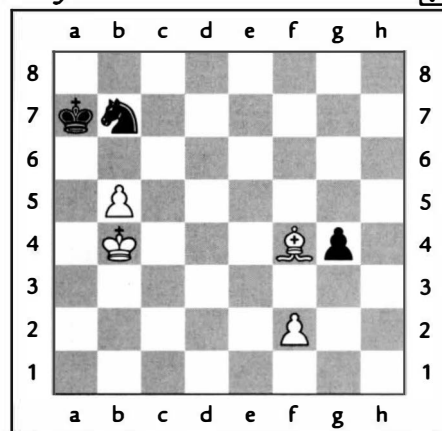
- 1) immobile pieces;
- 2) the position of pieces and pawns are optimal and cannot be improved;
- 3) overloaded pieces.

Zugzwang is an exceptionally useful weapon that should not be lacking from our arsenal in the endgame.

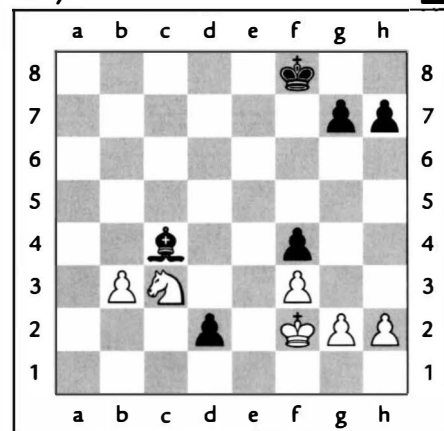

Exercises (solutions p. 147-151)

E8-1 * ?

E8-3 * ?

E8-2 * ?

E8-4 * ?


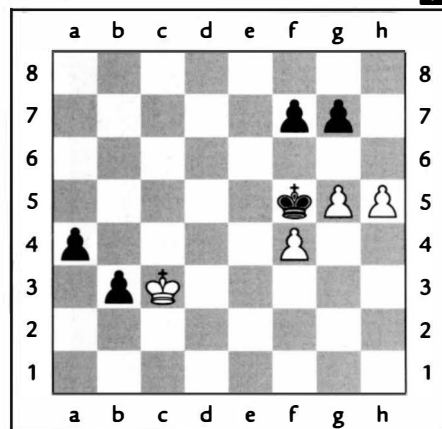
E8-5 * ?



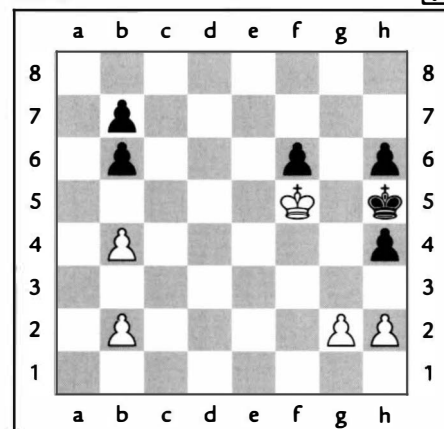
E8-7 * ?



E8-6 * ?



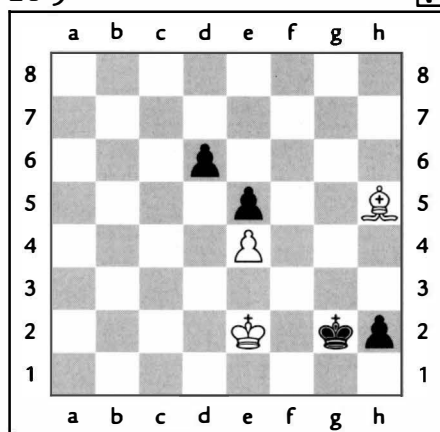
E8-8 * ?



E8-9

**

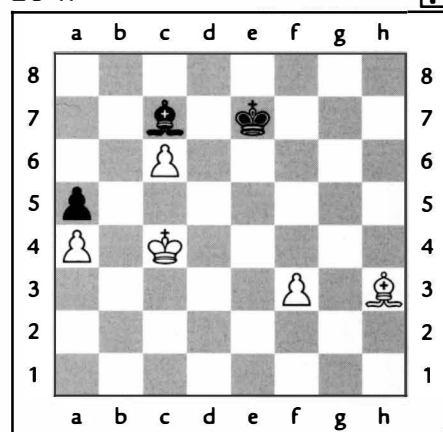
?



E8-11

**

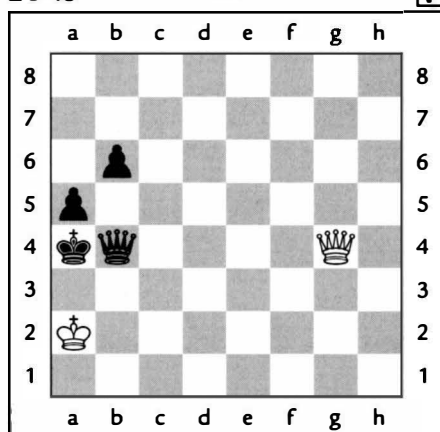
?



E8-10

**

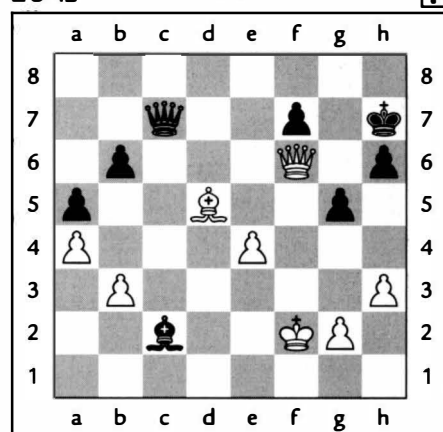
?



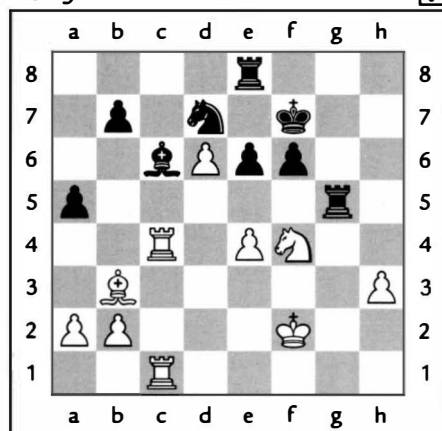
E8-12

**

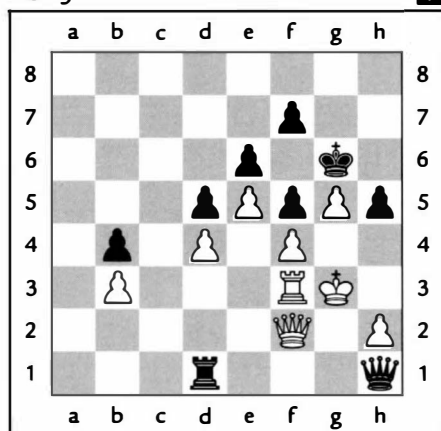
?



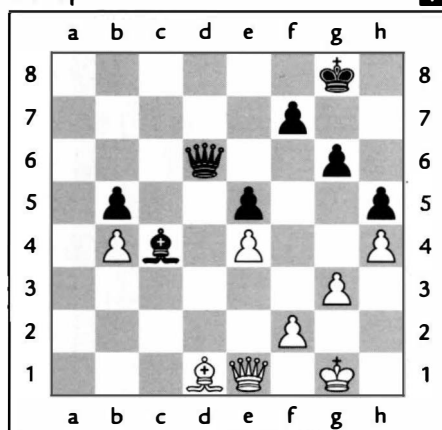
E8-13 ** ?



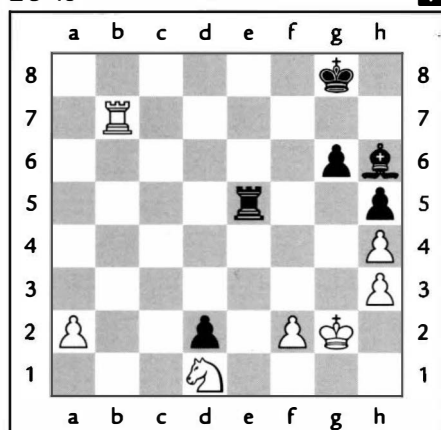
E8-15 ** ?



E8-14 ** ?

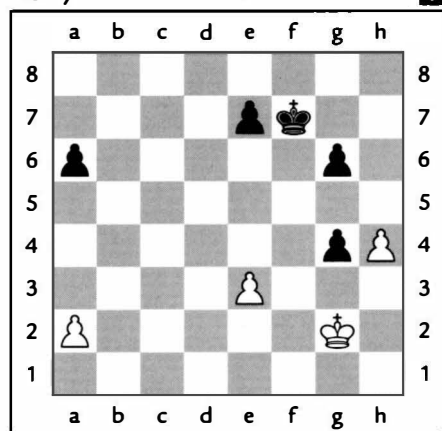


E8-16 *** ?



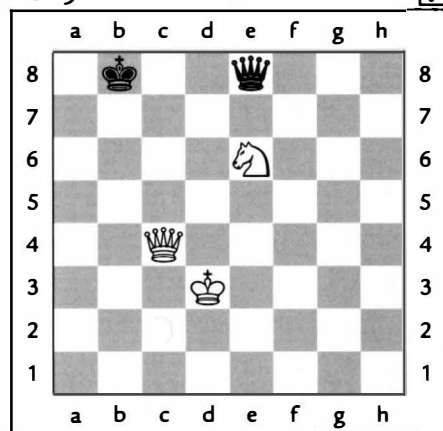
E8-17

?



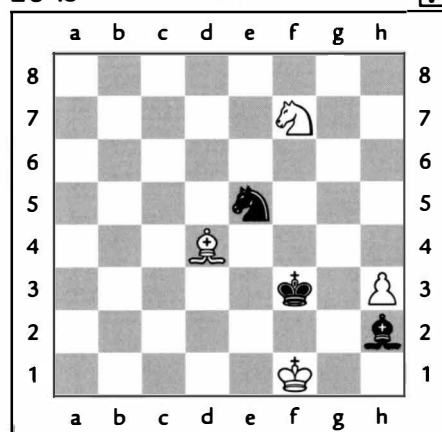
E8-19

?



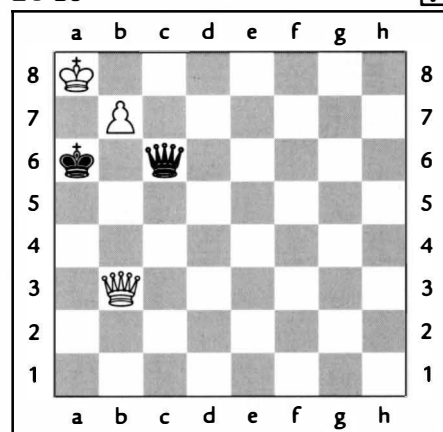
E8-18

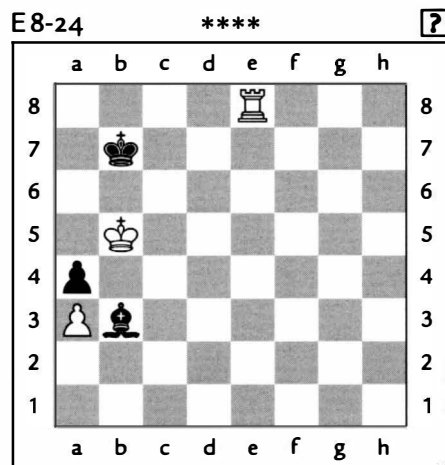
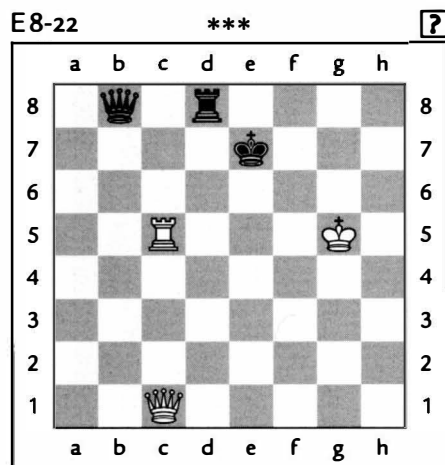
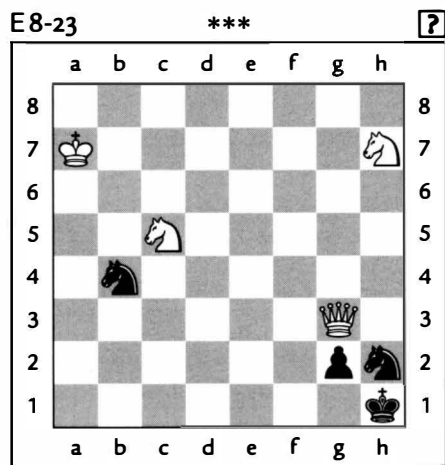
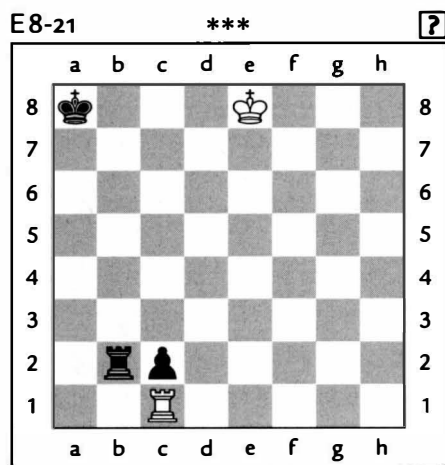
?



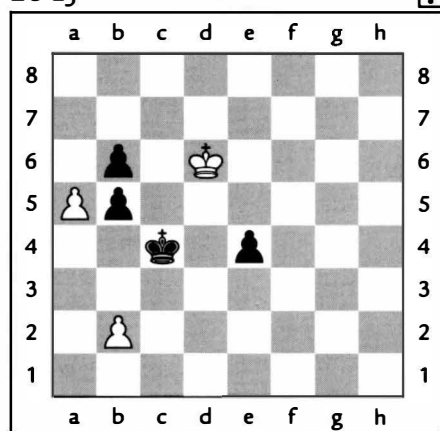
E8-20

?

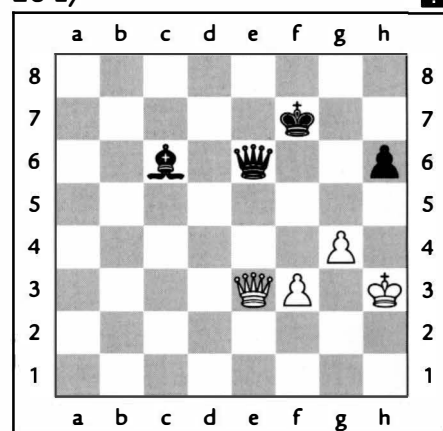




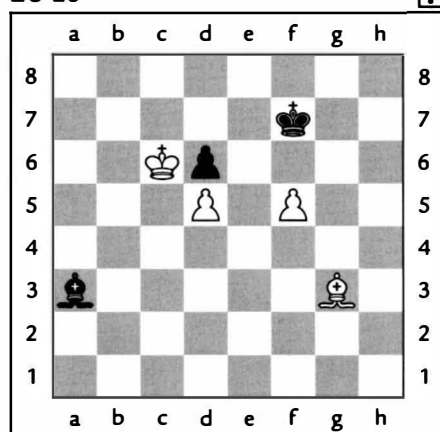
E8-25



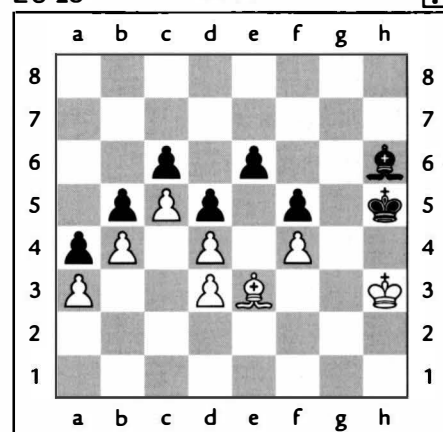
E8-27



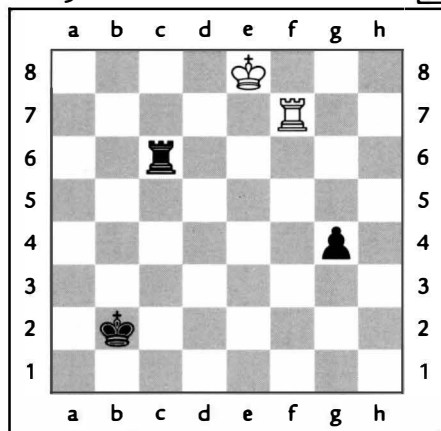
E8-26



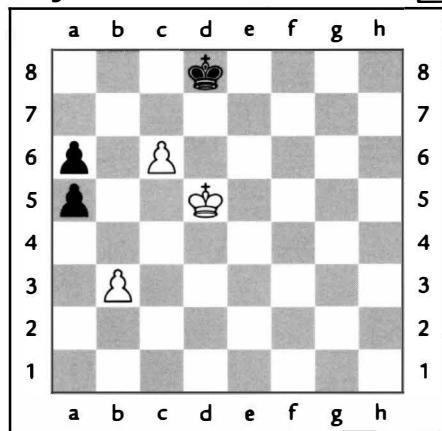
E8-28



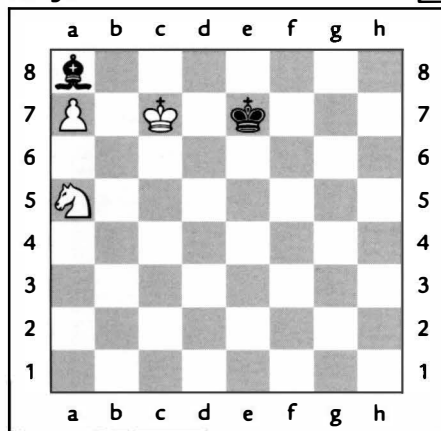
E8-29 ***** ?



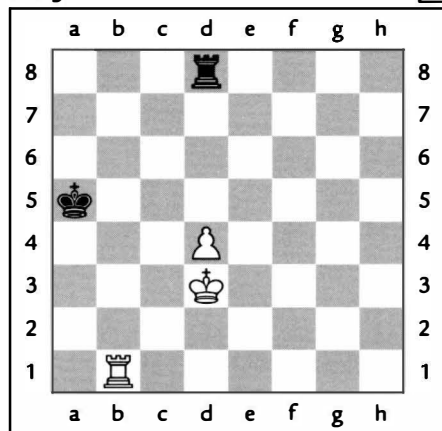
E8-31 ***** ?



E8-30 **** ?



E8-32 ***** ?



Solutions

□ E8-1

Illustrative example

1. ♖f7 ♘... 2. ♙xg7#1-0.

□ E8-2

Zejbot – Levin, St. Petersburg 1900

1. ♖g5 ♘1-0.

□ E8-3

Szily – Balogh, corr

1. ... ♖h7 ♘-+ ♘-1 [2. g4 ♙h2#; 2. ♙d6 ♙xd4#].

□ E8-4

Illustrative example

1. ♖f8! ♘h6 [1. ... h5 2. ♖f7 ♖h7 3. ♖f6 ♘] 2. h5! ♖h7 [2. ... g×h5 3. g6 +-] 3. ♖f7 g×h5 4. g6+ +-.

□ E8-5

Yusupov – Anand, Linares 1992

1. ♙c7 +- 1-0 [1. ... ♖a8 2. b6 ♘].

□ E8-6

Gol'berg – Zhuk, Leningrad 1934

47. ... ♖e6? Instead 47. ... f6! 48. g6 ♖e6 49. ♖b2 = was necessary. 48. h6! +- g×h6 49. g×h6 ♖f6 50. f5 ♘1-0.

□ E8-7

Pirrot – Yusupov, German Cup 1992

32. ... ♙d3 ♘ 33. g3 g5 34. h4 h6 35. h×g5 h×g5 36. g×f4 g×f4 +- White resigned because of 37. ♖d1 (or 37. ♖g2 ♙e2 38. ♖h3 ♙×f3 +-) 37. ... ♖e7 38. ♖b2 ♖d6 39. ♖d1 ♖c5 40. ♖b2 ♖b5 41. ♖d1 ♖b4 +- ♘-1.

□ E8-8

Moritz Lewitt, 1896

1. b5! h3 2. g4+ ♖h4 3. b3 ♘h5 4. g5! f×g5 5. b4 g4 6. ♖f4 ♘ 7. h×g3#1-0.

□ E8-9

Ercole Del Rio, (1750)

1. ♙f3+ ♖g1 2. ♙h1!! ♖×h1 3. ♖f1 ♘d5 4. e×d5 e4 5. d6 e3 6. d7 e2+ 7. ♖×e2 ♖g1 8. d8 ♙h1 ♙ 9. ♙d4+ ♖h2 10. ♙h4+ ♖g2 11. ♙g4+ ♖h2 12. ♖f2 +- 1-0.

□ E8-10

Ojanen, A. 1943

13. ♙d7+ ♙b5 14. ♙d4+ ♙b4 15. ♙d3 ♘+-b5 [15. ... ♙f4 16. ♙b3#; 15. ... ♙b5 16. ♙a3#] 16. ♙c2+ ♙b3+ 17. ♙×b3# 1-0.

□ E8-11

Baramidze – Smeets, Pulvermühle 2001

In order to win this endgame White has to cross the defensive line b8–h2 with one of his pawns. Without both a-pawns the position would be drawn, but here zugzwang helps.

55. ♖c5 ♘d8

If 55. ... ♖f6, then 56. f4! ♙×f4 57. ♖b6 followed by 58. c7, and White wins.

56. ♖d5 ♖e7 57. ♖e4

and Black cannot block the f-pawn.

57. ... ♖f6 58. f4 ♙b8 59. ♙d7 1-0.

□ E8-12

Andersson – McNab, corr 1992

1. ♖e2! ♘ [1. ♙×f7? ♙×e4; 1. ♖f3? ♙d1+; 1. g3? ♙b1 2. ♖f3 ♙c2 3. ♙×f7 (3. ♙×f7+ ♙×f7+ 4. ♙×f7 ♖g7 ♖f6–e5) 3. ... ♙d1+ 4. ♖g2 ♙c2+ 5. ♖g1 ♙×e4 =] 1. ... ♙b1 2. ♖f3 ♙c2 3. ♙×f7 ♙d1+ 4. ♖f2 ♙c2+ 5. ♖g1 ♙×e4 6. ♙e6 +- ♙e3+ 7. ♖h1 ♙f4 8. ♙f5+ ♖g8 9. ♙g6+ ♖f8 10. ♙×h6+ ♖f7 11. ♙e6+ ♖f8 12. ♙c8+ ♖g7 13. ♙d7+ ♖f6 14. ♙e6+ Black resigned because of 14. ... ♖g7 15. ♙e7+ ♖g8 16. ♙e6+ ♖h8 17. ♙d8+ ♖g7 18. ♙×d1 +- 1-0.

□ E8-13

Smyslov – Eingorn, Moscow 1988

The former world champion finds an elegant way to pin his opponent's pieces.

42. Bxc6! bxc6 43. Bxc6 Be5 [43. ... Bc5
44. $\text{Ba6} + -$] 44. Bc7 Bd8 45. Qxe6! Bxe6 46.
 h4 $\text{O} + -$ 1-0.

□ E8-14

Miles – Yusupov, Linares 1997

39. ... Wd4?

Black overlooks a chance to dominate the enemy pieces. The powerful 39. ... Wd3! was correct:

A) 40. $\text{c}2$ Wb1 41. Wd2 $\text{Wxe4} + -$;
B) 40. f3 $\text{Wd4} +$ 41. $\text{c}2$ $\text{Wb2} +$ 42. $\text{c}1$ $\text{c}7$ O
43. g4 Wc1 44. $\text{c}2$ g5 45. $\text{h} \times \text{g5}$ h4 46. e2
 $\text{Wxe1} +$ 47. $\text{c} \times \text{e1}$ $\text{e} \times \text{e2}$ 48. $\text{c} \times \text{e2}$ $\text{c}6 - +$.

40. e3

and White saved the game.

□ E8-15

Nimzowitsch – Capablanca, New York 1927

45. ... Bc1! O 46. Be3 [46. Wg2 $\text{Bgi} - +$; 46.
 $\text{c}4$ Bc2 47. Wxc2 $\text{Wxf3} - +$; 46. We2 $\text{Wgi} - +$;
46. Wd2 $\text{Bgi} - +$; 46. Bd3 Bfi 47. We2 $\text{Wgi} +$ 48.
 Wg2 $\text{h4} +$ 49. $\text{c}3$ $\text{Wxg2} +$ 50. $\text{c} \times \text{g2}$ $\text{Bxf4} - +$]
46. ... $\text{Bfi} - +$ 0-1.

□ E8-16

Spassky – Timman, Tilburg 1978

37. ... Ba5?

Black overlooks the decisive regrouping that would have left his opponent with almost no active move:

37. ... Be1! 38. Bb1 e4! (38. ... e8 39. a4 e3
40. a5 e1 would have been weaker because of 41.
 c3) 39. a4 c7 and the bishop blocks the pawn
at a5 . White cannot prevent the penetration of
the king from g8 to c2 .

In the game Spassky defended tenaciously and gained the draw.

38. Bb2 Ba4 39. Bb6! $\text{c}7$ 40. Bd6 Bxa2
41. $\text{c}3$ Ba1 42. $\text{c}2$ Ba4 43. c3! Bxh4 44.

c1! Bxh3 45. $\text{c} \times \text{d2}$ e4 46. $\text{c}4!$ $\text{c}7$ 47.
 Bd3 Bh4 48. $\text{Bd7} +$ $\text{c}6$ 49. $\text{c}3$ e5 50. $\text{c}3$
 $\text{Bf4} +$ 51. $\text{c}2$ Bg4 52. $\text{c}3$ $\text{c}5$ 53. Be7 $\text{c}6$
54. $\text{Bh7} = [\Delta \text{c}5] \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}$.

□ E8-17

Taimanov – Botvinnik, SSSR 1967

38. ... g5! [38. ... $\text{c}6$ 39. $\text{c}3$ $\text{c}5$ 40. $\text{e4} +$
 $\text{c} \times \text{e4}$ 41. $\text{c} \times \text{g4}$ e5 42. $\text{c}5 =$] 39. h5 $\text{c}7$ 40.
 $\text{c}3$ $\text{c}7!!$ 41. $\text{c} \times \text{g4}$ $\text{c}6$ 42. e4 White re-
signed because of the following line: [42. ... a5
(42. ... e5? 43. a3! a5 44. $\text{a4} - -$) 43. a4 (43. e5
 a4 44. e6 a3 O) 43. ... e5 O 44. $\text{c}5$ $\text{c} \times \text{h5}$ 45.
 $\text{c} \times \text{e5}$ g4 46. $\text{c}4$ (46. $\text{c}4$ g3 47. $\text{c}3$ $\text{c}4$ 48.
 e5 $\text{c}3$ 49. e6 g2 50. $\text{c}2$ $\text{c}2$ 51. e7 g1 $\text{W} - -$)
46. ... $\text{c}4$ 47. e5 g3 48. e6 g2 49. e7 g1 W 50.
 e8 $\text{Wf2} +$ 51. $\text{c}5$ $\text{We3} - +$] 0-1.

□ E8-18

Alexander Hildebrand, 1957

1. $\text{d}5 +$ $\text{c}4$ 2. $\text{e} \times \text{e5} +$ $\text{c} \times \text{e5}$ 3. $\text{d}3 +$ $\text{c}4$ 4.
 $\text{c}2!$ $\text{e3} +$ 5. $\text{c}2$ O 1-0.

□ E8-19

Henri Rinck, 1917

1. $\text{Wc7} +!$ $\text{c}8$ 2. $\text{Wa5} +!$ $\text{c}7$ [2. ... $\text{c}8$ 3.
 $\text{Wb6} + -$] 3. $\text{d}5 +!$ $\text{c}8$ [3. ... $\text{c}6$ 4. $\text{Wa4} + -$
; 3. ... $\text{c}8$ 4. $\text{Wa8} + -$] 4. $\text{Wb6} +$ $\text{c}8$ 5. $\text{Wb7} +$
 $\text{c}8$ 6. $\text{c}2!$ O 1-0.

□ E8-20

Louis Van Vliet, 1888

1. Wb4! O Wh1

[1. ... Wd5 2. $\text{Wa4} +$ $\text{c}6$ 3. $\text{Wb3} +$ Wxb3 4.
 b8 $\text{W} + -$;

1. ... Wf3 2. $\text{Wa4} +$ $\text{c}6$ 3. $\text{Wb3} +$ Wxb3 4.
 b8 $\text{W} + -$;

1. ... Wg2 2. $\text{Wa3} +$ $\text{c}5$ 3. $\text{Wb2} +$ Wxb2 4.
 b8 $\text{W} + -$;

1. ... $\text{We8} +$ 2. b8 $\text{c} \times \text{b8} +$ 3. $\text{Wxb8} - -$]

2. $\text{Wa3} +$ $\text{c}6$

[2. ... $\text{c}5$ 3. $\text{Wb2} +$ $\text{c}4$ (3. ... $\text{c}4$ 4. $\text{Wa2} +$
 $\text{c}4$ 5. $\text{Wb1} +$ Wxb1 6. b8 $\text{W} +$) 4. $\text{c}7$ $\text{Wgi} +$ 5.

♙a6 ♖g6+ 6. ♗b6 +-]

3. ♗b2+ ♙c7

[3. ... ♙a6 4. ♗a2+ ♙b5 5. ♗b1+ ♗xb1 6. b8♗+ +-;

3. ... ♙c5 4. ♙a7 ♗h7 5. ♗b6+ ♙c4 6. ♙a6 +-]

4. ♗h2+! ♗xh2 5. b8♗+ 1-0.

□ E8-21

Josef Vancura, 1926

1. ♙e7!

[1. ♙d7? ♙b7 2. ♙d6 ♙b6 3. ♙d5 ♙b5 4. ♙d4 ♙b4 5. ♙d3 ♙b3 6. ♙d2 ♗a2 ○]

The key position of this study: reciprocal zugzwang.

[7. ♗e1 (7. ♙d3 ♗a8 -+) 7. ... ♗a8 -+]

1. ... ♙a7

[1. ... ♙b7 2. ♙d7!]

2. ♙e6! ♙a6 3. ♙e5 ♙a5 4. ♙e4 ♙a4 5. ♙e3 ♙a3 6. ♙d2

[6. ♙e2 ♗a2 (6. ... ♙a2 7. ♙d2) 7. ♙d3 ♙b3 8. ♙d2 ○; 6. ♙e4 ♗a2 (6. ... ♙a2 7. ♙e3 =) 7. ♙d3 =]

6. ... ♙b3 7. ♙d3 ♗a2 8. ♙d2 ○ ♗a8 9. ♗xc2 = ½-½.

□ E8-22

Henri Rinck, 1926

1. ♗c7+ ♗d7 [1. ... ♙e8 2. ♗c6+ +-; 1. ... ♙e6 2. ♗e3+ ♙d5 3. ♗d3+ ♙e6 4. ♗e4+ ♙d6 5. ♗c6+ ♙d7 6. ♗e6#; 1. ... ♙d6 2. ♗c5+ ♙e6 3. ♗e7#] 2. ♗c5+ ♙d8! [2. ... ♙e8 3. ♗e5+ ♙d8 4. ♗xd7+ +-] 3. ♙h6! ○ [3. ... ♗xc7 4. ♗f8+ +-; 3. ... ♗xc7 4. ♗f8#; 3. ... ♗a8 4. ♗f8+ ♙xc7 5. ♗xa8; 3. ... ♗b2 4. ♗c8#.] 1-0.

□ E8-23

Abram Gurvich, 1927

1. ♙e4! ♙d3 [1. ... g1♗+ 2. ♙f2+ +-] 2. ♗f2!! ♙xf2 3. ♙g3+! ♙g1 4. ♙g5 ○ ♙hg4 [4. ... ♙d3 5. ♙h3#] 5. ♙f3# 1-0.

□ E8-24

Kasparov – Yusupov, Linares 1993

102. ♗e7+?

White does not find the right plan. He tries to force the enemy king from the a-pawn, but he can't drive it far enough away. The winning strategy was completely different: White should have used the poor position of Black's king at the edge of the board to force zugzwang. 102. ♗d8! ♙c7 103. ♗d4 ♙b7 104. ♗d7+ ♙c8 105. ♙c6 ♙c2 106. ♗d4 ♙b3 (106. ... ♙b8 107. ♙b6 +-) 107. ♙b6 was correct and Black is in zugzwang.

102. ... ♙c8 103. ♙c6 ♙d8! = 104. ♗d7+ ♙e8 105. ♙c7 ♙c2 106. ♗d2 ♙b3 107. ♗e2+ ♙f7 108. ♙d6 ♙c4 109. ♗e7+ ♙f8 110. ♗e4 ♙b3 111. ♙d7 ♙f7 112. ♗f4+ ♙g6 113. ♙d6 ♙g5 114. ♙e5 ♙g6 115. ♗f3 ♙g7 116. ♗f6 ♙c4 117. ♙f5 ♙b3 118. ♙g5 ♙c2 ½-½.

□ E8-25

Leonid Kubbel, 1927

1. a6! e3 2. a7 e2 3. a8♗ e1♗ 4. ♗d5+ ♙b4 5. ♗d3 ○ ♗a1 [5. ... ♗c1 6. ♗a3+ ♙c4 7. b3+ +-; 5. ... ♙a4 6. ♗a3#; 5. ... ♗f2 6. ♗c3+ ♙a4 7. ♗a3#.] 6. ♗c3+ ♙a4 7. b3+ +- 1-0.

□ E8-26

Yusupov – Kotronias, Bundesliga 1996/97

82. ♙xd6?

This only leads to a draw.

Instead, the winning plan runs as follows: transfer the bishop to d8 (with the help of the king), play the pawn to f6, the bishop to e7 and win the d-pawn without losing the f-pawn. To achieve this, White has to force Black into zugzwang.

[82. ♙h4!

A) 82. ... ♙c5?! 83. ♙d7 ♙a3 84. ♙e7 ♙c5 85. f6 ♙a3 (85. ... ♙d4 86. ♙xd6 +-) 86. ♙xd6 +-; B) 82. ... ♙e8 83. ♙c7! ♙b4 84. ♙g5 ○ ♙c5 85. ♙d8! (85. ♙c8 ♙b6) 85. ... ♙b4 86. ♙c8 ♙c5 (86. ... ♙c3 87. f6 ♙e5 88. ♙e7 ♙g3 89. ♙c7 ♙e5 90. ♙c6 ○ ♙f7 91. ♙d7 ○) 87. f6 ♙b4 88.

♙e7 ♖c3 89. ♜c7 ♙e5 90. ♜c6 ♜f7 91. ♜d7 ♖g3 (91. ... ♙b2 92. ♜xd6) 92. ♙xd6 +-]

82. ... ♙b2 83. ♙g3 ♜f6 84. d6 ♜xf5 85. ♙h4 ♖c3 86. d7 ♙a5 87. ♜d6 ♜g6 88. ♜e7 ... and after ten more moves a draw was agreed. ½-½.

□ E8-27

Piket – Adams, Wijk aan Zee 2001

61. ♜xe6+ ♜xe6 62. ♜h4 ♙e8 63. f4 ♖

A situation of reciprocal zugzwang. White to move would lose because of 64. ♜g3 ♜d5 65. ♜h4 ♜e4 oder 65. g5 h5 66. f5 ♜e5 67. g6 ♜xf5 68. g7 ♙f7. This endgame is analysed in Mark Dvoretsky's book 'School of Chess Excellence 1. Endgame Analysis'.

63. ... ♙f7 64. ♜g3 ♜d5 65. g5

The waiting move 63. ... ♙f7 only worsened Black's position: after 65. ... h5 66. f5 ♜e5 67. g6 the bishop is attacked.

½-½.

□ E8-28

Földi – Lukács, Hungary 1975

A typical zugzwang position. White has to protect the f4 and d4 pawns and to defend the h4 square. Both kings are ideally placed. It isn't difficult to find corresponding squares for the bishops (reciprocal zugzwang positions): f6–f2, f8–f2 or d2.

59. ♙d2?

59. ♜g3? ♙f8 60. ♜h3 ♙e7 61. ♙f2 is bad because of ♙f6 ♖.

Correct was 59. ♙c1!! ♙f8 (59. ... ♙g7 60. ♙e3!) 60. ♙d2! ♖ ♙e7 61. ♙e1 ♙d8 62. ♙g3 (62. ♙f2?? ♙f6 ♖) 62. ... ♙f6 63. ♙f2 ♖ =.

59. ... ♙f8! ♖ 60. ♙e1

[60. ♙e3 ♙e7 61. ♙f2 ♙f6 ♖]

60. ... ♙g7 61. ♙c3

[61. ♙f2 ♙f6 ♖]

61. ... ♙f6 62. ♜g3!!

[62. ♙b2 ♙h4 +-]

62. ... ♙h8?!

[♖62. ... ♙e7 63. ♙d2 (63. ♜h3 ♙h4 64. ♙d2 ♙f2 65. ♙c3 ♙e3 66. ♜g3 ♙c1 -+; 63. ♙b2 ♙h4+ 64. ♜f3 ♙e1) 63. ... ♙h4+ 64. ♜f3 ♙f6 65. ♙e3 ♜h4 -+]

63. ♙a1 ♙g7 64. ♙b2 ♙f8 65. ♙c1 ♙e7 66. ♙d2 ♙h4+ 67. ♜f3

[67. ♜h3 ♙f2 68. ♙c3 ♙e3 69. ♜g3 ♙c1 -+]

67. ... ♙f6 68. ♙e3 ♜h4

The king's breakthrough decides the game.

69. ♙f2+ ♜h3 70. ♙e3 ♙h4 71. ♙d2 ♜h2

72. ♙c3 ♜g1 73. ♙d2 ♙f2 74. ♙c1 ♜f1!

[74. ... ♙xd4 75. ♙e3+ ♙xe3 76. ♜xe3 ♜f1 77. ♜d4 ♜e2 78. ♜e5 ♜xd3 79. ♜d6 d4 80. ♜xc6 =]

75. ♙b2 ♙e1

[75. ... ♙h4 76. ♙c3 ♙e1 -+]

76. ♙a1

[76. ♜e3 ♜g2 ♙h4, ♜g3-g4, ♙g3 -+]

76. ... ♙d2 77. ♜g3 ♜e2 78. ♜h4 ♙xf4 79. ♜h5 ♙d2 80. ♜g6 f4 0-1.

□ E8-29

Nikolay Grigoriev, 1937

1. ♜f5!

If 1. ♜g7 ♙c4 2. ♜d7 (2. ♜g5 ♙f4! 3. ♜e7 ♜c2 4. ♜e6 ♜d2 5. ♜e5 ♜e3! 6. ♜g8 ♜f3 -+), then 2. ... ♙e4! 3. ♜d6 ♜c2 4. ♜d5 ♜d3! 5. ♙a7 ♜e3 6. ♙a3+ ♜f4 -+.

To understand this endgame let's examine another move: 1. ♙f4 g3 2. ♙g4 ♙c3 3. ♜f7 ♜c2 4. ♜g6 ♜d2 5. ♜h5 ♜e2 6. ♜h4 ♜f2 7. ♜h3 ♙f3! ♖. Reciprocal zugzwang, an important motif in this endgame. (White has to get this position with himself to move. Then after 8. ... ♙f8 he can save himself with a stalemate combination: 9. ♙f4+! ♙xf4 stalemate.) 8. ♜g7 ♙f8 -+.

1. ... g3

[1. ... ♜c3 2. ♜g5 ♙c4 3. ♜f7 ♜d3 4. ♜g6! ♜e3 5. ♜h5! ♜f3 6. ♜h4 ♙f4 7. ♙a5 g3+ 8. ♜h3 =]

2. ♜g5 ♙c3 3. ♜f7! ♜c2 4. ♜g6 ♜d2 5. ♜h5 ♜e2 6. ♜h4 ♜f2 7. ♜h3 ♙f3

[7. ... ♙a3 8. ♜g8]

8. ♙g4 ♖ ♙f8 9. ♙f4+ ♙xf4 stalemate

□ E8-30

Bernhard Horwitz, 1885

9. ♖c8!

e7 is the ideal square for Black. Therefore White waits. [9. ♖b8? = ♜d8 10. ♜b7+ ♜d7 ⊖]

9. ... ♜e8

[9. ... ♜d6 10. ♖b8 ♜d7 11. ♜b7 ⊖]

The important reciprocal zugzwang.

10. ♜c4! ♜e7

[10. ... ♜h1 11. ♜d6+ followed by ♜b7]

11. ♖b8 ♜d8

[11. ... ♜d7 12. ♜b6+ +-]

12. ♜a5 ♜d7 13. ♜b7! ⊖ ♜c6 14. ♜xa8 ♜c7 15. ♜d6 +- 1-0.

□ E8-31

Nikolay Grigoriev, 1933

2. ♜c4!

The key squares: b6 and d7.

The corresponding squares: 1) c5-c7; 2) d5-d8; 3) d6-c8; c4-c8; d4-c8.

2. ♜d4! ♜c8 3. ♜c4! +- also wins, but not 2. ♜d6 ♜c8 3. c7? because of 3. ... a4 4. bxa4 a5 ⊖ =.

2. ... ♜c8 3. ♜d4! +-

Triangulation.

3. ... ♜d8

[3. ... ♜c7 4. ♜c5]

4. ♜d5! ♜c8 5. ♜d6 ♜d8 6. c7+ ♜c8 7. ♜c6 a4 8. bxa4 a5 9. ♜b6 ⊖ +-. .

□ E8-32

André Chéron, 1926

Black's pieces are ideally placed for the defence. The winning method is easy: White has to give Black the move.

1. ♖b2

[1. ♜e4 ♜e8+ 2. ♜f5 ♜d8 3. ♜e5 ♜e8+ 4. ♜f6 ♜d8 5. ♜d1? ♜b6 6. ♜e7 ♜d5 7. ♜e6 ♜h5 8. ♜c1 ♜h6+ =]

1. ... ♜a4 2. ♖b7

[2. d5?? ♜xd5+ 3. ♜c4 ♜a3]

2. ... ♜a5 3. ♖b1 ⊖ ♜a6

[A) 3. ... ♜d7 4. ♜e4 ♜e7+ 5. ♜f5 ♜d7 6. ♜e5 ♜e7+ 7. ♜d6 +-;

B) 3. ... ♜a4 4. d5! ♜xd5+ 5. ♜c4 +-;

C) 3. ... ♜h8 4. d5 ♜h4 5. d6!

C1) 5. ... ♜h6 6. ♜d4 ♜xd6+ 7. ♜c5 +-;

C2) 5. ... ♜a4 6. d7 ♜h8 7. ♜c4 +-;

C3) 5. ... ♜g4 6. d7 ♜g8 7. ♜d4 ♜d8 8. ♜c5 +-;

C4) 5. ... ♜a6 6. d7 ♜h8 7. ♜d4 ♜d8 8. ♜d5 ♜xd7+ 9. ♜c6 +-.

4. ♜e4 ♜e8+ 5. ♜f5 ♜d8 6. ♜e5 ♜e8+ 7. ♜d6 ♜d8+ 8. ♜c6! +-.

Score table

Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1		12	2		23	3	
2	1		13	2		24	4	
3	1		14	2		25	4	
4	1		15	2		26	4	
5	1		16	3		27	4	
6	1		17	3		28	4	
7	1		18	3		29	6	
8	1		19	3		30	4	
9	2		20	3		31	4	
10	2		21	3		32	5	
11	2		22	3				
							total	81

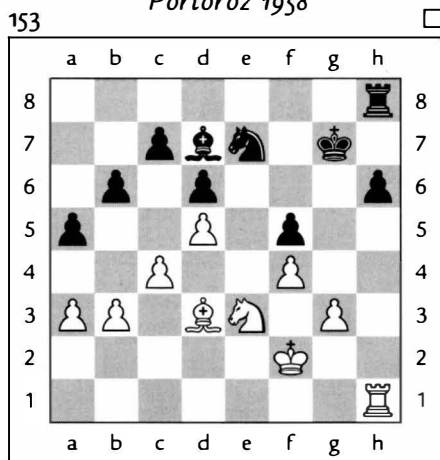
Points	Playing Strength
less than 4 points	beginner
4– 9 points	ELO 800–1000
10–19 points	ELO 1000–1500
20–29 points	ELO 1500–1800
30–39 points	ELO 1800–2100
40–60 points	ELO 2100–2300
61–70 points	ELO 2300–2400
71–81 points	ELO above 2400

9 Improving Piece Position

There is a well-known saying: 'If one piece is bad, the whole position is bad.' While many amateurs try to attack with just a couple of pieces, more experienced players know that one should bring as many pieces as possible into play. Moreover, strong players will try to maximise the effectiveness of their pieces by ensuring that they are well-coordinated, as well as putting them on their most active posts. The ability to bring pieces to their best positions is the main weapon of the positional player.

Tigran Petrosian – Robert Fischer

Portorož 1958



34. ♖c2!

Fischer praised this regrouping (the knight is heading for a splendid square in the centre) and said that during the game he was impressed by Petrosian's ability to keep on improving his position.

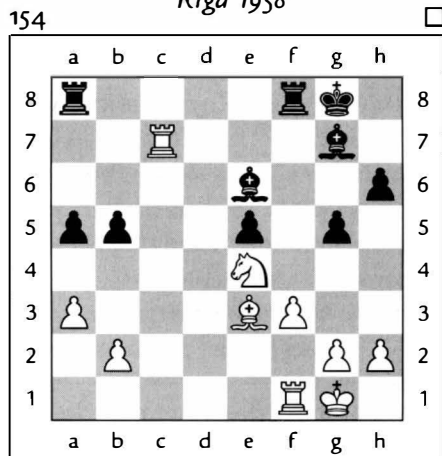
34. ... ♜f6 35. ♘d4 ♜g7

... and only Fischer's gritty defence allowed him to save the game.

Here's another example of Petrosian's positional art:

Tigran Petrosian – Alexey Suetin

Riga 1958



28. ♙d2!

An incredibly strong manoeuvre. The bishop no longer stares into space but will move to c3 to exert pressure on the e5 pawn. At the same time it protects the queenside pawns and attacks the pawn on a5. After ♙c3, ♜e1 and ♘g3-h5 the pawn on e5 will disappear.

28. ... ♜fd8 29. ♙c3 a4 30. ♜e1 ♜ac8 31. ♜b7! ♜d5

If 31. ... ♜b8?, then 32. ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 33. ♙xg5+ ±.

32. ♜b6 ± ♙f7

The alternatives were no better: 32. ... ♙d7 33. ♜xh6!; or 32. ... ♜e8 33. ♘d6.

33. ♘d6 ♜d8 34. ♘f5

That's even stronger than 34. ♘xb5.

34. ... ♖h7 35. ♜b7 ♜8d7 36. ♜×d7 ♜×d7
37. ♜×g7 ♜×g7 38. ♜×e5 ♜g6 39. ♜×b5 +

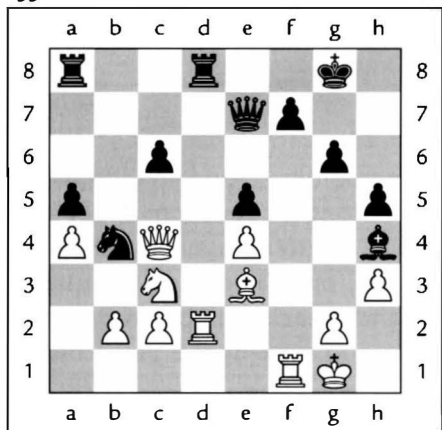
and White won two pawns. In spite of the bishops of opposite colour, Petrosian won the game with ease.

For mere mortals, devising a plan like this is not easy. However, one idea might help: the principle of the 'worst piece'. Look at your army. Find either the worst-placed piece or one that is unemployed, and try to improve its position. The effect of such an action is sometimes astonishing: the 'sleeping' piece can generate so much activity that it changes the balance of the position.

Anatoly Karpov – Boris Spassky

Leningrad 1974

155



24. ♖b1!

The knight had no purpose at c3: Karpov wants to bring it into play on f3.

24. ... ♜b7 25. ♜h2!

So as to control the g3 square.

25. ... ♜g7 26. c3 ♖a6 27. ♜e2!

Threatening 28. g3 ♜f6 29. ♜f2 ♜d6 30. ♜g5.

27. ... ♜f8 28. ♖d2 ♜d8

If 28. ... ♜ae8, then 29. ♖f3 ♜d8 30. ♜d2.

29. ♖f3

White concludes his manoeuvre. Black's pieces (♖b4 and ♜h4) have been pushed back and the knight supports the penetration of the major pieces.

29. ... f6 30. ♜d2! ♜e7

30. ... ♖b8 31. ♖g5!.

31. ♜e6! ♜ad8 32. ♜×d8 ♜×d8

Or 32. ... ♜×d8 33. ♖×e5 ♜c7 34. ♜f7+ ♜h8 35. ♜×e7 ♜×e5+ 36. ♜×e5 f×e5 37. ♜f6+.

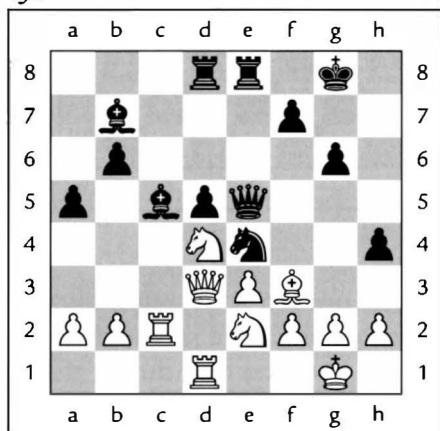
33. ♜d1! ♖b8 34. ♜c5 ♜h8 35. ♜×d8!

Black resigned because of 35. ... ♜×d8 36. ♜e7 ♜e8 37. ♜×f6+ ♜h6 38. ♖h4 and White wins.

Alexander Beliavsky – Efim Geller

Minsk 1979

156



All Black's pieces stand well, apart from the bishop on b7. Time to bring it into play.

25. ... ♜a8!

To activate the bishop, the rook has to move offside for a moment, but the 'well-rested' bishop comes into play with added energy.

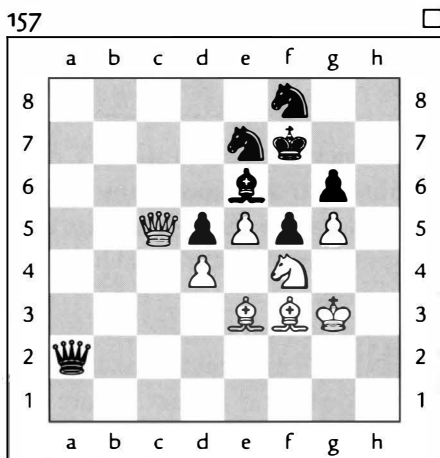
26. a4?

26. ♖×e4 d×e4 ♜ would have been better, but Black still has a clear advantage.

26. ... ♖a6 27. ♜b3 ♖c4-+

and Black had a decisive material advantage.

Ventzislav Inkiov – Jan Ambrož Băile Herculane 1982



The bishop on e3 is White's worst-placed piece (White's king is also passive, but nobody expects heroic deeds from His Majesty in the middlegame!). White brings the bishop to a3 to support the other pieces in the attack.

51. ♖c1!

Idea ♖a3.

51. ... ♜b1 52. ♖a3 ♜b7

Now Black's position falls apart.

52. ... ♜g1+ would have been stronger, but after the powerful 53. ♖h3! (53. ♖g2 f4+

54. ♖×f4 ♜h2+ 55. ♖e3 ♖f5+ 56. ♖e2 ♖d7 permits counterplay) 53. ... ♜×g5 54. ♜d6 (54. ♖×d5?? f4+) Black is in zugzwang: 54. ... ♜h6+ 55. ♖g2 ♜g5+ 56. ♖f1 ♜h4 57. ♖×d5 ♖×d5 58. ♖×d5+ ♖e8 59. ♜b8+ ♖d7 60. e6+ ♖×e6 61. ♜d6+ ♖e8 62. ♖×e6 and White wins;

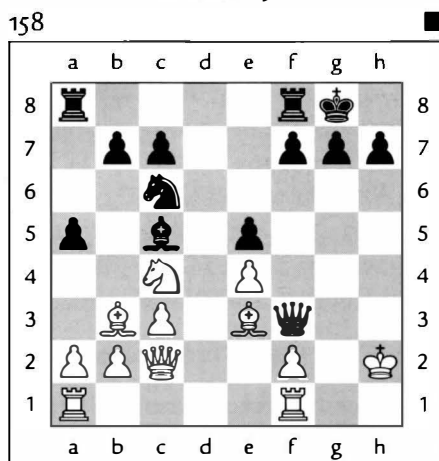
Worse was 52. ... ♜e1+ 53. ♖h3 ♜f1+ because of 54. ♖g2+-.

53. ♖×d5! with a winning position.

* * *

How can you improve your positional play? One method is to study the games of strong players. You'll find that many manoeuvres recur and these can be used in your own games. Here, for example, is a rook lift – a common manoeuvre in the middlegame.

Lev Psakhis – Valery Chekhov Vilnius 1980



Black wants more than perpetual check, but the queen needs support. He employs a typical rook manoeuvre.

17. ... ♜a6!!

Black brings the rook into the attack via the sixth rank.

18. ♖d1

The only move. 18. ♕×c5 loses to 18. ... ♖d4, and White cannot parry the threat of ♖h6.

18. ... ♗×e4 19. ♖g1

19. ♕×c5 ♖d4 20. ♗h5 ♖f3+ 21. ♖g3 ♖g6+ 22. ♗×g6 h×g6 (22. ... ♗×g6+ 23. ♖×f3 ♗c6+ 24. ♖g3 ♗×c5+ is also strong) 23. ♕×f8? ♗f4+ wouldn't have been any better.

19. ... ♗h4+

19. ... ♕×e3 20. ♖×e3 ♖d4 would not have been as good because of 21. ♖g4! ∞.

20. ♖g2 ♖d4! 21. c×d4

21. ♖×e5 would not have changed matters: 21. ... ♖×b3 22. a×b3 ♕×e3 23. f×e3 ♗g5+ 24. ♖g4 h5.

21. ... e×d4! 22. ♕g5

If 22. ♕d2, then 22. ... ♖g6+ 23. ♖f1 ♗h3+ 24. ♖e2 d3+ winning; And after 22. ♕c1 Chekhov gives the following winning plan for Black: 22. ... ♖g6+ 23. ♖f1 ♗h3+ 24. ♖e2 d3+ 25. ♗×d3 ♗×d3+ 26. ♖×d3 ♖×g1+; if 22. ♗f3 d×e3 23. ♖×e3 ♖f6 24. ♖h1, then 24. ... ♗g5+ 25. ♗g3 ♕×e3 26. f×e3 ♗f5 27. ♖af1 ♗e4+ 28. ♖f3 ♖g6 and Black wins.

22. ... ♗×g5+ 23. ♖f1 ♗f5 –

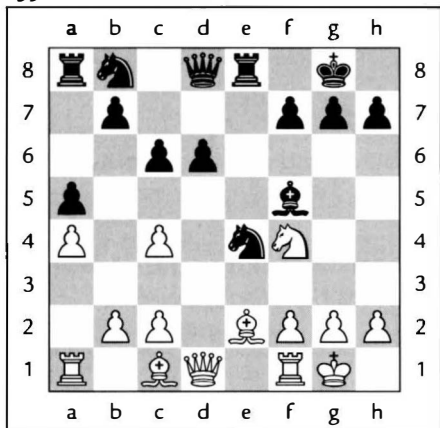
and Black has four pawns for the piece as well as a dangerous attack. The position is won for Black.

Some rounds later, my friend Lev Psakhis also carried out this manoeuvre against me.

Lev Psakhis – Artur Yusupov

Vilnius 1980

159



White wants to continue his development, but 12. b3? weakens the c3 square. 12. ♕e3 is possible, but then what is to be done with the rook on a1? Psakhis finds the ideal solution.

12. ♖a3!

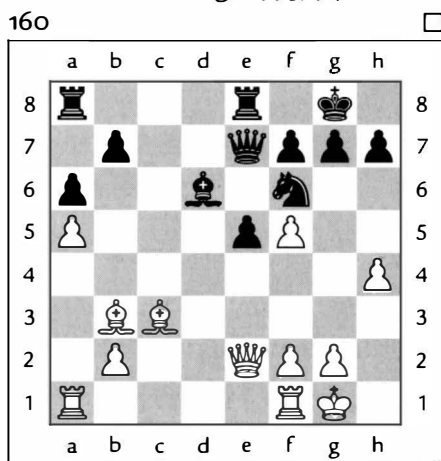
The rook will find a great square on e3.

12. ... ♖d7 13. ♖e3 ♖dc5 14. g4! ♕e6 15. f3 ♖f6 16. b3 h6 17. ♗d4 ♗c7 18. ♖d1 ♖ad8 19. ♕b2 ±

White has developed his pieces well and has the bishop pair. He has a clear advantage.

But I learned something from this defeat.

Artur Yusupov – Gregor Mainka
Bundesliga 1993/94



White prevents e5–e4 and activates his rook in a similar way to the last example.

19. ♖a4!

19. ♜fe1 would have been weaker because of 19. ... e4 with the idea ♙e5.

19. ... ♙c5

If 19. ... e4, then simply 20. ♙xf6 ♜xf6 21. ♜xe4± with advantage.

20. g4!

An important push to gain control of e4 for the rook.

20. ... ♜ad8 21. g5 ♜d5 22. ♜e4 ♜f4?

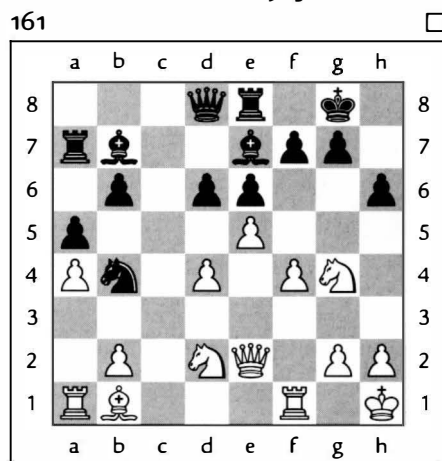
22. ... ♜xc3 23. bxc3± would have been better.

23. ♜g4 g6

This loses immediately, but after 23. ... ♜d6 24. g6 h×g6 25. ♜xf4 e×f4 26. f×g6+- Black's position would also have been hopeless.

24. ♜×e5 1–0.

Artur Yusupov – Edvins Kengis
Moscow 1983



Make way for the rook!

21. ♜a3! ♜h8 22. ♜g3!

Threatening 23. ♜h6 g6 24. ♜h5.

22. ... ♜g8

22. ... ♙f8 would have been a mistake because of 23. ♜×h6 g×h6 24. ♜g4 and wins; Likewise 22. ... ♙a6, due to 23. ♜e4.

23. ♜c4 ♙d5

23. ... ♙a6? 24. ♜e4.

24. ♜h3 ♙f8 25. b3 ♙×c4?!

A mistake in a difficult position.

26. b×c4 d×e5 27. ♜×e5

Here Black resigned because of 27. ... f6 28. ♜×e6 ♜×d4 29. ♜f5 g6 30. ♜×f6+ ♜×f6 31. ♜×f6+-.

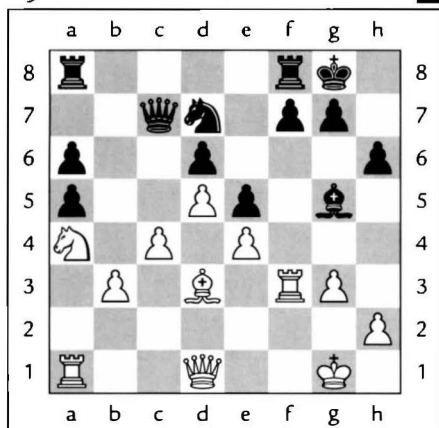
1–0.



Exercises (solutions p. 166–169)

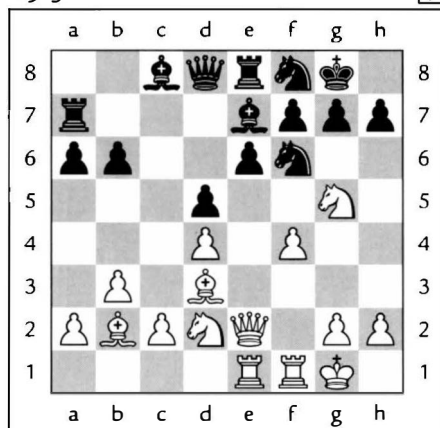
E9-1

*



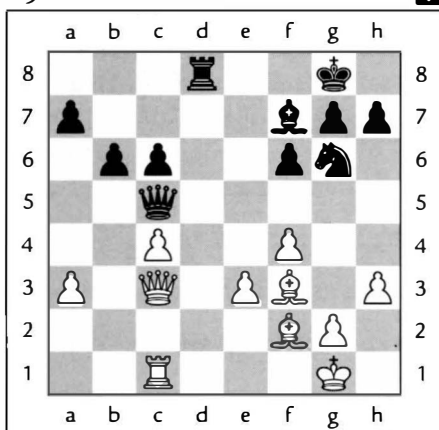
E9-3

*



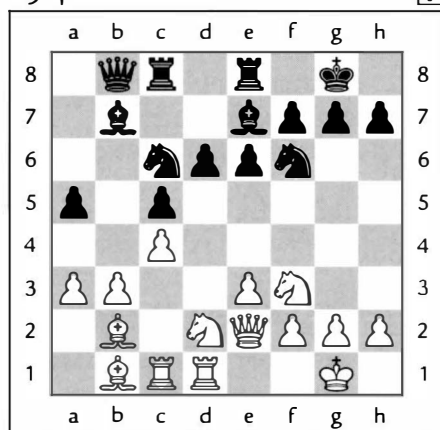
E9-2

*

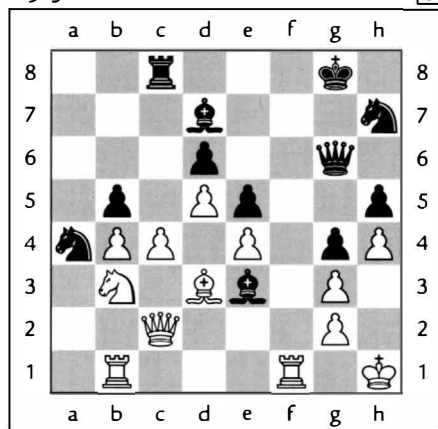


E9-4

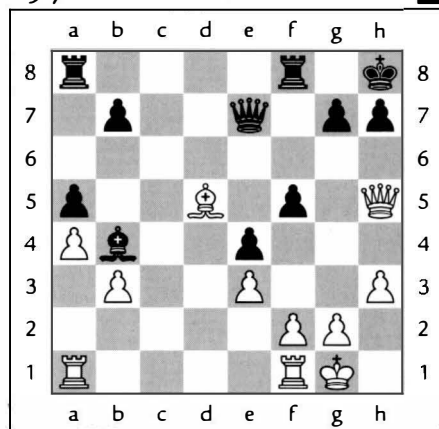
*



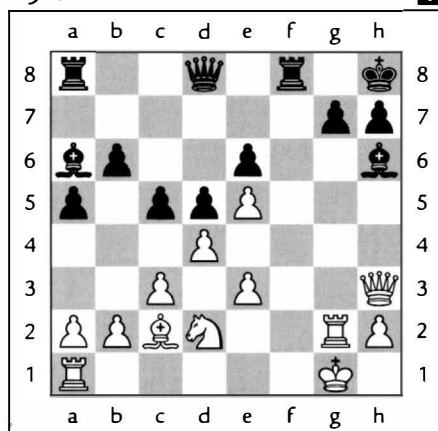
E9-5 * ?



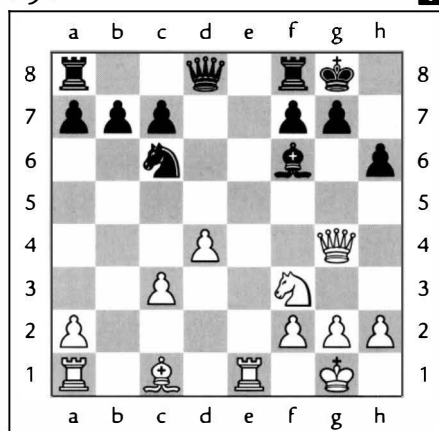
E9-7 * ?



E9-6 * ?

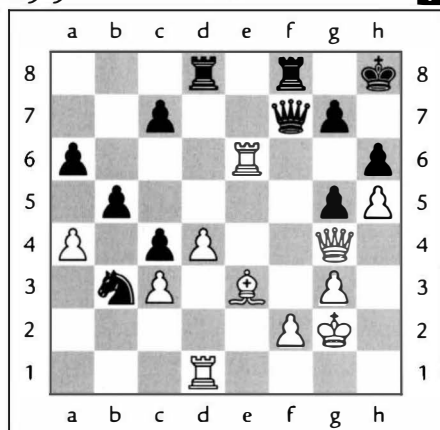


E9-8 ** ?



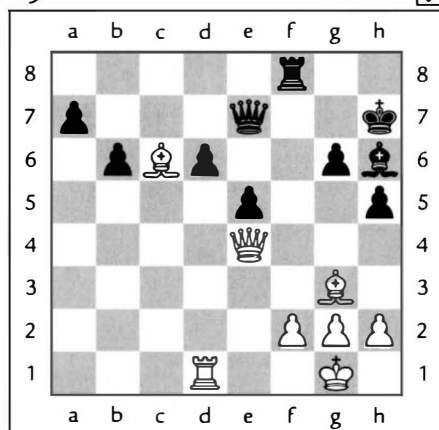
Eg-9

**



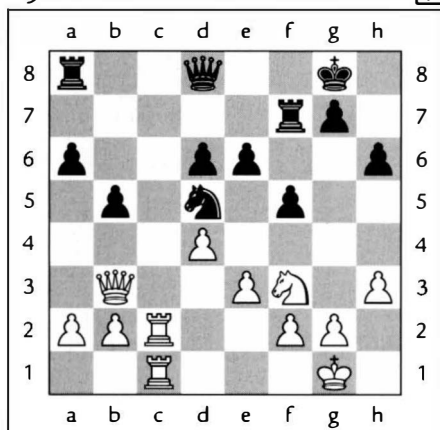
Eg-11

**



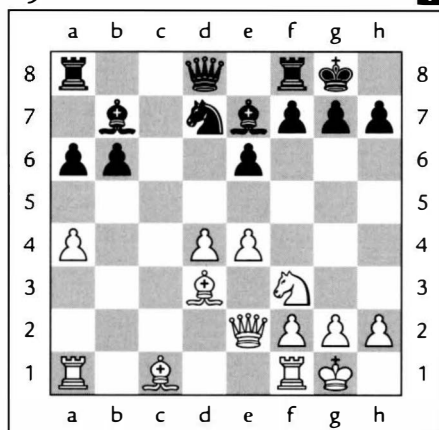
Eg-10

**



Eg-12

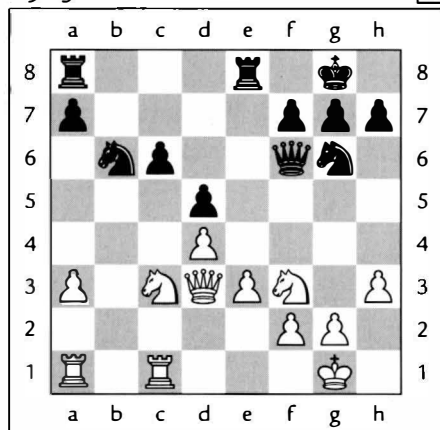
*



E9-13

**

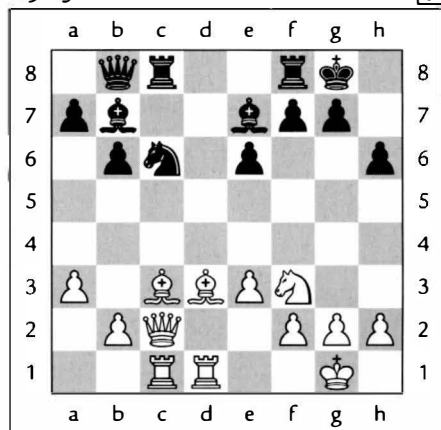
?



E9-15

**

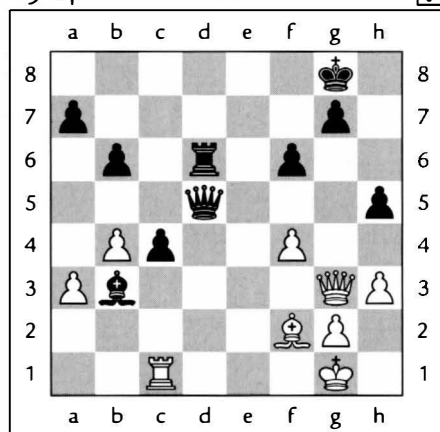
?



E9-14

**

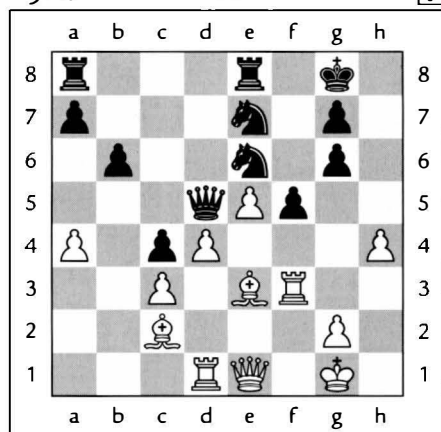
?



E9-16

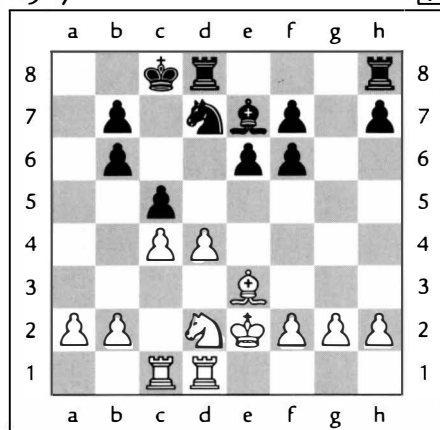
**

?



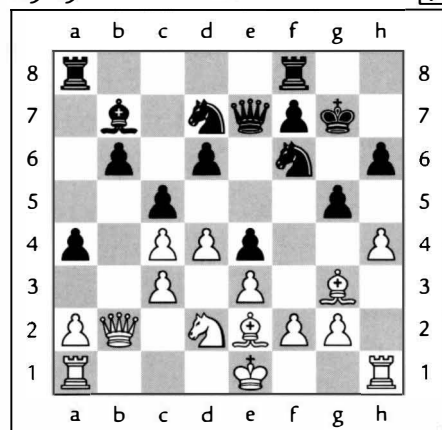
Eg-17

**



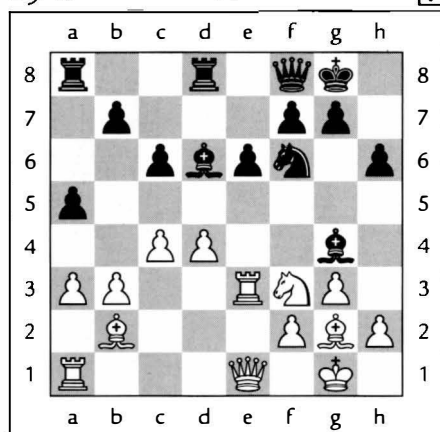
Eg-19

**



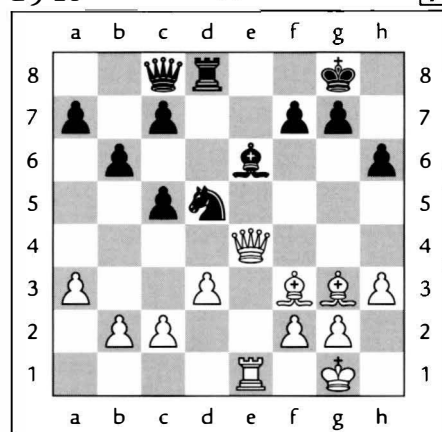
Eg-18

**

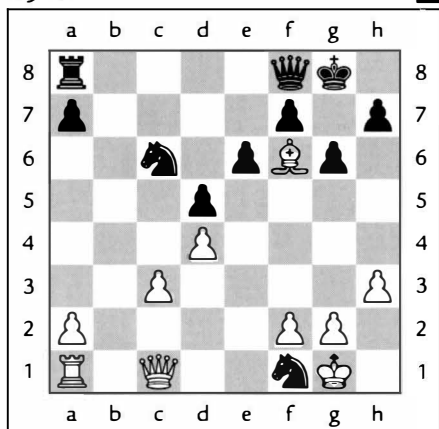


Eg-20

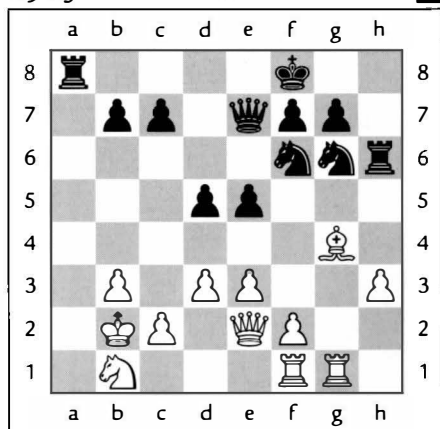
**



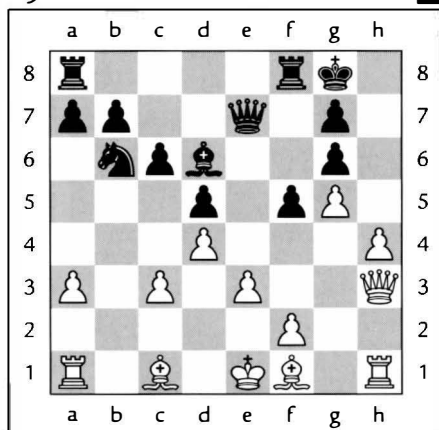
E9-21



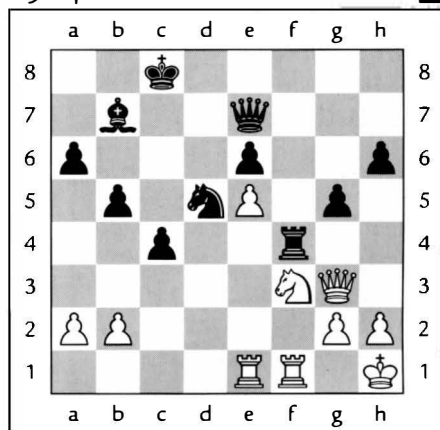
E9-23



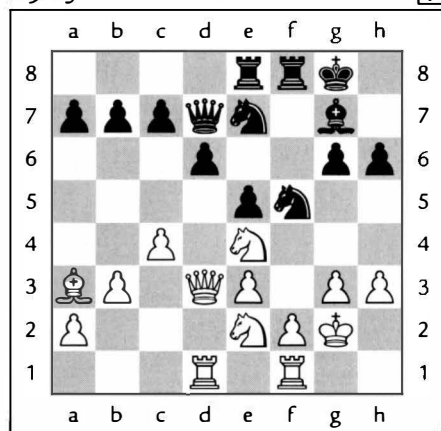
E9-22



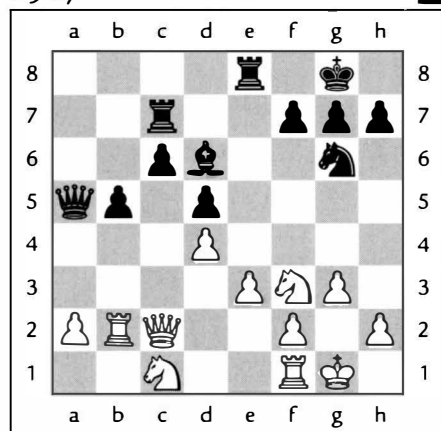
E9-24



E9-25

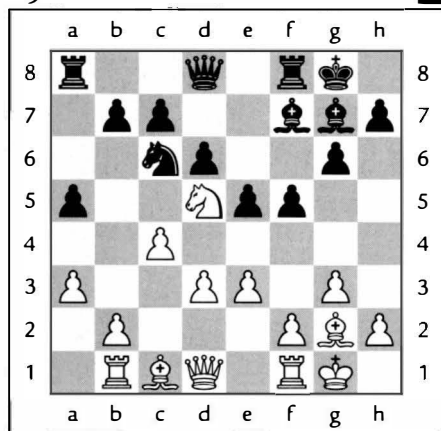


E9-27

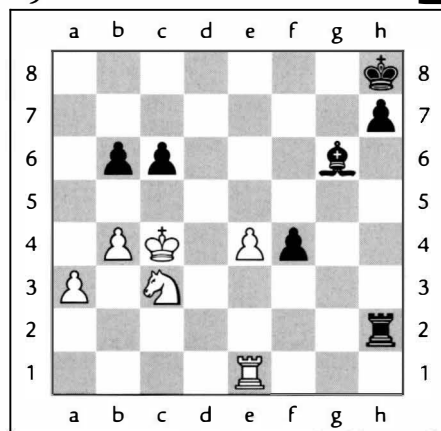


E9-26

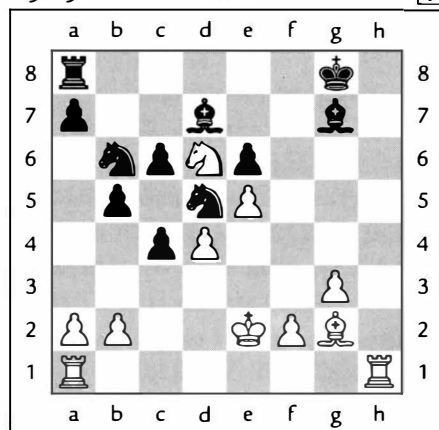
**



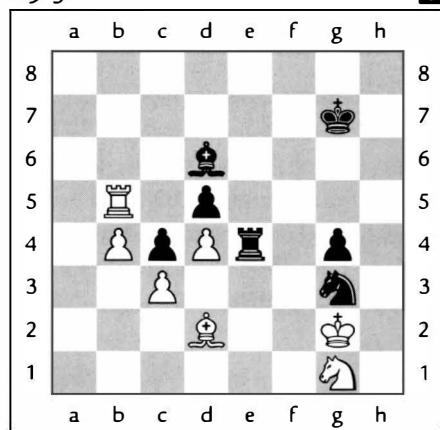
E9-28



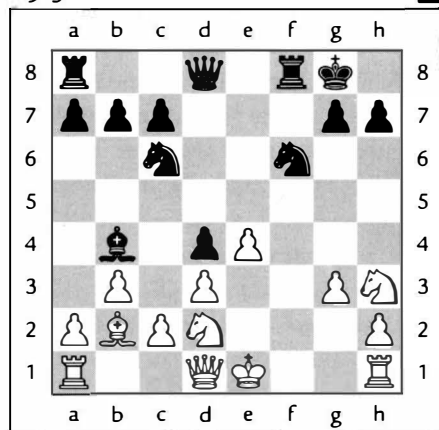
E9-29



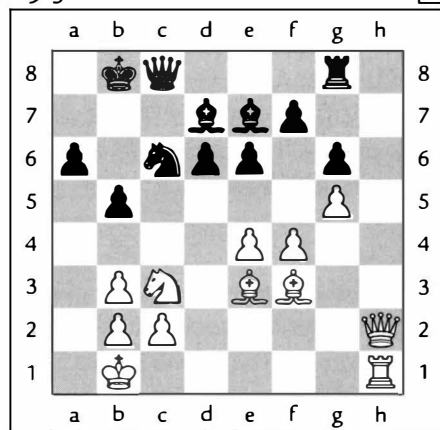
E9-31



E9-30



E9-32



Solutions

□ E9-1

Vulfson – Yusupov, Moscow 1976

21. ... h5?!

Black missed the chance to improve the position of his bishop. 22. ♖g2 g6 23. h4 ♕h6 ♖.

This was the correct continuation:

21. ... ♖a7+! 22. ♜g2 ♕e3 23. ♜e2 ♕d4 24. ♖af1 ♜c5 25. ♜xc5 ♜xc5 ♖ Δ ♖a8-b8-b4.

□ E9-2

Vaganian – Yusupov, Yerevan (zt) 1982

Black brings his worst piece, the knight on g6, into play.

28. ... ♜f8! [Δ ♜e6-c5] 29. ♜b4 [29. e4 ♜e7 30. c5 b5 31. e5 ♕d5 ∞] 29. ... ♜e6 = 30. ♕e4 ♜d6 31. ♕c2 ♜c5 [31. ... ♜d2? 32. ♜b1 h6 33. f5 ♜c5 34. ♜d1 +-] 32. ♜b1 h6 33. ♜d1 ♜e7 ½-½.

□ E9-3

Yusupov – Martini, Chicago 1983

14. ♜df3! [Δ ♜e5] 14. ... h6 15. ♜e5! h×g5 16. f×g5 ♜c7 [16. ... ♜d6d7? 17. ♜xf7 ♜c7 18. ♜h5 +-; 16. ... ♜e4? 17. ♜xf7 ♜c7 18. ♜h5 ♕f6 19. g6 ♜xg6 20. ♜h6+ g×h6 21. ♜xg6+ +-] 17. g×f6 ♕xh6 18. ♜f2 ±.

□ E9-4

Yusupov – Hulak, Indonesia 1983

16. ♜g5! A typical manoeuvre. The idea is Δ ♜de4 or ♜ge4. 16. ... g6 [16. ... h6 17. ♜ge4 ±] 17. f4! d5 18. ♜f3 d4 19. ♜h3 →.

□ E9-5

Yusupov – Slutzky, Moscow 1983

28. ♜a5! [Δ ♜c6] 28. ... ♜b6 29. ♜e2 ♕d4 30. c×b5 ♜a4 31. ♜bc1 ♜c3 32. ♜e1 ♜f6 33. ♜c6 +- ♕xh6 34. d×c6 ♜a4 35. ♜f5 ♜h7 36. ♜d2 ♜c7 37. ♜cf1 ♜e8 38. ♕c4 ♜g7 39. ♜f6 1-0.

□ E9-6

Glienke – Yusupov, Plovdiv 1983

21. ... ♖a7! [Δ ♖a7-f7] 22. ♜h1 [22. ♜xh6 ♕xh6+ 23. ♜h1 ♕c8 24. ♜d6 c×d4 ♖] 22. ... ♖af7 23. ♖ag1 [23. ♜xh6 ♕c8 24. ♜d6 ♜xh6 25. e×d6 ♕xh6 ♖] 23. ... ♜e7 ♖ [Δ ♜f2] 24. ♜g3?! c×d4! 25. c×d4 ♜b4 26. ♕b1 ♕f1! [26. ... ♜xb2 27. ♜e4 ∞] 27. ♜xf1 ♖xf1 28. ♜h4 ♖xg1+ 29. ♖xg1 ♜xb2 +- 30. e4 [30. ♜e7 ♜f2 31. ♜xh6 ♜f3+ 32. ♜g2 ♕xh6 +-] 30. ... ♜xh4 31. ♜g4 ♜xh5 32. e×d5 e×d5 33. ♜h3 d4 0-1.

□ E9-7

Grószpéter – Kupreichik, Minsk 1982

21. ... ♖a6! [Δ ♜g6] 22. ♜fd1 ♜g6 23. ♜e2 ♕d6! [Δ ♜e5] 24. ♕c4 ♜e5 25. g3 f4 26. e×f4 ♜xh4 → [Δ e3, Δ ♕c5] 27. ♖xh6 ♜xh6 28. ♜xh4 ♜c5 +-.

□ E9-8

Kasparov – Yusupov, Leningrad 1977

17. ... ♜c8! 18. ♜g3 ♜e7! Standard regrouping. The knight goes to g6 to defend the kingside and to control the central square e5. 19. ♜e5 [19. ♕xh6?? ♜f5 +-] 19. ... ♕xh6 20. ♖xh6 ♜g6 = ½-½.

□ E9-9

Vilela – Yusupov, Cienfuegos 1979

27. ... ♜c5!-+ [Δ ♜d3; 27. ... ♜d6 28. ♖xh6 c×d6 ♖] 28. d×c5 [28. ♜g6 ♜xh4 +-; 28. ♜e5 ♜d3 +-] 28. ... ♖xh1 29. ♜e4?! [29. ♖xh6+ g×h6 30. ♜xh1 ♜f5 +-] 29. ... ♜xh5 [Δ ♜h1#] 0-1.

□ E9-10

Yusupov – Spasov, Skara 1980

20. ♜e1!

White wants to bring his knight to b4 or f4 to exchange Black's strong knight.

20. ... Bb7 21. Qd3 a5 22. a3?! [22. $\text{Bc6!?$ a4 23. $\text{Wd1} \pm$ would have been better.] 22. ... a4 23. Wa2 Wd7 24. $\text{Qf4} \pm$ [24. $\text{Qb4 Qb6!} \Delta \text{Qc4}$] 1-0.

□ E9-11

Yusupov – Tukmakov, Yerevan (zt) 1982

33. $\text{Qa4!} + -$ [ΔQc2] 33. ... Qf4 34. Qc2 We6 35. $\text{Qh4!?$ Qg7 36. g3 Qh6 37. Qe7! 1-0.

□ E9-12

Yusupov – Adorján, Toluca (izt) 1982

14. ... Qb8! [$\Delta \text{Qc6-b4}$] 15. Bd1 Qc6 16. Bb1 [16. d5? exd5 17. $\text{exd5 Qb4} \rightleftharpoons$] 16. ... Qb4 [16. ... Qxd4? 17. Qxd4 Wxd4 18. Qc2 Wc5 19. $\text{Qe3} \pm$] 17. $\text{Qa3 a5!?$ [17. ... Qxd3 18. Bxd3 Qxa3 19. $\text{Bxa3 b5!} =$ (Adorján)] 18. $\text{Qb5 Qc8} \rightleftharpoons$.

□ E9-13

Beliaevsky – Yusupov, Moscow 1983

20. Qb1! [$\Delta \text{Qbd2-b3, xc6}$] 20. ... Bac8?! [Δ 20. ... Bec8 21. Ba2 Wd6 22. Bac2 a5 23. $\text{Qbd2 a4} \pm$ (Beliaevsky)] 21. Ba2! [21. Qbd2 c5! 22. $\text{dxc5 Bxc5} =$] 21. ... Qh4 22. Qxh4 Wxh4 23. $\text{Qd2} \pm$.

□ E9-14

Baturin – Yusupov, Riga 1984

33. ... Qc2! [ΔQe4] 34. Be1 Qe4 35. Be3 f5 36. Wg5 Wf7 37. Wh4 Bd1+ 38. $\text{Qh2 Bd2} - +$ 39. Qg1 Qh7 40. Bg3 g6 41. Bg5 c3 42. Qe1 Qc6 43. Bg3 We8 44. Qh2 Wxe1 0-1.

□ E9-15

Petrosian – Smyslov, Moscow 1961

18. Wa4!

White brings the queen into the attack.

18. ... Bfd8

[18. ... g6 19. Qe4! (19. $\text{Wg4!?$; 19. $\text{h4!?$)]

19. We4 g6 20. Wg4 h5

[20. ... Qh7? 21. Qxg6+ fxg6 22. Wxe6 Bf8 23. Bd7 Bce8 (23. ... Bc7 24. $\text{Qe5} + -$) 24. Qg5+ hxg5 25. Wh3+ Qg8 26. Wh8+ Qf7 27. Wf6+

Qg8 28. $\text{Wg7\#}$

21. Wh3

[Δ 22. g4!]

21. ... f5

[21. ... Bd6 22. g4! Bcd8 (22. ... Bd5 23. Qxg6 Δ 24. $\text{gxh5} + -$) 23. gxh5 Bxd3 24. Bxd3 Bxd3 25. hxg6 fxg6 26. Wh8+ Qf7 27. $\text{Qe5+} + -$]

22. Qc4 Bxd1+ 23. Bxd1 Qf7 24. e4!

[24. Be1]

24. ... Wf4 25. Be1 Wg4 26. exf5 Wxc4 27. fxg6+ Qe8

[27. ... Qxg6 28. Bxe6+ Qf7 29. $\text{Bxc6} + -$]

28. g7! e5 29. Wxh5+ Qd7 30. Bd1+ Qd6 31. Qxe5 Qd4 32. Qxd4 1-0.

□ E9-16

Taimanov – Botvinnik, Moscow 1952

25. Qc1!! [$\Delta \text{Qa3, xg6}$] 25. ... Bf8 26. Qa3 Bae8 27. $\text{Wg3} \rightarrow \text{g5}$ [27. ... Qh7 28. $\text{h5!} + -$] 28. Qxe7 Bxe7 29. Bxf5 Bxf5 30. Qxf5 Qf4 [30. ... gxh4 31. $\text{Wxh4} + -$] 31. $\text{Wxg5} + -$ Bxe5 32. dxe5 Wxd1+ 33. Qh2 Wd2 [33. ... Qe2 34. Qe6+ Qf8 35. Wf5+ Qe7 36. Wf7+ Qd8 37. Wf8+ Qc7 38. $\text{Wc8\#}$] 34. Qe6+ Qh7 [34. ... Qf8 35. Wf5+ Qe7 36. Wf7+ Qd8 37. Wf8+ Qc7 38. $\text{Wc8\#}$] 35. Qxc4 g6 36. Qe6! Black resigned due to: 36. Qe6 Wc3 37. We7+ Qh6 38. Wf8+ Qh7 39. Wg8+ Qh6 40. $\text{Wh8\#}$. 1-0.

□ E9-17

Taimanov – Flohr, Leningrad 1948

16. Qb1! [$\Delta \text{Qc3-b5}$; 16. Qe4? f5 17. Qc3 f4! 18. Qxf4 cxd4 19. Bxd4 e5 20. Qe4 f5 21. Bc3 Qc5 (Taimanov)] 16. ... Bhg8 [16. ... f5 17. g3] 17. g3 cxd4 [Δ 17. ... h5 Δ 18. h4 f5 (Taimanov)] 18. Qxd4 Qc5 19. Qc3 Qxd4 20. Bxd4 Qe5 21. Bcd1 Bxd4 22. $\text{Bxd4} \pm$ [ΔQe4].

□ E9-18

Jansa – Campora, Bor 1983

17. Qh4! [$\Delta \text{h3-g4}$; $\times \text{Qg4}$; 17. d5 cxd5 18. Qxf6 gxh6 19. cxd5 Qxa3 ∞ ; 17. $\text{Qe5 Qf5} \pm$] 17. ... Qh5 18. h3 g5 [18. ... Qd7 19. g4 Qe7 20. f4

♙xh4 21. ♖xh4 ♙g6 22. ♖ae1 ± Δd5] 19. ♖f3 [19. d5 ♙e7 (19. ... g×h4 20. ♙×f6 h×g3 21. ♙×d8 g×f2+ 22. ♖×f2 ♙×d8 23. d×e6 ♙c5 24. e7 ♙×e7 ♞) 20. d×e6 g×h4 21. ♙×f6 ♙×f6 22. e7 ♙×e7 23. ♖×e7 h×g3 24. f×g3 ♙e8 ±] 19. ... ♖d7 20. h4 ♖g7 21. h×g5 h×g5 22. ♙c3! [Δd5; Δ♙a5] 22. ... a4 23. d5 e5 24. d×c6 b×c6 25. b4 f6 26. ♖d2 ♖ac8 27. c5 ±.

□ E9-19

Malaniuk – Ivanov, *Kostroma 1985*

20. ♖b1! [Δ♖a3–b5] 20. ... ♖e8 21. ♖a3 f5 [Δf4] 22. h×g5 h×g5 23. ♖d2 ♙c6 [23. ... ♖f6 24. ♙h5 f4 25. e×f4 g×f4 26. ♙h4! ±] 24. ♙h5 ♙h8 25. ♙xh8 ♙xh8 26. o–o–o ♙g7 27. ♖b5 ♖df6 28. ♖b2 [Δd×c5] 28. ... a3 29. ♖b3! [Δ30. d×c5 d×c5 31. ♖c7 ♖c7 32. ♖b6] 29. ... ♙xb5 30. c×b5 d5 31. d×c5 ♖xc5 [31. ... b×c5 32. ♙×d5! +–] 32. ♙e5! +– ♙g6 33. ♙b1 ♖e7 34. ♙d4 ♖e6 35. c4! ♖c7 36. ♙c1 ♖d6 37. c×d5 ♖c×d5 38. ♙c6 ♖d8 39. ♙c4 ♙h7 40. ♙×d5 ♖×d5 41. ♖d1! 1–0.

□ E9-20

van der Wiel – Day, *Grand Manan 1984*

1. ♖a4! [Δ♖c6, x×c7 ≤ 1. c4 ♖f6; ≤ 1. ♙h4 ♙e8 Δ♙d7] 1. ... a5 [○1. ... a6] 2. ♖c6 ± ♖d7 [2. ... ♙d7? 3. ♙×e6 +–] 3. ♙×d5 ♖×d5 4. ♖×d5 [≤ 4. ♖×c7 ♙d7! 5. ♖×b6 ♙b7 6. ♖×a5 ♙×b2 ±] 4. ... ♙×d5 5. ♙×c7 +–.

□ E9-21

Yusupov – Rasin, *Moscow 1976*

22. ... ♖d6?!

Instead, Black could have equalised with 22. ... ♖b8! 23. ♙×f1 ♖d7 =, displacing White's bishop from its strong position on f6.

23. ♙×f1 e5? 24. d×e5 ♖×e5 25. ♖f4 ♙e8 26. ♙e1 ♖a6+ 27. c4! +– 1–0.

□ E9-22

Vaïsser – Yusupov, *Novosibirsk 1976*

19. ... ♙f7! Black brings his king to safety. 20.

a4 ♙e8 21. ♙d3 ♙d8 22. h5 ♙h8 23. ♖g2 ♙c7 24. h×g6 ♖e6 25. ♙e2 ♖×g6 ♢.

□ E9-23

Taimanov – Yusupov, *Moscow 1980*

23. ... ♖h4! [Δ♖e8, ♙ha6 →] 24. ♙g3 [24. f4 e4 ♢] 24. ... ♖e8 25. e4 d4 26. f4 ♙ha6 –+ 27. f×e5 ♙a1 28. ♖×f7+ [28. ♖f2 ♙8a2+ 29. ♙c1 ♖a3+ 30. ♙d2 ♖×c2+! –+] 28. ... ♖×f7 29. ♙f5 ♖e7 o–i.

□ E9-24

Glorigić – Yusupov, *Vrbaš 1980*

28. ... ♖b4! [Δ♖e7–f5] 29. ♙f2 ♖e7! 30. a3 ♖c5 31. ♙d2 ♖f5 32. ♖h3 g4 –+ 33. ♖h5 and here, instead of 33. ... ♙b8 (time trouble), Black could have won after 33. ... g×f3 34. ♖e8+ ♙c7 35. ♖d8+ ♙c6 36. ♙ed1 (36. g×f3 ♙d4) 36. ... f×g2+ 37. ♖×g2 ♖e7 (37. ... ♖×e5 –+) 38. ♙d6+ ♖×d6! 39. e×d6 ♙f1+ 40. ♙g1 ♙c5#.

□ E9-25

Csom – Yusupov, *Luzern (ol) 1982*

21. ♖g1! [Δ♖f3, g4] 21. ... g5 [21. ... ♙f7 22. ♖f3 ♙ef8 23. g4 +–] 22. ♖f3 ♙f7 23. g4 ♖h4+ 24. ♖xh4 g×h4 25. f3! ♙ef8 26. ♙b4! ♖e6 27. ♙e1 ± [xh4].

□ E9-26

Yusupov – Teshkovsky, *Minsk 1982*

13. ... ♖b8! [Δc6, ♖d7] 14. ♖b3 [14. b4 c6 15. ♖c3 e4 ♢] 14. ... ♙a7 ♢ 15. e4? [15. ♙d2!+] 15. ... f4! 16. g×f4 ♙×d5 17. c×d5 e×f4 ♢ 18. f3 ♖ ♖f6 19. ♙d2 ♖d4+ 20. ♙h1 ♖d7 o–i.

□ E9-27

Seirawan – Yusupov, *Istanbul (ol) 2000*

20. ... ♖f8! [Δ♖d7–b6–c4] 21. ♖b3 ♖a3 22. ♖c1 [22. ♖c5 ♙×c5 ♢] 22. ... ♖d7 23. ♙c2 ♖a8! 24. ♖e1! ♖b6 25. ♖d3 ♖c4 ♢ [x a2, ♙e].

□ E9-28

Belavsky – Yusupov, Dortmund 1998

40. ... ♗f7+!

The bishop is on its way to its ideal square c4, from where it supports the advanced f-pawn. It would have been worse to play 40. ... ♗d2 41. ♖b1 ♗d8 42. ♗c3 ♖ and White still can defend. 41. ♗d3 [41. ♗d4 ♗d2+ 42. ♗e5 f3 –+ Δf2, ♗c4] 41. ... ♗h3+ 42. ♗d2 [42. ♗d4 c5+ –+] 42. ... ♗c4 –+ 43. ♖a4 [43. e5 ♗d3+ 44. ♗c2 f3 45. ♖d1 ♗xd1 46. ♗xd1 f2 47. e6 ♗g7 –+] 43. ... ♗d3+ 44. ♗c2 ♗x a3 [But not 44. ... f3? 45. ♖b2 f2 46. ♗f1 ♗c3+ 47. ♗xc3 ♗xf1 because of 48. ♖d1 =.] 45. ♖xb6 ♗b5 [Δf3–f2] 0–1.

□ E9-29

Yusupov – Chekhov, Vilnius 1980

22. ♗h5! ± [Δ ♗g5, ♗h1–h4–g4] 22. ... ♖a4 [22. ... ♖c8 23. ♖e4 Δ ♖c5 ±] 23. ♗g5! ♖xb2 24. ♗xd5 [24. ♗h1! Δ ♗h4–g4 →] 24. ... cxd5 [24. ... exd5 25. f4 ±] 25. ♗h1 a5 [25. ... ♗f8 26. ♗h4 +–] 26. ♗h6! +– ♗a7 27. ♗hg6 ♗c6 28. ♗xe6 c3 [28. ... b4 29. ♖c8 ♗c7 30. ♗xc6 +–] 29. ♖f5 ♗a8 30. ♗eg6 ♖c4 31. ♗xg7+ ♗xg7 32. ♗xg7+ ♗f8 33. ♗d3 b4 34. ♗c7 1–0.

□ E9-30

Kupreichik – Yusupov, Yerevan (zt) 1982

12. ... ♖d5!! [Δ ♖e3] 13. ♗h5 [13. exd5 ♗xd5 14. ♖f2 ♗ae8+ 15. ♖fe4 ♗xe4+ 16. dxe4 ♗xe4+ –+] 13. ... ♖e3 14. ♗e2 [14. ♖g5 h6 15. ♖e6 ♗f6 16. ♖xf8 ♗xf8 17. ♗e2 ♖e5 18. c3 ♖xd3+ 19. ♗xd3 ♗f2#] 14. ... g6! 15. ♗h6 [15. ♗h4 ♗e7 16. ♗h6 ♖g4 –+] 15. ... ♗d7 [Δ ♗g4] 16. ♗h4 ♗xd2 17. ♗xd2 ♖e5 18. ♖g5 ♗f2+ 19. ♗c1 ♖xd3+! 20. ♗b1 [20. cxd3 ♗c6+ –+] 20. ...

♖xb2 –+ 0–1.

□ E9-31

Đuric – Yusupov, Sarajevo 1984

36. ... ♗e8! ♖ [Δ ♖e4, ♗h8–h2] 37. ♗xd5 [37. ♗b7+ ♗g8! (37. ... ♗f6? 38. ♗b6) 38. ♗h6 ♖f5 39. ♗g5 ♗a8 ♖ (Dvoretsky)] 37. ... ♖e4 38. ♗e1 ♗h8 39. ♗f1 [Δ 39. ♖f3! ♖xf3+ 40. ♗xf3 ♗e8 41. b5 ♖ (Hübner)] 39. ... ♗h2 40. b5 ♗b2 41. ♖e2 ♗b1 ♖ 42. b6 [42. ♗h5 ♗g3!] 42. ... ♗xb6 43. ♗h4 ♗b1+ 44. ♗g2 ♗b2 45. ♗f1 ♗g6! –+ 46. ♗a5 [46. ♗e7? ♖d2+] 46. ... g3! 47. ♗a8 ♗h5 48. ♗xg3 ♖xg3+ 49. ♖xg3+ ♗xg3 50. ♗c8 ♗g4 51. ♗xc4 ♗f3 52. ♗b4 ♗h2 53. ♗g1 ♗h8 54. ♗b2 ♗e8 [If 55. ♗b1, then 55. ... ♗f2+ 56. ♗f1 ♗h8.] 0–1.

□ E9-32

Belavsky – Cabrilo, Lvov 1981

31. ♗g1!!

[Δ 32. ♗f2 ♗h8 33. ♗b6]

White controls the open file, but his major pieces should be positioned the other way round, with the rook in front. White begins an ingenious regrouping to do just that. Instead, 31. ♗h7 ♗f8; or 31. ♗f2 at once, then 31. ... ♗h8!.

31. ... ♗d8

[31. ... ♗a8 32. ♗f2 ♗h8 33. e5 d5 34. ♖xd5 exd5 35. ♗xd5 +–]

32. ♗d2 ♗c7 33. ♗h7! ♗e8 34. ♗h2 ±

Mission accomplished. Belavsky continues to increase the pressure.

34. ... ♗c8 35. ♖e2! ♗b7 36. ♖c1 e5 37. ♖d3 exf4 38. ♗xf4 ♗f8 39. ♗f6 ♖e5? 40. ♖xe5 ♗xe5 41. ♗xe5 dxe5 42. ♗c5 ♗g8 43. ♗xf7 ♗h8 44. ♗f6 +– 1–0.

Score table

Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1		12	2		23	3	
2	1		13	2		24	3	
3	1		14	2		25	3	
4	1		15	2		26	3	
5	1		16	2		27	3	
6	1		17	2		28	3	
7	1		18	2		29	4	
8	2		19	2		30	5	
9	2		20	2		31	5	
10	2		21	3		32	6	
11	2		22	3				
							total	77

Points	Playing Strength
less than 4 points	beginner
4- 9 points	ELO 800-1000
10-19 points	ELO 1000-1500
20-29 points	ELO 1500-1800
30-39 points	ELO 1800-2100
40-49 points	ELO 2100-2200
50-59 points	ELO 2200-2300
60-70 points	ELO 2300-2400
71-77 points	ELO above 2400

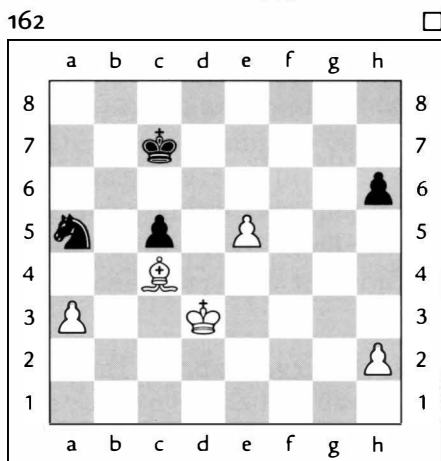
10 Trapping a Piece

'A piece limited in its action and isolated from the rest of its army is in danger of getting trapped.' (Kotov)

A knight on the rim isn't just 'dim' – it can also fall prey to enemy threats.

Artur Yusupov – Wolfgang Uhlmann

Austria 1997



55. ♖d5+-

A well-known motif: the bishop completely dominates the knight.

55. ... ♗d7

The pawn ending after 55. ... ♗c6 is clearly lost for Black.

56. ♜e4 ♜e7 57. ♜f5 h5 58. h4 c4

Black is in zugzwang and has to sacrifice the c-pawn to free the knight. If 58. ... ♜e8, then 59. ♜f6 c4 60. e6 c3 61. e7+- wins.

59. ♜e4 ♗b3 60. ♖xc4 ♗d2+ 61. ♜d5 ♗f3

Or 61. ... ♗b1 62. ♖d3+-, and if the

knight captures the pawn it will be caught again by the bishop.

62. ♖d3!

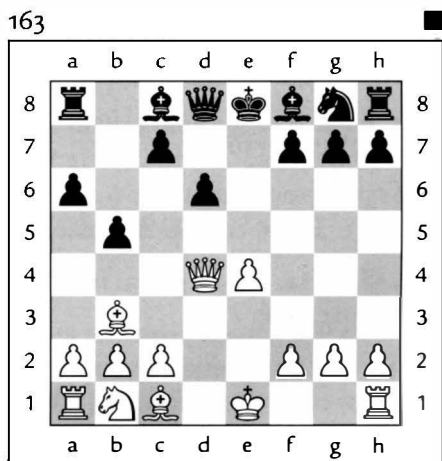
Black resigned because of 62. ... ♗xh4 63. ♖e4+-, and the knight is trapped again.

But even more mobile pieces like the bishop can be vulnerable.

Endre Steiner – José Capablanca

Budapest 1929

1. e4 e5 2. ♗f3 ♗c6 3. ♖b5 a6 4. ♖a4 d6 5. d4 b5 6. ♖b3 ♗x d4 7. ♗x d4 e x d4 8. ♜x d4?



This hackneyed trap is known as 'The Noah's Ark'. In other words, it has been known for a long time...

There followed

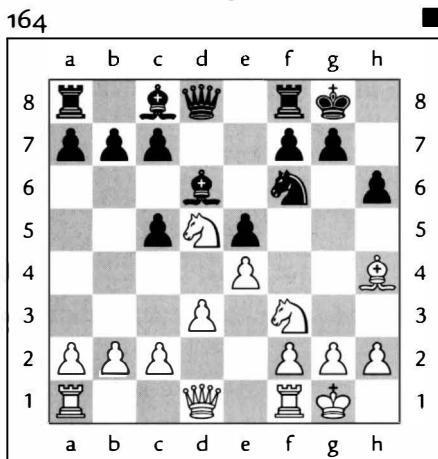
8. ... c5 9. ♜d5 ♖e6 10. ♜c6+ ♖d7 11. ♜d5 c4

and Black won the bishop and later the game.

An unfavourable piece position can also be exploited by positional methods. In the following classic, Capablanca isolates and then excludes the enemy bishop from play.

William Winter–José Capablanca

Hastings 1919



10. ... g5! 11. ♖×f6+

11. ♖×g5 is poor due to 11. ... ♖×d5! 12. ♜h5 h×g5 13. ♙×g5 ♖f4 14. ♜h6 ♙e7+.

11. ... ♜×f6 12. ♙g3 ♙g4 13. h3 ♙×f3 14. ♜×f3 ♜×f3 15. g×f3 ♚

'In effect, White is playing a piece down. The bishop on g3 is caged in, and can only be freed after a pawn sacrifice (♙h2, f4 and after e×f4 White plays f3, ♖g2 followed by ♙g1) but this costs time and material. The correct way for Black to realise his positional advantage is easy: attack on the queenside, where after an appropriate breakthrough and the opening of the flank, Black will be a piece (♙d6) up.' (Donev)

15. ... f6 16. ♖g2 a5 17. a4 ♖f7 18. ♜h1 ♖e6 19. h4 ♜fb8 20. h×g5 h×g5 21. b3 c6 22. ♜a2 b5 23. ♜ha1 c4!

To utilise his advantage on the queenside, Black has to open lines.

24. a×b5

24. d×c4 b×c4 25. b×c4 ♜b4+.

24. ... c×b3 25. c×b3 ♜×b5 26. ♜a4 ♜×b3 27. d4 ♜b5 28. ♜c4 ♜b4 29. ♜×c6

29. ♜×b4 ♙×b4 30. d×e5 f×e5 31. ♜h1 ♙e7! and the a-pawn decides the game. White's pieces on the kingside remain isolated.

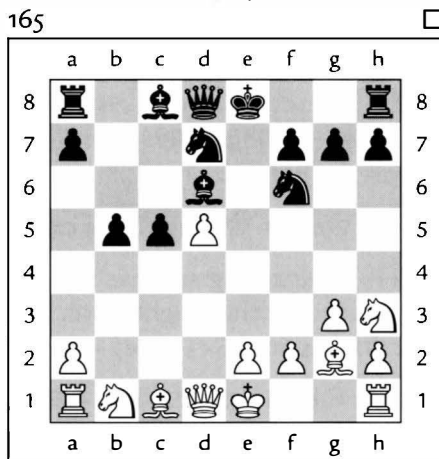
29. ... ♜×d4 0-1.

A beautiful and fitting game for our theme.

Even a rook can get trapped. They are especially vulnerable when still on their starting squares.

Rustam Kasimdzhanov – Garry Kasparov

Bat'umi (rapid) 2001



This was a rapid-play game and neither player wished to lose much time in the opening. Both castled quickly.

10. o-o? o-o?

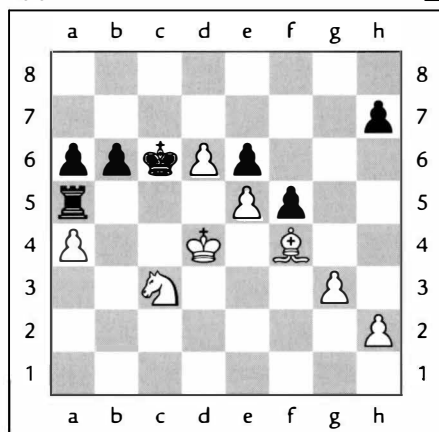
At this moment the players started laughing as they noticed that Black could have won the game immediately with 10. ... ♕e5. However, this act of mercy did not help Kasimdzhanov: Kasparov played as well as ever, and he went on to win the game. Even the strongest players sometimes overlook simple tactics.

In the next example, from a tie-break game in the European championship final, the future FIDE World Champion failed to seize the moment.

Ruslan Ponomarev – Emil Sutovsky

European Championship, Ohrid 2001

166



37. ♖c4

The correct move was 37. ♕c1! b5 38. ♕a3 b×a4 39. ♕b4 and the rook is trapped.

37. ... ♖c5+ 38. ♖b4 b5 39. a×b5+ a×b5 40. h4 ♖c4+ 41. ♖b3 ½–½.

and although White is still on the road to

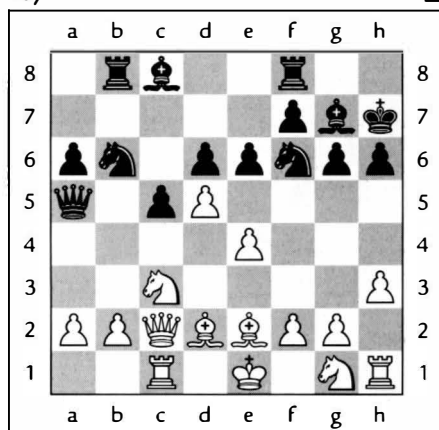
victory, Ponomarev lost his way in time trouble and failed to secure the win.

Even the most active and mobile piece, the queen, is often trapped.

Artur Yusupov – Alexei Shirov

Moscow 1992

167



16. b3 e×d5?

Of course, Shirov had seen that his queen had no retreat, but he only expected 17. ♖a4. It would have been better to play 16. ... ♖bd7 17. ♖f3±.

17. ♖b1!

White wins the queen, but denies Black any compensation. 17. ♖a4 ♖×d2+ 18. ♖×d2 ♖×e4±.

17. ... ♖×d2+ 18. ♖×d2 +- 1-o.

Sometimes the queen gets into trouble when chasing pieces deep in the enemy camp. A well-known case is the poisoned pawn on b2 or b7. But all tactical opera-

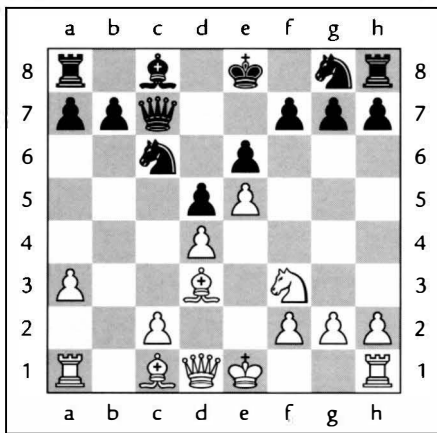
tions with the queen must be calculated carefully: she is too valuable to be treated casually.

Buts – Fauskas

London 1940

1. e4 e6 2. d4 d5 3. ♖c3 ♗b4 4. e5 c5 5. a3 ♗xc3+ 6. bxc3 ♜c7 7. ♖f3 ♖c6 8. ♗d3 cxd4? 9. cxd4

168



9. ... ♖xd4?

Black sees the chance to win a pawn, but he did not calculate far enough.

10. ♖xd4 ♜c3+ 11. ♜d2!

Black was only expecting 11. ♗d2 ♜xd4+.

11. ... ♜xa1

If 11. ... ♜xd4, then 12. ♗b5+ +-.

12. c3 +- 1-0.

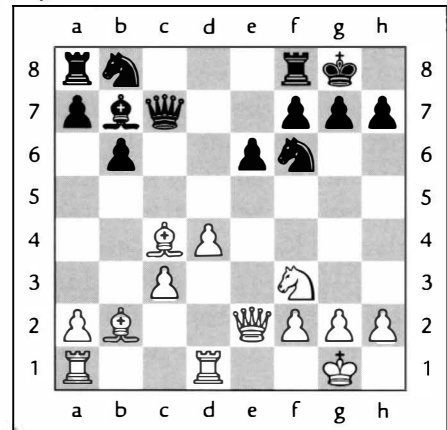
There is no defence to ♖b3, trapping the queen.

In the next – brilliant – game, the world no. 1's entire strategy is based on the poor position of his opponent's queen.

Evgeny Vladimirov – Garry Kasparov

Bat'umi (rapid) 2001

169



13. ... ♗xf3! 14. ♜xf3?!

14. gxf3 may have been better, but no one likes to weaken their own king.

14. ... ♜xc4! 15. ♜xa8 ♖c6 16. ♜b7 ♖d5

For the exchange, Black has achieved the perfect blockade with the knights. Moreover, White's queen is offside and there is no way back.

17. ♗e1 ♗b8 18. ♜d7 ♗d8 19. ♜b7 h5+

Of course, Kasparov plays for a win.

20. ♗c1?

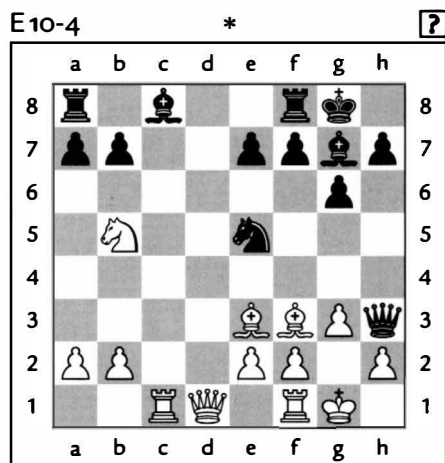
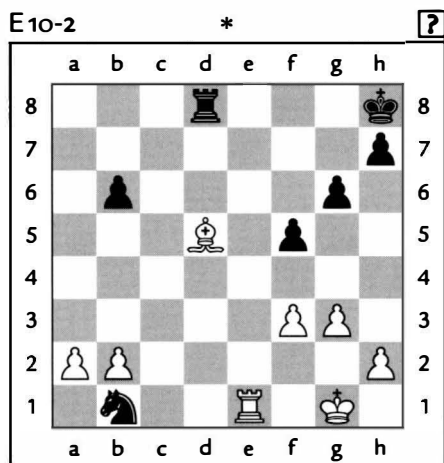
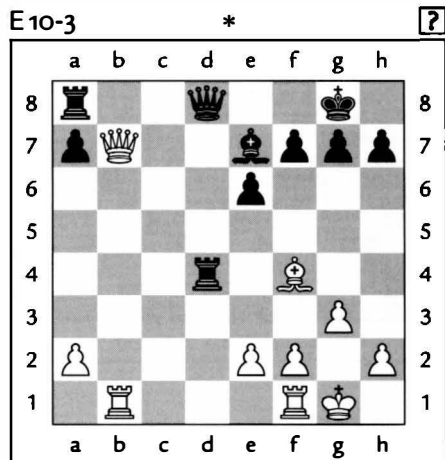
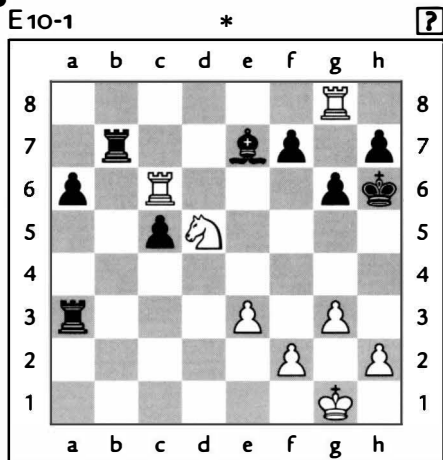
The losing move in an already difficult position. 20. ♗ab1 would have been better.

20. ... ♖a5!

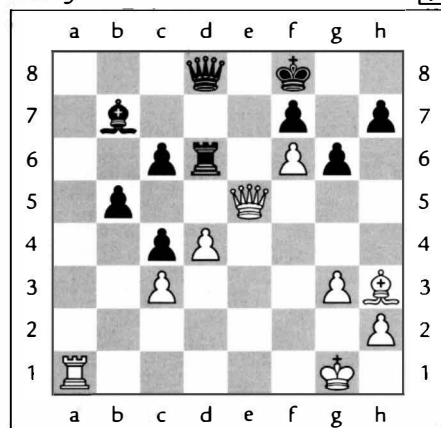
The hunter becomes the hunted. Kasparov finds a way to win the queen by force.

21. ♜xa7 ♜c6 (♗a8 was threatened.) 22. ♜a6 ♖c4 23. ♗b1 ♖c7 0-1.

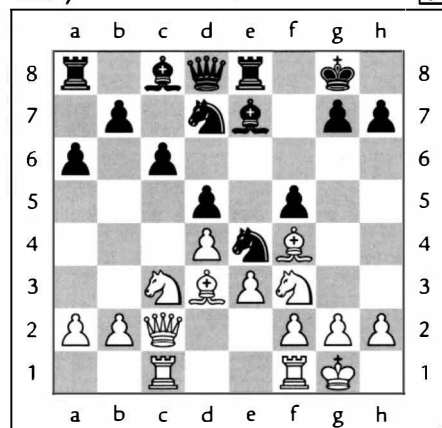
White can still save the queen by sacrificing a rook, 22. ♗b6, but he cannot save the game.


Exercises (solutions p. 183-185)


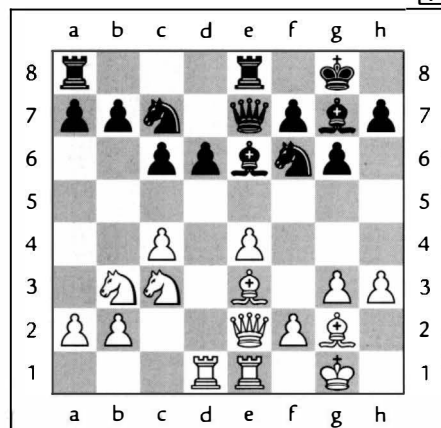
E10-5 *



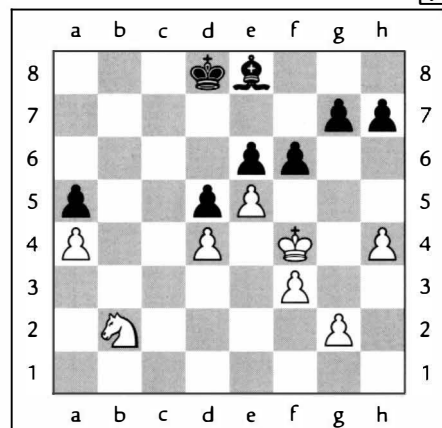
E10-7 **



E10-6 **



E10-8 *

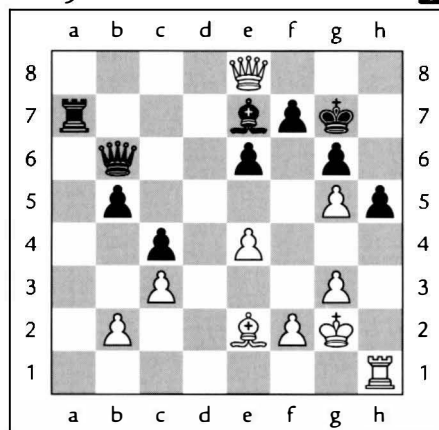


Evaluate the move 1. ♘d3

E10-9

**

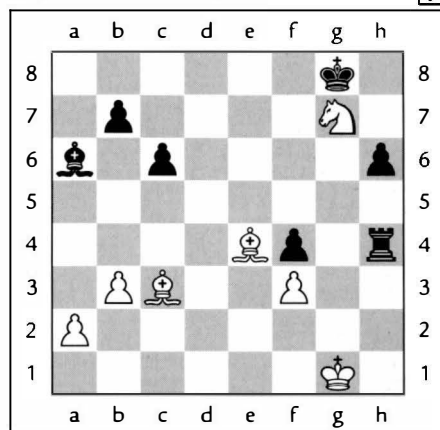
?



E10-11

**

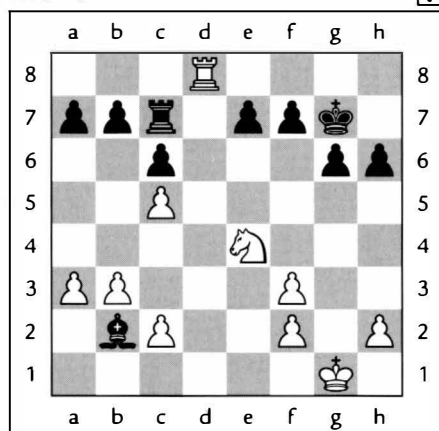
?



E10-10

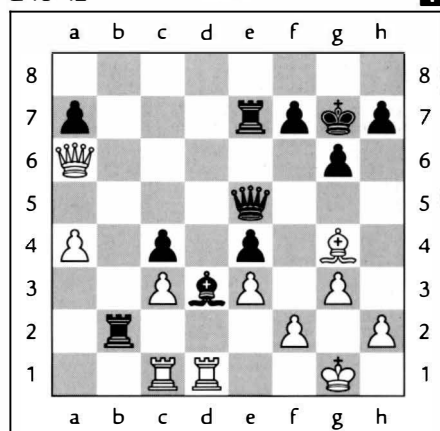
**

?



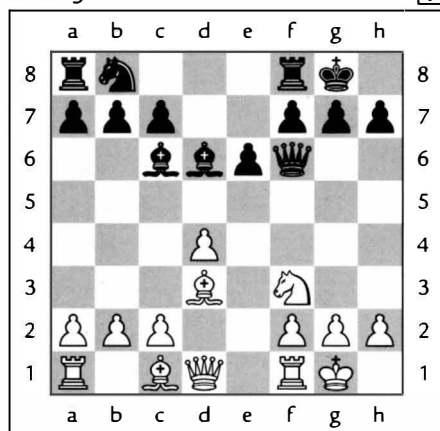
E10-12

?



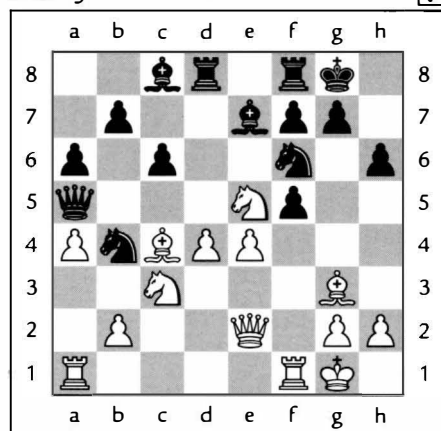
E 10-13

?



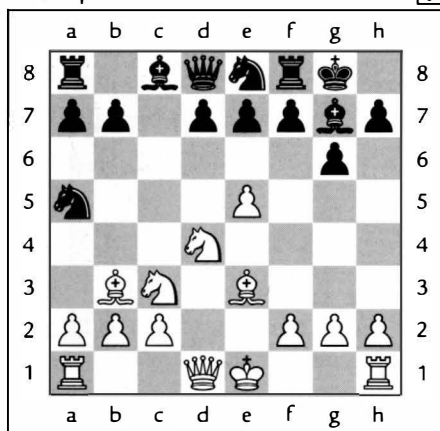
E 10-15

?



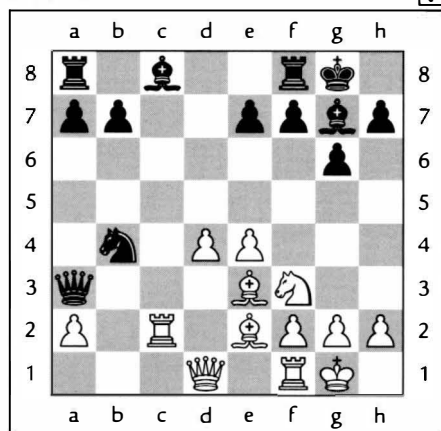
E 10-14

?

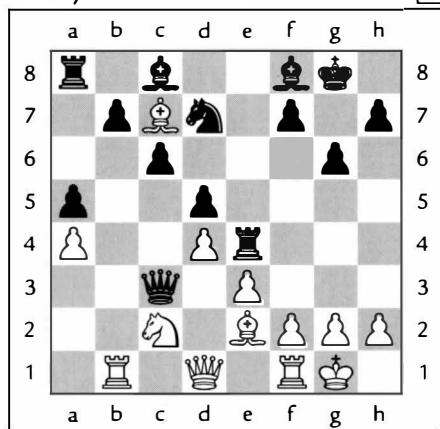


E 10-16

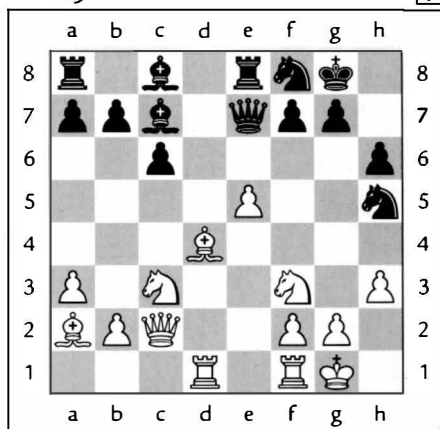
?



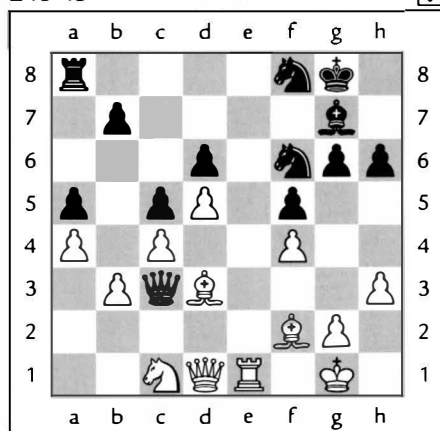
E 10-17



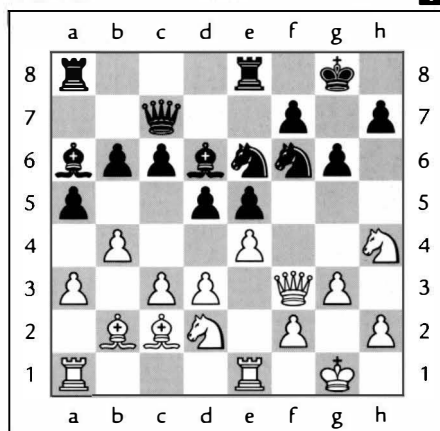
E 10-19



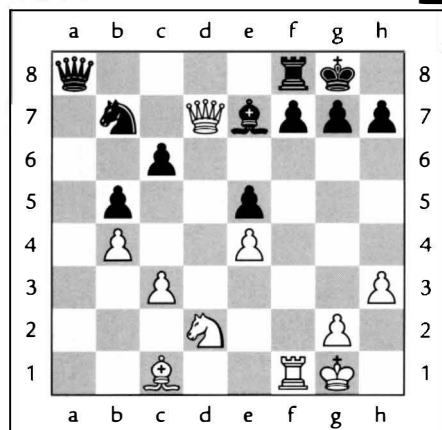
E 10-18



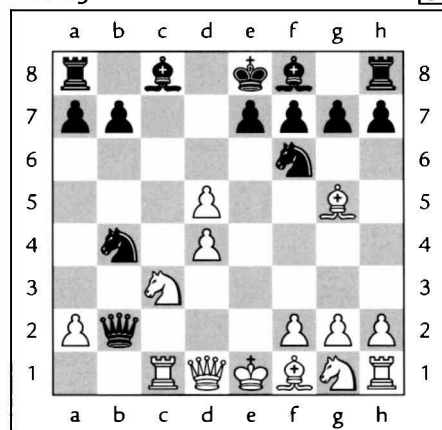
E 10-20



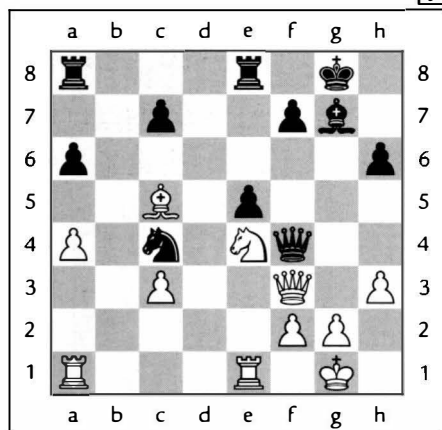
E 10-21



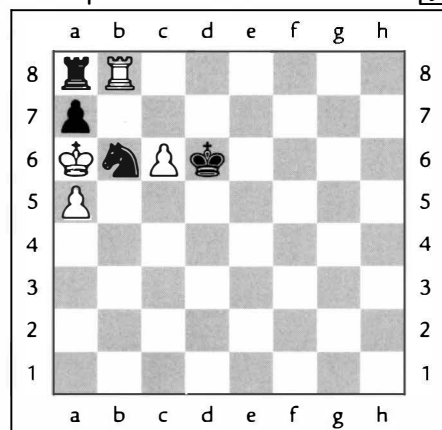
E 10-23



E 10-22

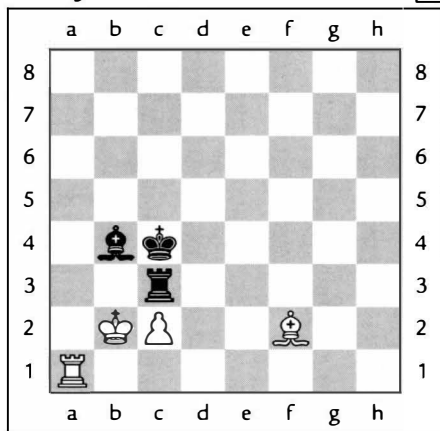


E 10-24



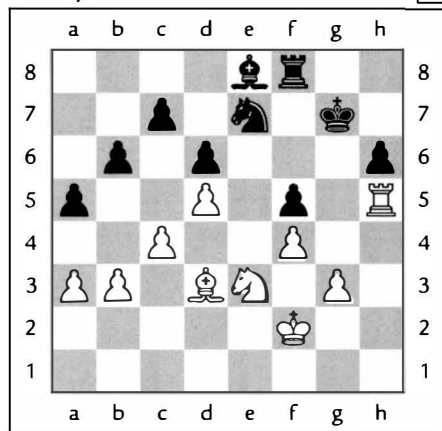
E 10-25

?



E 10-27

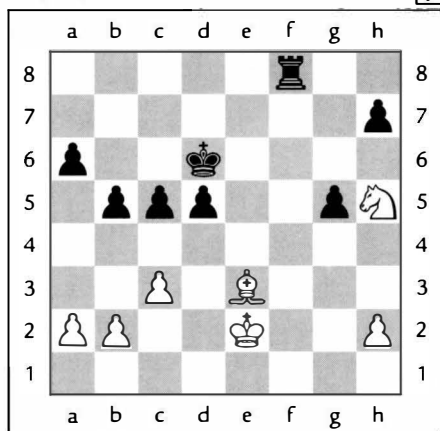
?



Evaluate the move 1. ♖×f5

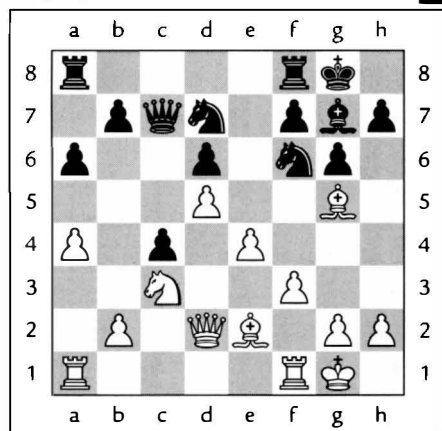
E 10-26

?



E 10-28

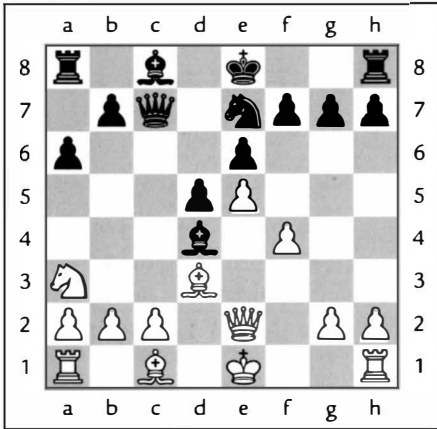
?



Evaluate the move 1. ... ♖c5

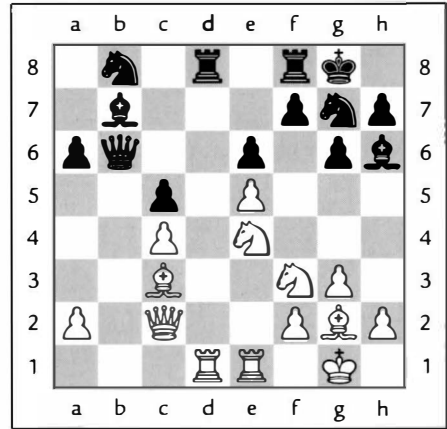
E10-29

?



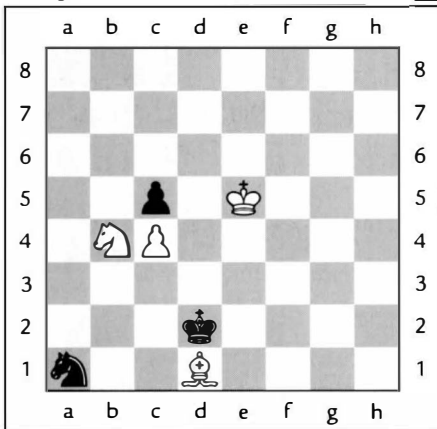
E10-31

?



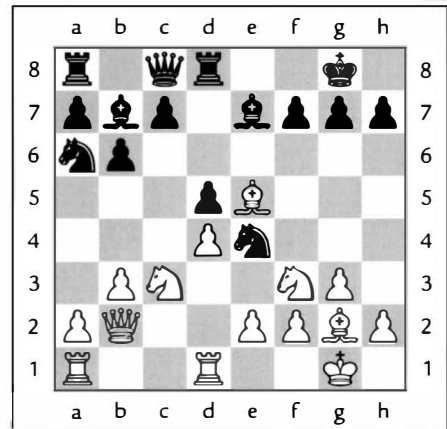
E10-30

?



E10-32

?



Solutions

□ E10-1

Yusupov – Romanishin, Yerevan (zt) 1982

35. ♖e8! ♙g5 36. h4 +- ♙xh4 37. g×h4 ♜h5
38. ♖e4 f5 39. ♜f6+ ♜h6 40. ♖c4 ♖ab3 41.
♖4xc5 1-0.

□ E10-2

Yusupov – Sokolov, Tilburg 1987

39. ♖d1! [Δ♜f2-e3-d4] 1-0.

□ E10-3

Smyslov – Tolush, Moscow 1961

17. ♙b8! +- [17. ♙b8 ♜d5 18. ♜xe7 +-] 1-0.

□ E10-4

Yusupov – Fejzullahu, Switzerland 2000

15. ♜c7! ♜xf3+ 16. e×f3 ♙e6 [16. ... ♖b8 17.
♙xa7 +-] 17. ♜xa8 ♖xa8 18. b3 +- 1-0.

□ E10-5

Yusupov – Bönsch, Bundesliga 2000/01

27. ♖a7 ♜xf6 [27. ... ♖d5 28. ♜e7+ +-; 27. ...
♜c7 28. ♖xb7 +-] 28. ♜xf6 ♖xf6 29. ♙g2!
[29. ♖xb7 ♖f3 30. ♙g2 ♖xc3 31. ♙xc6 gave
Black more chances.] 29. ... b4 [29. ... ♙c8 30.
♖a8 +-] 30. ♖xb7 bxc3 [30. ... b3 31. ♙f1! +-]
31. ♖b4 +- ♖d6 32. ♖xc4 c2 33. ♖xc2 ♖xd4 34.
♙xc6 h5 35. ♙f3 ♖d7 36. ♖b2 ♜g7 37. ♜f2
♖d6 38. ♖b7 ♖d2+ 39. ♙e2 ♖d6 40. ♙c4 ♖f6+
41. ♜e3 ♜f8 42. h3 ♜g7 43. g4 h×g4 44. h×g4
♜f8 45. ♖c7 ♜g7 46. ♜e4 ♖f2 47. g5! White
prepares to transpose into a winning king and
pawn endgame. 47. ... ♖f5 48. ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 49.
♙xf7 ♜xf7 50. ♜d5! +- 1-0.

□ E10-6

Gutman – Gaidarov, SSSR 1978

1. e5! [1. e5 d×e5 (1. ... ♜d7 2. e×d6 +-) 2.
♙c5 +-] 1-0.

□ E10-7

Alekhine – Rubinstein, San Remo 1931

1. ♜xd5! +- [1. ♜xd5 c×d5 2. ♙c7 +-] 1-0.

□ E10-8

Klarenbeek – Yusupov, Apeldoorn 2000

37. ♜d3? was poor. After ♙xa4 38. ♜c5 ♙d7
39. ♜b7+ ♜c7 +- White resigned because of
40. ♜xa5 ♙a4 -+, followed by ♜b6. 0-1.

□ E10-9

Yusupov – Kasparov, Riga 1995

36. ... ♜b7! 37. ♙f3 ♖a8 [38. e5 □ ♜xf3+ 39.
♜xf3 ♖xe8 +-] 38. ♙xh5 0-1.

□ E10-10

Peresipkin – Chekhov, Minsk 1976

24. ♜d6! +- [Δ♜e8; 24. ... e×d6 25. c×d6 +-]
1-0.

□ E10-11

Timman – Yusupov, Linares (cmsf6) 1992

37. ♙f5! [×♖h4] 37. ... ♙e2 38. ♙e6+ ♜h7
39. ♙f5+ ♜g8 40. ♜g2 +- [Δ♙f6, ♙e1] 1-0.

□ E10-12

Bilek – Smyslov, Polanica-Zdrój 1968

36. ... ♖c7! [Δ♖b6] 37. a5 ♖b5 38. ♖a1 ♖bc5
[Δ♖5c6] 0-1.

□ E10-13

Laurent – Lund-Jensen, Denmark 1937

1. ♙g5! ♙xf3 2. ♜d2! ♜xd4 3. ♙xh7+! ♜xh7
4. ♜xd4 +- 1-0.

□ E10-14

Fischer – Reshevsky, New York 1958

10. ♙xf7+! ♜xf7 [10. ... ♖xf7 11. ♜e6! +-] 11.
♜e6! d×e6 [11. ... ♜xe6 12. ♜d5+ ♜f5 13. g4+
♜xg4 14. ♖g1+ ♜h5 (14. ... ♜f5 15. ♖g5#; 14.
... ♜h4 15. ♜e4+ +-) 15. ♜d1+ +-] 12. ♜xd8

♟c6 13. ♜d2 +- 1-0.

□ E10-15

Botvinnik – Stepanov, Leningrad 1930

1. ♙xf7+! ♜xf7 2. ♜c4 +- 1-0.

□ E10-16

Yusupov – Sax, Vrbas 1980

14. ♙c1! ♜a5 [14. ... ♜a4 15. ♜xc8 +-] 15. ♙d2 ♜b6 [15. ... ♜a3 16. ♜c3 ♜xa2 17. ♙c4 +- ♜b2 18. ♜b3] 16. ♜b2 +- [Δ16. ... a5 17. a3] 1-0.

□ E10-17

Yusupov – Pirrot, Bundesliga 1994/95

20. ♜c1 [Δ♜d1-d3. Correct was 20. ♙g3!! +- Δf3, ♙e1 with a winning position; 20. f3 ♜xe3 ∞.] 20. ... b6 21. f3 ♙a3!? [21. ... ♜e8 22. ♙g3 ♙a3 23. ♜d1 ♙b2! ∞] 22. ♜d1 [22. ♜xa3 ♜xc1 23. ♜fxc1 ♜xe3 =] 22. ... ♜xe3 23. ♜xe3 ♜xe3+ 24. ♙h1 ♙b4 ♘ 1-0.

□ E10-18

Yusupov – Zapata, Saint John 1988

28. ♙a2! ♜b2 29. ♜e2 ♜a3 30. ♙e3 [30. ♜c3! would have been simpler: 30. ... ♜h5 31. ♜b5 ♜a1 32. ♜xa1 ♙xa1 33. g3 +-] 30. ... ♜e8 31. ♙c1 ♜xe2 32. ♙xa3 ♜xa2 33. ♜b1!? ♜xa3 34. ♜b2 ♜xd5 35. ♜xa3 ♜xf4 36. ♙f1 ♙d4+ 37. ♙h1 ♜h5 38. g4 ♜g3+ 39. ♙g2 ♜xf1?! [Δ39. ... ♙e5 ±] 40. ♙xf1 fxg4 41. hxg4 +- h5 42. gxh5 gxh5 43. ♜a2 ♙f7 44. ♜g2 ♜d7 45. ♜xb7 ♙e7 46. ♜e4+ 1-0.

□ E10-19

Kasparov – van der Wiel, Brussels 1987

18. ♜b5! ± [If 18. ♜e2 (with the idea g4, ♙c5), then 18. ... ♜e6.] 18. ... ♜e6 [18. ... cxb5 19. ♙c5 ♙f5 20. ♜xf5 +-] 19. ♙xe6 fxe6 [19. ... cxb5 20. ♙a2 ±] 20. ♜xc7 ♜xc7 21. ♜g6 ♜f7 22. ♜xf7+ ♙xf7 23. ♙e3 [x♜h5] 23. ... ♜f8 [23. ... g5 24. g4 ♜f4 (24. ... ♜g7 25. ♜d2 ♜d8 26. f4 +-) 25. ♙xf4 gxh4 26. ♜d4 +- (Kasparov)] 24. ♜d4 ♙g8 25. ♜fd1 b6 26. ♜h4 ♜f5

27. ♜d4 +- 1-0.

□ E10-20

Arbakov – Yusupov, Moscow 1981

17. ... ♜g5! 18. ♜e3 [18. ♜xf6? ♙e7 +-; Δ18. ♜g2 ♜] 18. ... ♜h3+ 19. ♙g2 ♜g4 20. ♜e2 ♜gxf2 21. ♜f1 dxe4 22. ♜xf2 exd3 23. ♙xd3 ♙xd3 24. ♜xd3 ♜xf2 25. ♙xf2 ♜ad8 ♜ 26. ♜e2 f5 27. ♜c4 ♙f8 28. ♙c1 axb4 29. cxb4 b5 30. ♙a5 ♙g7 31. ♙g5 ♜d6 32. ♙g1 ♜f7 33. ♙e3 ♜ed8 34. ♜c1 f4 35. ♙f2 ♜d7 ♜ 0-1.

□ E10-21

Karaklajić – Bély, Budapest 1957

1. ... ♜c8! [Δ2. ♜xe7?? f6!, 3. ... ♜f7 +-].

□ E10-22

Petrosian – Matanović, Skopje 1969

26. ♜e2! [26. ♜h5 ♜d2] 26. ... ♙a5 [26. ... ♜d6 27. ♙xd6 cxd6 28. g3 ♜f5 29. ♜xd6 +-] 27. ♜h5! +- [Δg3] 1-0.

□ E10-23

Botvinnik – Spielmann, Moscow 1935

9. ♙a4! ♜xa2 10. ♙c4! ♙g4 11. ♜f3 ♙xf3 12. gxh3 [12. gxh3 ♜a3 (12. ... ♜c2+ 13. ♜xc2 +-) 13. ♜c3 +-] 1-0.

□ E10-24

Mikhail Kliatskin, 1924

1. c7! ♙xc7 2. axb6+ ♙xb8 3. b7 +- 1-0.

□ E10-25

Leonid Kubbel, 1934

1. ♜a4! ♜a3! 2. ♜xb4+! ♙xb4 3. ♙e1+! [3. ♙c5+? ♙xc5 4. ♙xa3 ♙c4 =] 3. ... ♙a4 4. ♙c3 ♙xc3 5. ♙xc3 +- 1-0.

□ E10-26

Morovic Fernandez – Yusupov, Tunis (izt) 1985 (variation from the game)

30. ♙xg5! ♜f5 31. ♙f4+ ♙d7 32. ♙f3! ♜xh5? 33. ♙g4 +-.

□ E10-27

Petrosian – Fischer, Portorož 1958

It is a trap!

32. ♖xf5+? is bad due to: 32. ... ♖xf5 33. ♜xf5 ♜h8! –+ followed by ♙g6.

32. ♜h2 [32. ♜xf5 ♜h8! –+] 32. ... ♙d7 33. ♜h1 ♜h8 34. ♖c2! ± ½–½.

□ E10-28

Yusupov – Ligterink, Amsterdam 1978

[15. ... ♖c5? is bad because of 16. ♙xc4! (16. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 17. ♙xc4 ♜b6) 16. ... ♖fxe4 (16. ... ♖cxe4 17. fxe4) 17. fxe4 ♙xc3 18. ♜xc3 ♖xe4 19. ♜d4 ♖xg5 20. h4! +–.]

15. ... b5 16. axb5 axb5 17. ♙e3 ♜b7 18. ♜fb1 ♜fc8 19. b4 ♖e8 20. ♙d4 ± ½–½.

□ E10-29

Nezhmetdinov – Konstantinov, Rostov-on-Don 1936

11. c3! ♙xc3+?? 12. bxc3 ♜xc3+ 13. ♜d2! ♜xa1? 14. ♙b1!! +– [Δ♙b2] 1–0.

□ E10-30

Yochanan Afek, 1977

1. ♖c2

[1. ♙a4? cxb4 2. c5 b3 3. ♙xb3 ♖xb3 4. c6 ♖a5 5. c7 ♖c6+ 6. ♖d6 ♖a7 =;

1. ♖a6? ♖xd1 2. ♖xc5 ♖c2

A) 3. ♖d3 ♖d2 4. c5 ♖xd3 5. c6 ♖d4 6. c7 ♖c6+ =;

B) 3. ♖b3 ♖b4 4. ♖d4 ♖c2 5. ♖c5 (5. ♖a5 ♖a6)

5. ... ♖c6+ 6. ♖d5 ♖a5 =;

C) 3. ♖a6 3. ... ♖e3 4. c5 ♖c4+ 5. ♖d5 ♖a5 =]

1. ... ♖b3 2. ♖a1!!

[2. ♖e3? ♖a5 3. ♖e4 ♖xc4 =]

2. ... ♖xa1

[2. ... ♖a5 3. ♖b3+ +– (3. ♙b3? ♖c3) 3. ... ♖xb3 4. ♙xb3 ♖c3 5. ♖d5 +–]

3. ♙a4 ♖c3 4. ♖d5 ♖b4 5. ♙d1 ♖ +– 1–0.

□ E10-31

Yusupov – Suetin, Moscow 1980

21. ♖f6+! ♖h8 22. ♜b1 [22. ♖g4 ♙xf3 23. ♙xf3 ♜xd1 24. ♜xd1 ♙g5±] 22. ... ♜c7 23. ♜xb7! [23. ♖g4 ♙xf3±] 23. ... ♜xb7 24. ♖g4! +– [24. ♖g5 ♜c7 25. ♖gxh7±] 24. ... ♖f5 25. ♖h4 ♜e7 26. ♖xf5 gxf5 27. ♖xh6 ♜g5 28. ♖xf5! [28. ♖xf5 ♜xf5 29. ♜xf5 exf5 30. e6+ ♖g8 31. e7 +–] 1–0.

□ E10-32

Ruban – Dautov, Novosibirsk 1989

15. ... g5! 16. ♖xe4 dxe4 17. ♖d2 f6 18. d5! fxe5 19. ♜xe5 ♜e8 [19. ... ♜d7! 20. ♖xe4 g4 ♢] 20. ♖xe4 ♖c5 [20. ... g4 21. d6 ♢; 20. ... ♜d7! 21. d6 ♙d8] 21. ♖xc5!! [Δ21. d6! cxd6 22. ♖xd6 ♙xd6 23. ♜xg5+ ♖h8 (23. ... ♖f7? 24. ♜xd6 ♜e6 25. ♜f5+ ♖e7 26. ♜xh7+ ♖xd6 27. ♜d1+ ♖e5 28. ♜f7 +–) 24. ♜f6+ ♖g8 25. ♜g5+ =] 21. ... bxc5 22. ♜ac1!! [22. ♙e4 ♜d7 23. ♙f5 ♙d6 24. ♙e6+ ♜xe6 ♢] 22. ... ♜d8 23. ♙h3 ♙c8 ♢ 0–1.

Score table

Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points	Nº	Points	Your Points
1	1		12	3		23	3	
2	1		13	3		24	3	
3	1		14	3		25	4	
4	1		15	3		26	4	
5	1		16	3		27	4	
6	2		17	3		28	4	
7	2		18	3		29	4	
8	2		19	3		30	4	
9	2		20	3		31	5	
10	2		21	3		32	5	
11	2		22	3				
							total	90

Points	Playing Strength
less than 5 points	beginner
5-20 points	ELO 800-1000
21-30 points	ELO 1000-1500
31-45 points	ELO 1500-1800
46-60 points	ELO 1800-2100
61-75 points	ELO 2100-2300
76-90 points	ELO above 2300

Appendix

Index of composers and analysts

Names in italics refer to analysts.

A

Adorján, András, 167
 Afek, Yochanan, 124, 185
Averbakh, Yuri, 41, 55

B

Beliaevsky, Alexander, 92, 93, 167
 Bondarenko, Filipp, 27
 Breukelen, Gijs van, 52, 53
 Bron, Vladimir, 112, 123

C

Chéron, André, 151

D

Darga, Klaus, 15
 Del Rio, Ercole, 147
Donev, Ivo Hristov, 172
Dreev, Alexey, 70
 Duras, Oldřich, 52
 Dvizov, Evgeny, 52
Dvoretzky, Mark, 17, 38, 70, 115, 150, 169

E

Euwe, Machielis, 82

F

Ferdesi, 97
 Fridstein, 123
 Frink, Orrin, 52
 Fritz, Jindřich, 25, 137
Ftáčnik, Ljubomír, 89, 91

G

Gorgiev, Tigran, 25
 Gotsdiner, G., 52
 Greco, Gioacchino, 53
 Grigoriev, Nikolay Dmitrievich, 123, 126, 150, 151
 Gurvich, Abram, 126, 149

H

Herbstman, Alexander, 52
 Hildebrand, Alexander, 148
 Holzhausen, Walther von, 40
 Horwitz, Bernhard, 151
Hübner, Robert, 169
Huzman, Alexander, 91

I

Illustrative example, 147

K

Kaila, Osmo, 54
 Kasparian, Genrikh Moiseevich, 112
Kasparov, Garry, 184
 Kissling, G., 26
 Kliatskin, Mikhail, 184
 Josef Kling & Bernhard Horwitz, 42
 Kosek, V., 54
Kotov, Alexander, 57, 171
 Kozirev, V., 127
Kramnik, Vladimir, 70, 88–91
 Krikheli, Iosif, 52
 Kubbel, Leonid, 149, 184
 Kuznetsov, Alexander, 27
 Kuznetsov, Anatoly Georgievich, 53

L

Lasker, Emanuel, 110, 135, 136
Levenfish, Grigory, 96, 109
Levenfish, Grigory, 98
Lewitt, Moritz, 147

M

Makagonov, Vladimir Andreevich, 57
Makarychev, Sergey, 80
Matous, Mario, 29
Mednis, Edmar, 39, 53
Mees, W., 54
Megvinishvili, N., 54

N

Nimzowitsch, Aaron, 79

O

Ojanen, A., 147

P

Petrosian, Tigran, 53
Pogosjants, Ernest, 29
Polugaevsky, Lev, 82
Psakhis, Lev, 89

R

Rauzer, Vsevolod, 41
Réti, Richard, 25, 123
Rinck, Henri, 111, 112, 148, 149

S

Smyslov, Vassily, 57
Stohl, Igor, 90

T

Taimanov, Mark, 167
Tarrasch, Siegbert, 110
Tartakower, Saviely, 72
Troitzky, Alexei Alexeyevich, 52

U

Umnov, G., 54
unknown, 52

V

Van Vliet, Louis, 148
Vančura, Josef, 149
Vlasenko, V., 127

W

Winants, Luc, 91
Wotawa, Alois, 17

Y

Yusupov, Artur, 38, 53, 91, 94

Z

Zaitsev, Igor, 27, 28
Zhuravlev, Nikolay, 110

Index of games

Numbers in bold indicate that the first named player had Black.

A

Adams, Edward Bradford – Torre Repetto, **13**

Adams, Michael – Piket, **150**
– Yusupov, **26**

Adorján, András – Yusupov, **167**

Alden – Nilsson, **11**

Alekhine, Alexander – Bernstein, **11**

– Bogoljubow, **109**

– Frieman, **12**

– Johner, **12**

– Köhnlein, **11**

– Reshevsky, **11**

– Rubinstein, **183**

– Réti, **96**

Ambrož, Jan – Inkiov, **155**

Anand, Viswanathan – Andersson, **25**

– Gelfand, **125**

– Karpov, **123**

– Kasparov, **92**

– Kramnik, **88**

– Salov, **24**

– Tomczak, **25**

– Tukmakov, **24**

– Yusupov, **147**

Anderssen, Adolf – Paulsen, **11**

– Staunton, **97**

Andersson, Ulf – Anand, **25**

– McNab, **147**

Antunes, Antonio – Loek, **109**

Arbakov, Valentin – Yusupov, **184**

Aronin, Lev Solomonovich – Mikenas, **11**

Averbakh, Yuri – Hörberg, **110**

B

Bagirov, Vladimir – Planinc, **124**

Balogh – Szily, **147**

Baramidze, David – Smeets, **147**

Bareev, Evgeny – Hellers, **109**

Baturin – Yusupov, **167**

Beliavsky, Alexander – Cabrilo, **169**

– Chandler, **109**

– Geller, **154**

– Striković, **92**

– Yusupov, **109, 167, 169**

Belousov – Selyavkin, **11**

Bély, Miklós – Karaklajić, **184**

Bernstein, Ossip – Alekhine, **11**

– Capablanca, **1**

Bilek, István – Smyslov, **183**

Bogoljubow, Efim – Alekhine, **109**

– Hussong, **24**

– Réti, **12**

Boleslavsky, Isaak – Ragozin, **123**

– Smyslov, **69**

Bönsch, Uwe – Yusupov, **183**

Botvinnik, Mikhail – Chekhover, **69**

– Kan, **69**

– Ragozin, **71**

– Smyslov, **71**

– Sorokin, **71, 109**

– Spielmann, **184**

– Stepanov, **184**

– Taimanov, **148, 167**

– Tal, **72**

Brestian, Egon – Yusupov, **135**

Bronstein, David – Mikenas, **11**

– Pachman, **111**

Burn, Amos – Janowski, **11**

Buts – Fauskas, **174**

C

Cabrilo, Goran – Beliavsky, **169**

Campora, Daniel – Jansa, **167**

Campos Lopez, Mario – Smith, **39**

Capablanca, José – Bernstein, **1**

– Fonaroff, **12**

– Nimzowitsch, **148**

- Rubinstein, **110**
- Sämisch, **95**
- Steiner, **171**
- Winter, **172**

Chandler, Murray - Beliavsky, **109**

- Polgár, **37**

Chekhov, Valery - Peresipkin, **183**

- Psakhis, **155**
- Yusupov, **169**

Chekhover, Vitaly - Botvinnik, **69**

Christiansen, Larry - Karpov, **95**

Crouch, Colin - Speelman, **12**

Csom, István - Karpov, **124**

- Kindermann, **109**
- Yusupov, **168**

D

Dautov, Rustem - Ruban, **185**

- Sermek, **41**
- Yusupov, **26**

Day - van der Wiel, **168**

Díez del Corral, Jesús - Timman, **70**

Djaja, Dragutin - Staudte, **11**

Đuric, Stefan - Yusupov, **169**

Dolmatov, Sergey - Yusupov, **78, 86**

Domes - Fedorov, **110**

Dreev, Alexey - Kramnik, **59**

E

Ehlvest, Jaan - Nogueiras, **109**

Eingorn, Vereslav - Smyslov, **148**

Epishin, Vladimir - Yusupov, **125**

Estrin, Yakov - Kletsel, **71**

Euwe, Machgielis - Fontein, **11**

- Vidmar, **12**

F

Fauskas - Buts, **174**

Fedorov - Domes, **110**

Fejzullahu, Afrim - Yusupov, **183**

Fernandez - Pähtz, **109**

Feuer, B.H. - O'Kelly de Galway, **109**

Fischer, Robert - Keres, **72**

- Petrosian, **70, 153, 185**

- Reshevsky, **136, 183**

- Spassky, **109**

- Taimanov, **36**

Flohr, Salo - Taimanov, **167**

Földi, József - Lukács, **150**

Fonaroff, Marc - Capablanca, **12**

Fontein, George Salto - Euwe, **11**

Frieman, A - Alekhine, **12**

Furman, Semen Abramovich - Smyslov, **69**

G

Gabriel, Christian - Michaelsen, **124**

Gaidarov - Gutman, **183**

Galliamova, Alisa - Xie Jun, **111**

Gaprindashvili, Nona - Servaty, **25**

García Vera, Oscar - Grau, **96**

Gelfand, Boris - Anand, **125**

Geller, Efim - Beliavsky, **154**

Ghinda, Mihail - Yusupov, **70**

Glienke, Manfred - Yusupov, **166**

Gligorić, Svetozar - Smyslov, **136**

- Yusupov, **168**

Gol'berg - Zhuk, **147**

Granda Zúñiga, Julio - Svidler, **24**

Grau, Roberto - García Vera, **96**

Grigorian, Karen Ashotovich - Kupreichik, **73**

Grószpéter, Attila - Kupreichik, **166**

Gulko, Boris - Sveshnikov, **54**

Gurevich, Mikhail - Razuvaev, **110**

Gutman, Lev - Gaidarov, **183**

- Mikenas, **38**

H

Hellers, Ferdinand - Bareev, **109**

Hernández, Roman - Yusupov, **71**

Holzhäuer, Mathias - Yusupov, **111**

Honfi, Károlyné - Minić, **11**

Hörberg, Bengt-Eric - Averbakh, **110**

Hübner, Robert - Nikolaidis, **110**

Hulak, Krunoslav - Yusupov, **166**

Huss, Andreas - Razuvaev, **(71)**

Hussong, Hugo – Bogoljubow, **24**

I

Inkiöv, Ventzislav – Ambrož, **155**

Ioseliani, Nana – Xie Jun, **2**

Ivanov, Alexander – Malaniuk, **168**

J

Janowski, Dawid Markelowicz – Burn, **11**

Jansa, Vlastimil – Campora, **167**

Jiménez-Zerquera, Eleazar – Larsen, **72**

Johner – Alekhine, **12**

K

Kamyshev – Rovner, **11**

Kan, Ilia Abramovich – Botvinnik, **69**

Kanzyn – Vodopyanov, **12**

Kapengut, Albert – Zhuravlev, **109**

Karaklajić, Nikola – Bély, **184**

Karpov, Anatoly – Anand, **123**

– Christiansen, **95**

– Csom, **124**

– Korchnoi, **43**

– Spassky, **72, 72, 154**

– Topalov, **111**

Kasimdzhanov, Rustam – Kasparov, **172**

Kasparov, Garry – Anand, **92**

– Kasimdzhanov, **172**

– Přibyl, **93**

– Short, **40**

– van der Wiel, **184**

– Vladimirov, **174**

– Vukić, **70**

– Yusupov, **149, 166, 183**

Kavalek, Lubomir – Portisch, **37**

Kengis, Edvins – Yusupov, **157**

Keres, Paul – Fischer, **72**

– Spassky, **81**

Kindermann, Stefan – Csom, **109**

Klarenbeek, Hans – Yusupov, **183**

Kletsel, M – Estrin, **71**

Kohnen – Lepek, **12**

Köhnlein, H – Alekhine, **11**

Konstantinov – Nezhmetdinov, **185**

Korchnoi, Viktor – Karpov, **43**

– Spassky, **82**

Kotov, Alexander – Najdorf, **27**

Kotronias, Vasilios – Yusupov, **149**

Kouatly, Bachar – Yusupov, **85**

Kramnik, Vladimir – Anand, **88**

– Dreev, **59**

– Nijboer, **91**

– Nunn, **87**

– Polgár, **88, 90**

– Shirov, **90**

– Timman, **75**

– Yusupov, **87**

Kupreichik, Viktor – Grigorian, **73**

– Grószpéter, **166**

– Yusupov, **169**

Kuzmin, Gennadi – Timoshchenko, **123**

Kuznetsov – Petukhov, **53**

L

Larsen, Bent – Jiménez-Zerquera, **72**

– Petrosian, **53**

Lasker – NN, **110**

Lasker, Emanuel – Rubinstein, **110**

Laurent – Lund-Jensen, **183**

Lepek – Kohnen, **12**

Levin, Alexander – Zejbot, **147**

Ligterink, Gert – Yusupov, **185**

Lilienthal, Andor – Smyslov, **11, 25**

Lobron, Eric – Svidler, **15**

– van der Wiel, **41**

Łowcki, Mojżesz – Tartakower, **12**

Lputian, Smbat – Yusupov, **117**

Lukács, Péter – Földi, **150**

Lund-Jensen – Laurent, **183**

M

Mainka, Gregor – Yusupov, **157**

Malaniuk, Vladimir – Ivanov, **168**

Marshall, Frank – Schlechter, **71**

Martini, Marco – Yusupov, **166**

Matanović, Aleksandar – Petrosian, **184**

McNab, Colin – Andersson, **147**
 Metger, Johannes – Paulsen, **54**
 Michaelsen, Nils – Gabriel, **124**
 Mikenas, Vldas – Aronin, 11
 – Bronstein, 11
 – Gutman, **38**
 Miles, Anthony – Yusupov, 148
 Milov, Vadim – Yusupov, **24**
 Minić, Dragoljub – Honfi, 11
 Mititelu, Gheorghe – Tolush, **111**
 Morovic Fernandez, Ivan – Yusupov, 184
 Movsesian, Sergei – Yusupov, **124**

N

Najdorf, Miguel – Kotov, 27
 Nezhmetdinov, Rashid – Konstantinov, 185
 Nielsen, Poul Erik – Ravikumar, **124**
 Nijboer, Friso – Kramnik, **91**
 Nikolaidis, Ioannis – Hübner, **110**
 Nilsson, L – Alden, 11
 Nimzowitsch, Aaron – Capablanca, 148
 – Sämisch, 79
 NN – Lasker, **110**
 NN – NN, **11**, 11
 NN – Swiderski, 109
 Nogueiras, Jesús – Ehlvest, **109**
 – Yusupov, **16**
 Nunn, John – Kramnik, **87**

O

Olland, Adolf Georg – Wolf, 24
 O'Kelly de Galway, Alberic – Feuer, **109**

P

Pachman, Ludek – Bronstein, 111
 Pähtz, Thomas – Fernandez, 109
 Paulsen, Louis – Anderssen, 11
 – Metger, 54
 Peresipkin, Vladimir – Chekhov, 183
 Petrosian, Tigran – Fischer, **70**, 153, 185
 – Larsen, 53
 – Matanović, 184
 – Simagin, 97

 – Smyslov, 167
 – Spassky, **81**
 – Suetin, 153
 Petukhov – Kuznetsov, 53
 Pétursson, Margeir – Yusupov, 115
 Piket, Jeroen – Adams, 150
 Pirrot, Dieter – Yusupov, 147, **184**
 Planinc, Albin – Bagirov, 124
 – Raičević, **38**
 Polgár, Zsuzsa – Chandler, **37**
 Polgár, Judit – Kramnik, **88**, **90**
 Ponomariov, Ruslan – Sutovsky, 173
 Portisch, Lajos – Kavalek, 37
 Přibyl, Josef – Kasparov, **93**
 Psakhis, Lev – Chekhov, 155
 – Yusupov, 156

R

Ragozin, Viacheslav – Boleslavsky, 123
 – Botvinnik, 71
 Raičević, Vladimir – Planinc, 38
 Rasin, Jacob – Yusupov, **168**
 Ravikumar, Vaidyanathan – Nielsen, 124
 Razuvaev, Yuri – Gurevich, **110**
 – Huss, (71)
 – Vasiukov, **109**
 – Yusupov, 70, 83
 Ree, Hans – Timman, **138**
 Renet, Olivier – Yusupov, 70
 Reshevsky, Samuel – Alekhine, 11
 – Fischer, **136**, **183**
 – Smyslov, **72**
 – Tatai, 53
 Réti, Richard – Alekhine, 96
 – Bogoljubow, 12
 Ribli, Zoltán – Yusupov, **84**
 Rokhlin, Yakov – Silich, **24**
 Romanishin, Oleg – Yusupov, **183**
 Romanovsky, Peter Arsenievich – Stepanov,
 109
 Rovner, Dmitry Osipovich – Kamyshev, 11
 Ruban, Vadim – Dautov, 185
 Rubinstein, Akiba – Alekhine, **183**

- Capablanca, 110
- Lasker, 110

S

- Salov, Valery - Anand, **24**
 - Yusupov, **24**
- Sämisch, Fritz - Capablanca, 95
 - Nimzowitsch, **79**
- Sax, Gyula - Yusupov, **84, 184**
- Schlechter, Carl - Marshall, **71**
- Schlosser, Philipp - Yusupov, **27**
- Seirawan, Yasser - Yusupov, 168
- Selyavkin - Belousov, 11
- Sermek, Drazen - Dautov, **41**
- Servaty, Rudolf - Gaprindashvili, **25**
- Shampouw - Silalachi, 12
- Shirov, Alexei - Kramnik, **90**
 - Yusupov, 11, **173**
- Short, Nigel - Kasparov, 40
- Silalachi - Shampouw, **12**
- Silich, Vladislav - Rokhlin, 24
- Simagin, Vladimir - Petrosian, **97**
- Śliwa, Bogdan - Stoltz, 12
- Slutzky, Leonid - Yusupov, **166**
- Smeets, Jan - Baramidze, **147**
- Smith, Kenneth - Campos Lopez, 39
- Smyslov, Vassily - Bilek, **183**
 - Boleslavsky, **69**
 - Botvinnik, 71
 - Eingorn, 148
 - Furman, **69**
 - Gligorić, **136**
 - Lilienthal, 11, 25
 - Petrosian, **167**
 - Reshevsky, 72
 - Speelman, 110
 - Tal, 69, 71
 - Tolush, 183
- Sokolov, Andrei - Yusupov, 12, **183**
- Sorokin, Maxim - Yusupov, **124**
- Sorokin, Nikolay - Botvinnik, **71, 109**
- Spasov, Liuben - Yusupov, **166**
- Spassky, Boris - Fischer, 109

- Karpov, **72, 72, 154**
- Keres, 81
- Korchnoi, **82**
- Petrosian, 81
- Timman, 148

- Speelman, Jonathan - Crouch, **12**
 - Smyslov, **110**
- Spielmann, Rudolf - Botvinnik, **184**
- Spiridonov, Nikola - Uhlmann, **110**
- Spraggett, Kevin - Yusupov, **57**
- Staudte, Hans Hilmar - Djaja, **11**
- Staunton, Howard - Anderssen, **97**
- Steiner, Endre - Capablanca, 171
- Stepanov, G. - Botvinnik, **184**
 - Romanovsky, 109
- Sterren, Paul van der - Yusupov, **76**
- Stohl, Igor - Yusupov, **86**
- Stoltz, Gösta - Śliwa, **12**
- Striković, Aleksa - Beliavsky, **92**
- Stromberg, Peter - Vedder, 110
- Suetin, Alexey - Petrosian, **153**
 - Yusupov, **185**
- Sutovsky, Emil - Ponomarev, **173**
- Sveshnikov, Evgeny - Gulko, 54
- Svidler, Peter - Granda Zúñiga, **24**
 - Lobron, 15
- Swiderski, Rudolf - NN, **109**
- Szily - Balogh, 147

T

- Taimanov, Mark - Botvinnik, 148, 167
 - Fischer, **36**
 - Flohr, 167
 - Yusupov, 168
- Tal, Mikhail - Botvinnik, 72
 - Smyslov, **69, 71**
- Tartakower, Savielly - Łowcki, **12**
- Tatai, Stefano - Reshevsky, **53**
- Timman, Jan - Díez del Corral, 70
 - Kramnik, **75**
 - Ree, 138
 - Spassky, **148**
 - Torre, **11**

– Yusupov, **26**, 183

Timoshchenko, Gennadi – Kuzmin, 123

Tolush, Alexander – Mititelu, 111

– Smyslov, **183**

Tomczak, Rainer – Anand, 25

Topalov, Veselin – Karpov, **111**

Torre Repetto, Carlos – Adams, **13**

Torre, Eugenio – Timman, 11

– Yusupov, **78**

Tseshkovsky, Vitaly – Yusupov, **168**

Tukmakov, Vladimir – Anand, 24

– Yusupov, **80**, **167**

U

Uhlmann, Wolfgang – Spiridonov, 110

– Yusupov, **171**

V

Vaganian, Rafael – Yusupov, 166

Vaïsser, Anatoli – Yusupov, 168

Vasiukov, Evgeni – Razuvaev, 109

Vedder, Henk – Stromberg, **110**

Vidmar, Milan – Euwe, 12

Vilela, Jose Luis – Yusupov, 166

Vladimirov, Evgeny – Kasparov, 174

Vodopyanov – Kanzyin, 12

Vooremaa, Andres – Yuksti, 110

Vukić, Milan – Kasparov, **70**

Vulfson, Vladimir – Yusupov, 166

W

Wely, Loek van – Antunes, **109**

Wiel, John van der – Day, 168

– Kasparov, **184**

– Lobron, **41**

Winter, William – Capablanca, 172

Wirthensohn, Heinz – Yusupov, **70**

Wolf, Heinrich – Olland, **24**

X

Xie Jun – Galliamova, 111

– Ioseliani, 2

Y

Yuksti – Vooremaa, **110**

Yusupov, Artur – Adams, 26

– Adorján, 167

– Anand, 147

– Arbakov, **184**

– Baturin, **167**

– Beliavsky, **109**, **167**, **169**

– Brestian, 135

– Bönsch, 183

– Chekhov, 169

– Csom, **168**

– Dautov, **26**

– Đuric, **169**

– Dolmatov, 78, 86

– Epishin, 125

– Fejzullahu, 183

– Ghinda, **70**

– Glienke, **166**

– Gligorić, **168**

– Hernández, 71

– Holzhäuer, 111

– Hulak, 166

– Kasparov, **149**, **166**, 183

– Kengis, 157

– Klarenbeek, **183**

– Kotronias, 149

– Kouatly, 85

– Kramnik, **87**

– Kupreichik, **169**

– Ligterink, 185

– Lputian, **117**

– Mainka, 157

– Martini, 166

– Miles, **148**

– Milov, 24

– Morovic Fernandez, **184**

– Movsesian, 124

– Nogueiras, 16

– Pirrot, **147**, 184

– Psakhis, **156**

– Pétursson, **115**

– Rasin, 168

- Razuvaev, **70, 83**
- Renet, **70**
- Ribli, 84
- Romanishin, **183**
- Salov, 24
- Sax, 84, 184
- Schlosser, 27
- Seirawan, **168**
- Shirov, **11, 173**
- Slutzky, 166
- Sokolov, **12, 183**
- Sorokin, 124
- Spasov, 166
- Spraggett, 57
- Stohl, 86
- Suetin, 185
- Taimanov, **168**
- Timman, 26, **183**

- Torre, 78
- Tseshkovsky, 168
- Tukmakov, 80, 167
- Uhlmann, 171
- Vaganian, **166**
- van der Sterren, 76
- Vaïsser, **168**
- Vilela, **166**
- Vulfson, **166**
- Wirthensohn, 70
- Zapata, 184

Z

- Zapata, Alonso - Yusupov, **184**
- Zejbod, I.M. - Levin, 147
- Zhuk - Gol'berg, **147**
- Zhuravlev, Nikolay - Kapengut, 109

Explanation of symbols

$\pm$	white stands slightly better	∞	unclear
$\pm$	white has a clear advantage	$\overline{\infty}$	with compensation for the material
$+-$	white has a decisive advantage	$\triangleleft$	better is
$1-0$	white won	Δ	with the idea
$\mp$	black stands slightly better	$\times$	weak point, or endangered piece
$\mp$	black has a clear advantage	$\cup$	development advantage
$-+$	black has a decisive advantage	$\bigcirc$	greater board room
$0-1$	black won	$\odot$	zugzwang
$=$	equal or equal chances	$\square$	only move
$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$	draw	$\updownarrow$	file
$\#$	mate	$\nearrow$	diagonal
$!?$	an interesting move	$\boxplus$	centre
$!$	a very good move	$\rangle$	kingside
$!!$	an excellent move	$\langle$	queenside
$?!$	a dubious move	$\oplus$	time
$?$	a mistake	$\perp$	ending
$??$	a blunder	♗♘	pair of bishops
$\rightarrow$	with attack	♗♜	bishops of opposite colour
$\uparrow$	with initiative	♗♝	bishops of the same colour
$\rightleftarrows$	with counterplay	♟	passed pawn
$\square$	white to move	$\boxed{?}$	what should white play?
$\blacksquare$	black to move	$\boxed{?}$	what should black play?

Between 1999 and 2002 Artur Yusupov produced and published in Germany a small series of ten training booklets, each one covering a particular chess theme. This experimental project proved quite popular, not only with German-speaking readers. Many of his chess colleagues liked this form of individual training; and some of them used the material in their classes too. This favourable reaction prompted the idea of an English translation.

Although the booklets were aimed at players of differing abilities, most wanted the complete set. And that's how these different themes have ended up in one book. You could also look on this diversity as a strength if a reader, with chess ambitions, wants to test his overall ability. Moreover, for chess trainers this book provides several ready-made lectures, and many useful exercises covering different aspects of the game, already sorted in terms of their level of difficulty.



Artur Yusupov was born in Moscow on 13th February 1960 and learned to play chess at the age of six. He was awarded the title of International Grandmaster in 1980. For many years Artur Yusupov represented the Soviet Union with which he won five olympic titles, two European team championships, and one world team championship. Artur Yusupov now lives in Germany and represents the German national team. He helped them to achieve 2nd place at the Istanbul olympiad in 2000, and 3rd place at the European team championship in Batumi 1999.

As an individual Artur Yusupov has reached the semi-final of the world championship on three occasions (1986, 1989, 1992).

Other significant successes include 1st place in Hamburg 1991, 1st–3rd place in Amsterdam 1994, and 2nd place in Horgen 1994 (Category 18) behind Kasparov.



Artur Yusupov has also made a name for himself as a trainer, notably for Viswanathan Anand in his world championship matches against Kasparov in 1995, and against Karpov in 1998. The quality of his training is reflected in the success of his chess academy in Weissenhorn, Germany.

Artur Yusupov is also well-known as an author, having written several opening books and, most notably, as co-author (with Mark Dvoretsky) of five highly successful instructional works.



ISBN 3-935748-07-8